

UNIVERSITY OF GOTHENBURG  
DEPARTMENT OF LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES  
P.O.B. 200 • SE 405 30 GOTHENBURG • SWEDEN

Free net-based courses in Somali at UG  
for citizens of EU and EEA countries

# A FEW THINGS ABOUT SOMALI

*Morgan Nilsson*

Version of  
4 September 2024

*This is work in progress.*

*Read it critically! Feel free to contact me with your comments.*

[morgan.nilsson@gu.se](mailto:morgan.nilsson@gu.se)

# Unit 1

Somali

among the languages of the world

# 1. The Somali speaking area

Somali is spoken in the **Horn of Africa** within an area encompassing the whole of Somalia with Puntland and Somaliland, the south-eastern part of Djibouti, the eastern part of Ethiopia and the eastern part of Kenya.



Source: [Wikimedia Commons](#)

The whole Somali speaking area is approximately as big as France, Germany, the Netherlands, Belgium and Switzerland together, about 1.100.000 km<sup>2</sup>. However, the size of the Somali population in that area is only one eighth of the population in those European countries.

In addition to the coherent area in the Horn, Somali is also spoken by a large number of Somalis living outside that area, mainly in Ethiopia's capital Addis Ababa, Kenya's capital Nairobi, in the United States, Canada, Great Britain, Sweden, Norway, Finland, Denmark, South Africa, Yemen, Tanzania, but also in many other countries of the world.

It is difficult to establish exactly how many people speak Somali, but based on statistics from different national agencies in the countries where Somali is spoken, as well as some qualified assumptions, the number is likely to be approximately 26 million. Adding up the most trustworthy figures leads to a total of somewhere between 24–28 million speakers.

The calculation looks as follows:

Somalia <sup>1</sup>	13.5	–	15.5
Djibouti <sup>2</sup>	0.5	–	0.6
Ethiopia <sup>3</sup>	6.5	–	7
Kenya <sup>4</sup>	2.5	–	3
<u>Rest of the world</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>–</u>	<u>2</u>
Total	24	–	28.1

With about 26 million speakers, Somali is approximately the 70th largest among the ca. 7,000 languages of the world, meaning that 99% of all

---

<sup>1</sup> According to <data.un.org> (2019), UN estimates the number of people in Somalia to 15.4 million. The large span 13.5–15.5 million mainly depends on whether Maay is considered a separate language or a dialect of Somali, as well as on the number of Maay speakers. There is reason to assume that different varieties of Maay may be spoken by as many as 2 million people.

<sup>2</sup> According to CIA (2017), 60% of the population in Djibouti are Somalis. According to <data.un.org> (2019), the total population is 974,000.

<sup>3</sup> According to the Ethiopian census of 2007, 6,2% of the Ethiopian population were Somalis. According to <data.un.org> (2019), the total population is 112 million.

<sup>4</sup> According to the Kenyan census of 2009, 6,2% of the population were Somalis. According to the 2019 census, the total population is 47.5 million.



languages are smaller than Somali. Among the approximately 2,000 languages spoken in Africa, Somali is most probably the 9th largest.

The list of the largest languages in Africa looks as follows.

1. Arabic (over 300 mill.)
2. Swahili (around 100 mill.)
3. Hausa (around 50 mill.)
4. Yoruba (around 40 mill.)
5. Oromo (around 35 mill.)
6. Igbo (around 30 mill.)
6. Fula (around 30 mill.)
6. Amharic (around 30 mill.)
9. Somali (ca. 26 mill.)
9. Malagasy (ca. 26 mill.)

## Somali outside the Horn of Africa

In Sweden Somali is spoken by at least 100,000 people. That corresponds to 1% of the Swedish population. The figure is based on the number of persons born in Somalia together with the number of persons having one or two parents who were born in Somalia. Even if some of these do not speak Somali, there must be many other speakers of Somali that were not born in Somalia, but in some other part of the Horn or the world.

Table 1. Persons born abroad + persons born in Sweden with one or both parents born abroad.

NB: the figures don't say anything about the language spoken, just the country of birth.

<b>SCB</b>						
Utrikes födda samt födda i Sverige med en eller två utrikes födda föräldrar efter födelseland/ursprungsland, 31 december 2018, totalt						
Födelseland/ ursprungsland	Utrikes födda	Födda i Sverige med två utrikes födda föräldrar			Födda i Sverige med en utrikes född förälder	
		Föräldrarnas födelseland då de har samma födelseland	Faderns födelseland då föräldrarna har olika födelseland <sup>1</sup>	Moderns födelseland då föräldrarna har olika födelseland <sup>1</sup>	Faderns födelseland då modern är född i Sverige	Moderns födelseland då fadern är född i Sverige
Djibouti	447	19	115	238	6	15
Etiopien	20 695	5 782	4 125	2 826	1 478	1 885
Kenya	4 502	289	438	603	574	841
Somalia	68 678	27 602	1 942	2 509	917	5 183

Source: Statistics Sweden (SCB), spring 2019

According to statistics collected in March 2017 from sister agencies in the other Nordic countries, the corresponding figure for Norway is at least 42,000, for Finland at least 20,000 and for Denmark at least 20,000. That corresponds to 0.8% of the Norwegian population, and 0.4% of the Finnish and Danish population.

In the Swedish primary education system (9 years) at least 21,000 pupils speak Somali, which corresponds to 2% of all school children in Sweden. That makes Somali the third most common mother tongue among Swedish children, after Swedish and Arabic. The Somali speaking children are also the group with the highest degree of participation in mother tongue classes at a rate of 76% of the children.

Table 2. Pupils according to mother tongue and participation in classes, school year 2018/19.

# Grundskolan – Elever – Riksnivå

Sveriges officiella statistik

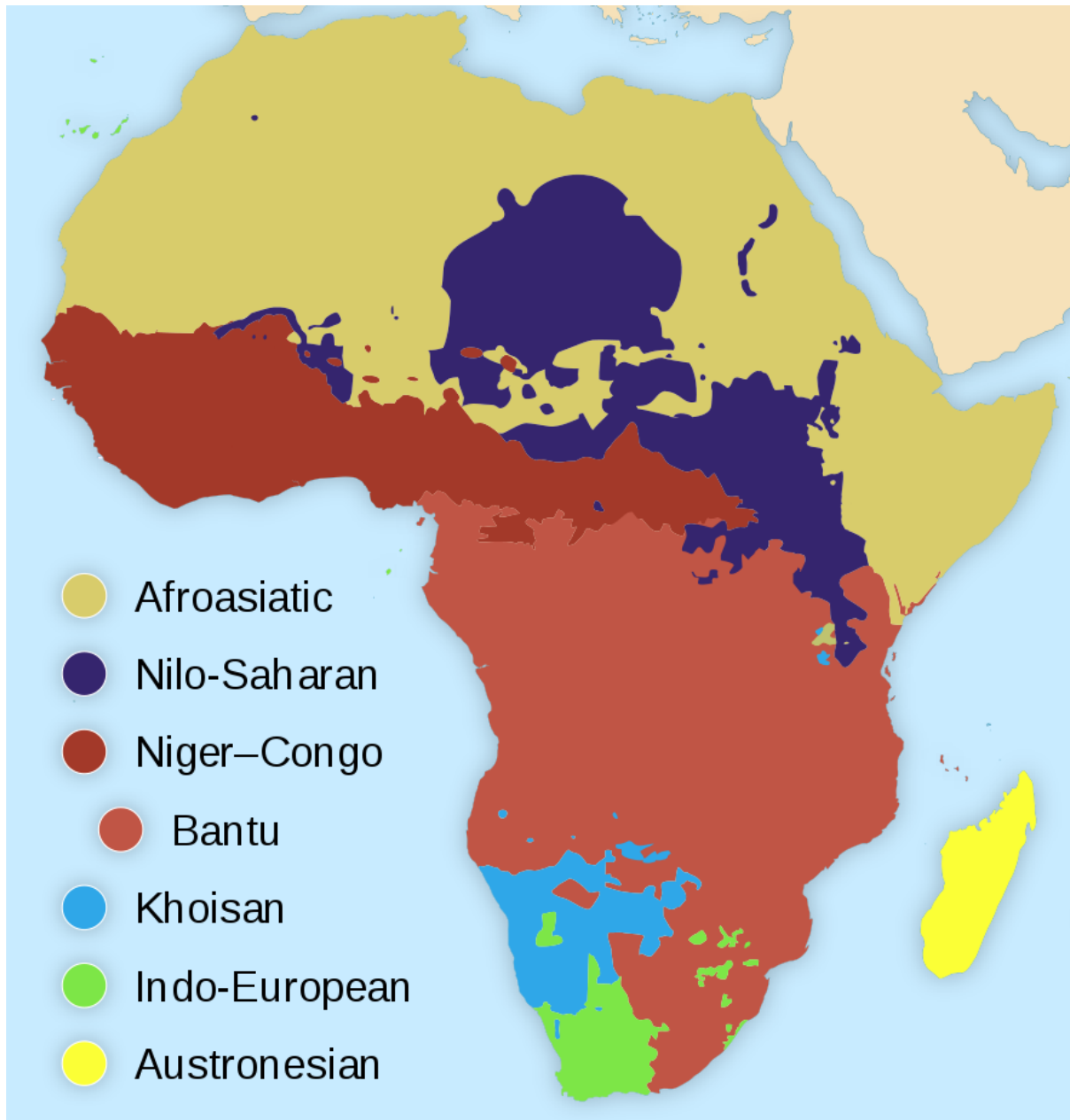
**Tabell 8 B: Elever med undervisning i modersmål  
läsåret 2018/19**

		Antal elever	Andel (%)	Deltagare i modersmålsundervisning			
		berättigade	berättigade	Antal	Andel (%) av	Andel (%)	
		till moders-	av samtliga		samtliga berätti-	utanför	
		målsunder-	elev		gade	garanterad	
Modersmål		visning			elev	undervisningstid	
10 största modersmålen							
Arabiska		77 448	7,3	54 578	5,1	70,5	54,6
Somaliska		21 115	2	16 070	1,5	76,1	54,2
Engelska		17 718	1,7	9 403	0,9	53,1	59,3
Bosniska/Kroatiska/Serbiska		17 109	1,6	8 624	0,8	50,4	65,3
Kurdiska		15 629	1,5	8 672	0,8	55,5	59,1
Persiska		14 713	1,4	8 696	0,8	59,1	57,8
Spanska		14 237	1,3	7 319	0,7	51,4	61,8
Albanska		9 570	0,9	5 605	0,5	58,6	54,7
Polska		9 552	0,9	5 748	0,5	60,2	58,1
Finska		9 454	0,9	4 841	0,5	51,2	42,6
Övriga språk (154 st.)		97 106	9,1	47 377	4,5	48,8	58,7

Source: Statistics Sweden (SCB), spring 2019

## Somali and its relationship to other languages

At some distance, Somali is related to languages such as Arabic, Hebrew, Amharic, Tigrinya, Hausa and different Berber languages. They all belong to the **Afro-Asiatic** language family with about 300 different languages.



*Source: Wikipedia*

Many languages that are quite well known by Somalis, are not at all related to Somali, but belong to the **Indo-European** language family, e.g. English, Swedish, German, Italian, French, Spanish, Russian, Persian,



Kurdish, Pashto, Urdu and Hindi. The Indo-European languages are spoken by almost half of the world's population, i.e. some 3 billion people.

Also Turkish and Finnish are unrelated to Somali. Finnish, together with Sami, Estonian and Hungarian belong to the **Uralic** language family, whereas Turkish belongs to the **Turkic** language family together with e.g. Azerbaijani and Turkmen.

## African languages

---

The number of languages on the African continent is estimated to over 2,000. The vast majority of these languages belong to the following four families:

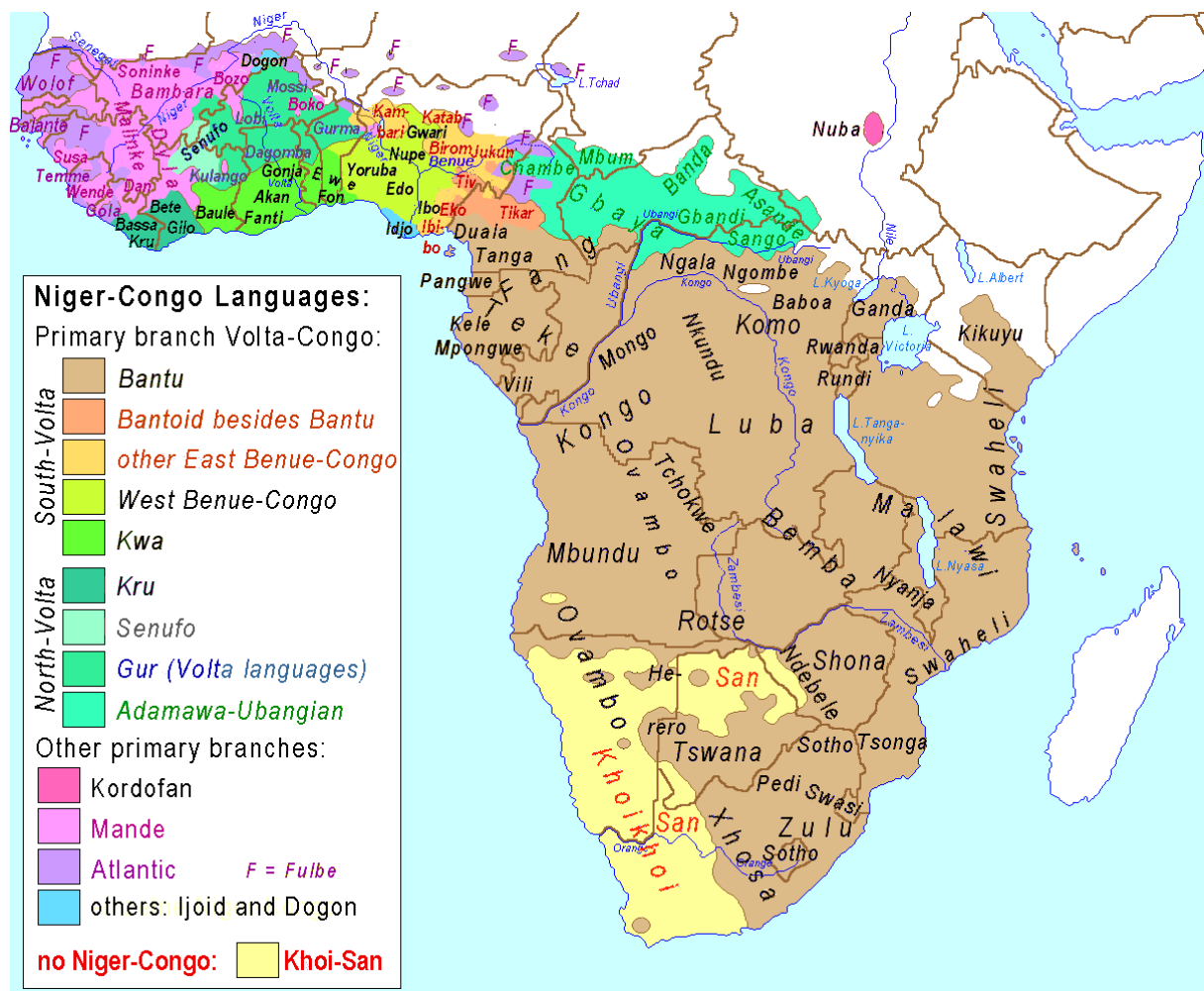
- **Niger-Congo** languages, e.g. Swahili, Zulu, Yoruba, Igbo, Fula, Shona, Sesotho, Akan etc.
- **Afro-Asiatic** languages, e.g. Arabic, Amharic, Tigrinya, Oromo, Somali, Hausa, Berber languages etc.
- **Nilo-Saharan** languages, e.g. Luo, Nubian, Dinka, Maasai etc.
- **Khoisan** languages, e.g. Nama.

The two largest of these four language families are the Niger-Congo languages and the Afro-Asiatic languages, each spoken by around half a billion people.

The **Niger-Congo** languages are sub-divided into several subgroups, from the **Atlantic** languages in the west to the **Bantu** languages in the south and east. From a Somali perspective, the most well known Niger-Congo language is one of the Bantu languages, namely **Swahili**, which is one of the directly neighbouring languages with Somali. It is spoken directly to the south of Somali, mainly in Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda and eastern Congo. Swahili isn't at all genetically related to Somali, and the grammatical structure of Swahili is very different from Somali. Swahili is also a much larger language, used by some 100 million people. It is

however not the mother tongue of more than a smaller part of all the speakers, but it is their language of daily communication, e.g. for work or study.

All the other languages in the direct proximity of the Somali speaking area, except for Swahili, are Afro-Asiatic languages, just like Somali.



Source: [Wikimedia Commons](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Map_of_Africa_showing_the_distribution_of_Niger-Congo_languages.png).

The **Nilo-Saharan** languages are spoken by some 40 million people around the river of Nile, mainly in Libya, Chad, Sudan, Uganda and Kenya. The largest language in this family is **Luo** or **Dholuo**, which is spoken by some 5 million people, mainly in western Kenya. This language is actually the third largest language in Kenya.

The **Khoisan** languages are spoken in the western part of southern Africa, mainly in Namibia and Botswana. The number of languages is around 30

and the total number of speakers just around 200,000. The largest language in this family is **Nama** with some 100.000 speakers in Namibia, Botswana and South Africa. Several of the languages in this family are very small and threatened with extinction.

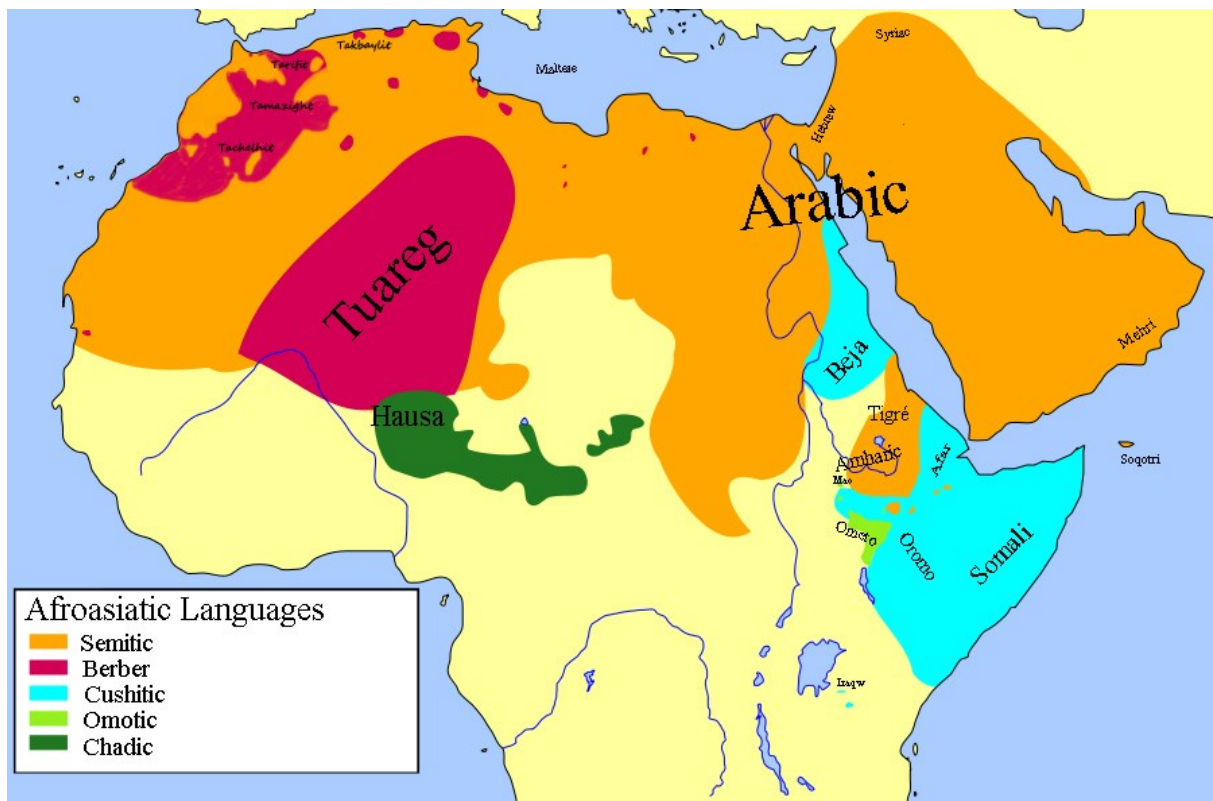
Finally, on the island of Madagascar a language is spoken that does not belong to any of the already mentioned families. The name of the language is **Malagasy**. It is spoken by some 26 million inhabitants of the island, and it belongs to the **Austronesian** language family together with languages such as **Tagalog** (the Philippines), **Javanese**, **Malay**, **Maori** (New Zealand) och **Hawaiian**. It is actually possible to notice surprising similarities between some basic vocabulary, such as the numbers.

Malagasy:	iray,	roa,	telo,	efatra,	dimy,	enina
Malay:	satu,	dua,	tiga,	empat,	lima,	enam
Tagalog:	isa,	dawala,	tatlo,	apat,	lima,	anim
Maori:	tahi,	rua,	toru,	whā,	rima,	ono
Hawaiian:	kahi,	lua,	kolu,	hā,	lima,	ono
	<i>one,</i>	<i>two,</i>	<i>three,</i>	<i>four,</i>	<i>five,</i>	<i>six</i>

## Afro-Asiatic languages

Somali belongs to the **Afro-Asiatic** language family that encompasses northern and north-eastern Africa, the Arabic peninsula and parts of the Middle East. There are about 300 Afro-Asiatic languages, and they are spoken by close to 500 million people.

At some distance, Somali is related to languages like Arabic, Hebrew, Amharic, Tigrinya, Hausa and different Berber languages, but these languages belong to different sub-groups within the **Afro-Asiatic** language family.



Source: [Wikimedia Commons](#)



The different sub-groups within the **Afro-Asiatic** language family are:

- **Semitic** languages, which constitute the largest group with languages such as Arabic (over 300 mill.), Amharic (over 30 mill.), Hebrew (some 10 mill.), Tigrinya (some 10 mill.);
- **Cushitic** languages, such as Oromo (over 35 mill.), Somali (ca. 26 mill.), Sidamo (ca. 3 mill.);
- **Omotic** languages, a number of rather small languages spoken mainly in the south-west of Ethiopia. Wolaytta with about 2 mill. speakers in Ethiopia is most probably the largest Omotic language.
- **Berber** languages, which are spoken by over 15 million people, mainly in Morocco, Algeria, Mali and Niger. **Shilha** (in Arabic) or **Tashelhit** (in the language) with possibly up to 8 million speakers, mainly in Morocco, is the largest Berber language.
- **Chadic** languages, where the largest one is **Hausa**, spoken by more than 50 million people, mainly in Niger and Nigeria;
- the **Egyptian** language, extinct since some 400 years ago, is the language that was used in the inscriptions made with hieroglyphs in the Egyptian pyramids. The last spoken form of this language is called **Coptic**. This language is still used to a certain extent as the ceremonial language of the Christian orthodox church in Egypt.

	<b>Somali</b>	<b>Wolaytta</b>	<b>Amharic</b>	<b>Arabic</b>	<b>Hausa</b>	<b>Tamazight</b>
	<i>Cushitic</i>	<i>Omotic</i>	<i>South Semitic</i>	<i>Central Semitic</i>	<i>Chadic</i>	<i>Berber</i>
<i>one</i>	kow	'istá	and	waaxid	ɗaya	yan
<i>two</i>	laba	naa"á	hulätt	iṭnaan	biyu	sin
<i>three</i>	saddex	heezzá	sost	ṭalaṭa	uku	kṛaḍ
<i>four</i>	afar	'oiddá	aratt	arbaca	hudu	kkuz
<i>five</i>	shan	'iccashá	amməst	khamisa	biyar	smmus
<i>six</i>	lix	'usúppuna	səddəst	sitta	shida	ṣḍiṣ
<i>seven</i>	toddoba	lááppuna	säbatt	sabca	bakwai	sa
<i>eight</i>	siddeed	hóspuna	səmmənt	ṭamaaniya	takwas	tam
<i>nine</i>	sagaal	'uddúpuna	zäṭäṇṇ	tisca	tara	tza
<i>ten</i>	toban	'isíínó	assər	cashra	goma	mraw
<i>head</i>	madax	húúp'				
<i>hair</i>	timo					
<i>eye</i>	il					

<i>Ear</i>	dheg	haitt				
<i>mouth</i>	af	doon				
<i>tongue</i>	carrab					
<i>teeth</i>	ilko					
<i>lung</i>	sambab					
<i>kidney</i>	kelli					
<i>Bone</i>	laf	mek'étt				
<i>arm</i>	gacan					
<i>leg</i>	lug	ged (tóh)				
<i>foot</i>	cag	tóh (ged)				
<i>knee</i>	jilib					
<i>blood</i>	dhiig	súútt				
<i>water</i>	biyo	haatt				
<i>Stone</i>	dhagax	ʃúʃʃ				

Wolaytta according to Wakasa (2008),

## Cushitic languages

The most closely related languages to Somali are found in the **Cushitic** group, where the four largest languages are **Oromo** (over 35 mill.), **Somali** (ca. 26 mill.), **Sidamo** (ca. 3 mill.) and **Afar** (ca. 2.5 mill.).

The Cushitic languages are further divided into the following sub-groups:

- **North Cushitic**, consisting of only one language, **Beja**, with some 2 million speakers in Sudan, Eritrea och Egypt;
- **Central Cushitic** languages, among others **Awngi**, spoken by almost half a million people south-west of Lake Tana in Ethiopia;
- **East Cushitic** languages, which constitute the largest sub-group, with languages such as **Oromo** and **Somali**;
- **South Cushitic** languages, with languages such as **Iraqw**, spoken by about half a million people in Tanzania.

	<b>Somali</b>	<b>Iraqw</b>	<b>Beja</b>	
	<i>East</i>	<i>South</i>	<i>North</i>	<i>Central</i>
<i>one</i>	kow, hal	wák	gaal	
<i>two</i>	laba	tsár	mali, mhali	
<i>three</i>	saddex	tám	mhay	
<i>four</i>	afar	tsiyáhh	fadhig	
<i>five</i>	shan	koo'án	'ay	
<i>six</i>	lix	lahhóo'	asagwir	
<i>seven</i>	toddoba	fáanqw	asarama	
<i>eight</i>	siddeed	dakáat	assimhay	
<i>nine</i>	sagaal	gwaléel	ashshadhig	
<i>ten</i>	toban	mibangw	tamin/tamun	
<i>head</i>	madax		girma	
<i>leg</i>	lug		lagad	
<i>mouth</i>	af		yaf	
<i>tooth</i>	ilko (pl.)		kwiri	
<i>blood</i>	dhiig		booy	
<i>bone</i>	laf		miitaat	
<i>kidney</i>	kelli		kwil'a	
<i>knee</i>	jilib		gwimba	
<i>lung</i>	sambab		shambuut	

<i>tongue</i>	carrab		miidaab/ miidalaab	
<i>big</i>	weyn		win	
<i>big (pl.)</i>	waaweyn		wawin	
<i>small</i>	yar		dis	
<i>small (pl.)</i>	yaryar		dadis	

Sources:

Beja: <https://corporan.huma-num.fr/Lexiques/indexM.php>

## East Cushitic languages

---

Within the East Cushitic group there is a further division between languages that are spoken in the

- **Highlands**, mainly **Sidamo** with some 3 million speakers, **Hadiyya** with well over 1 million speakers, **Gedeo** with around 1 million speakers and **Kambaata** with some 750.000 speakers. All of them are spoken in fairly small areas a couple of hundred kilometers south of Addis Ababa in Ethiopia;
- **Lowlands**, where most Cushitic languages are found, among others Afar, Arbore, Baiso, Dabarre, Garre, Jiiddu, Konso, Maay, Oromo, Rendille, Saho, Somali, Tunni.

	<b>Somali</b>	<b>Sidamo</b>	<b>Kambaata</b>	<b>Gede'o</b>	<b>Hadiyya</b>
	<i>Lowland</i>	<i>Highland</i>	<i>Highland</i>	<i>Highland</i>	<i>Highland</i>
<i>one</i>	kow, mid	mitte		mitte	máto
<i>two</i>	laba	lame		lame	lámo
<i>three</i>	saddex	sase		sase	sáso
<i>four</i>	afar	shoole		shole	soóro
<i>five</i>	shan	onte		onde	'ónto
<i>six</i>	lix	lee		jane	lóho
<i>seven</i>	toddoba	lamala		torbane	lamára
<i>eight</i>	siddeed	sette		saddeeta	sadeénto
<i>nine</i>	sagaal	honse		sallane	hónso
<i>ten</i>	toban	tonne		tomme	tómmo
<i>head</i>	madax	umo		umo	horoóre
<i>leg</i>	lug	lekka			lokko

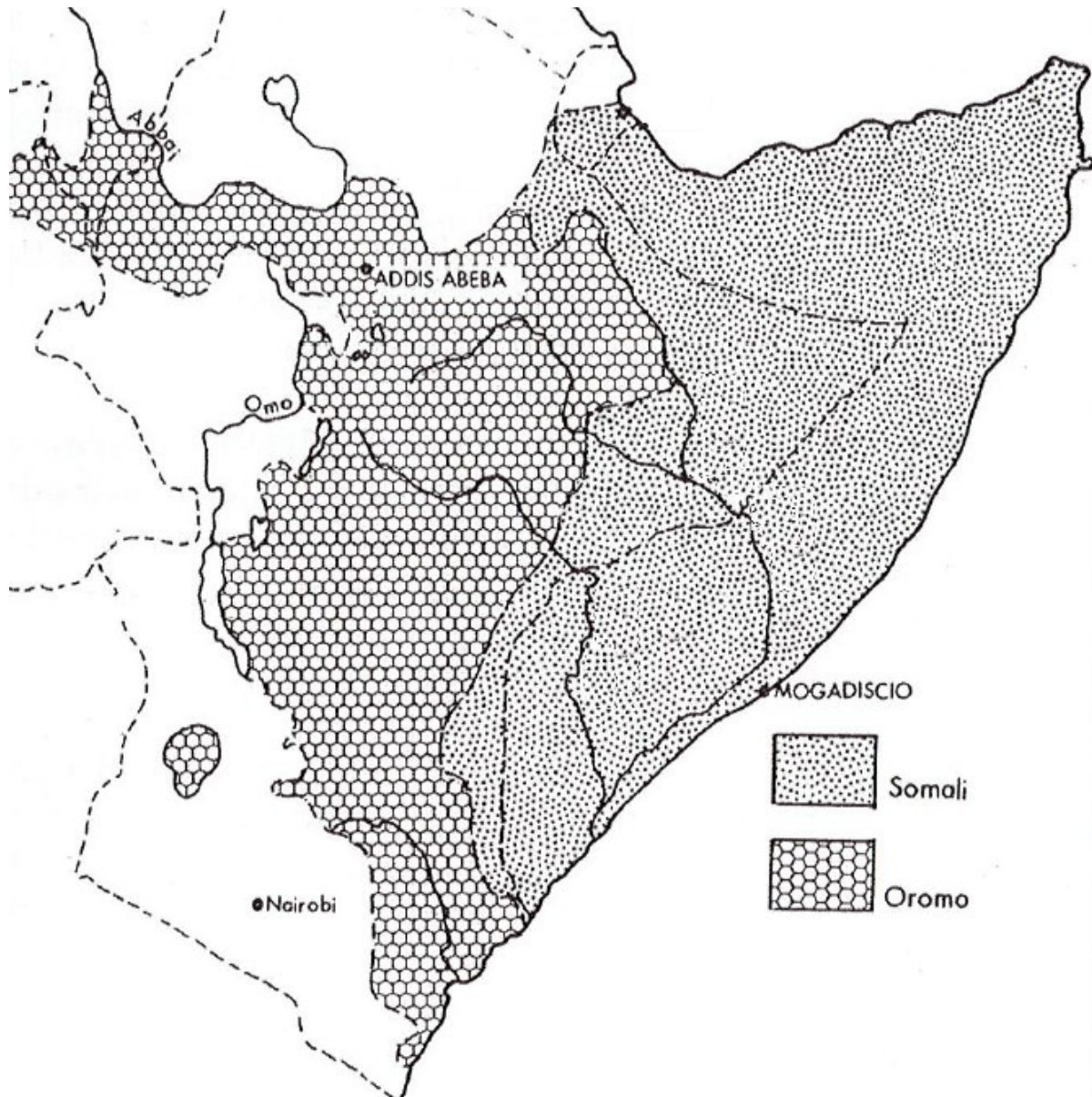


<i>mouth</i>	af	afo		afo'o	suume
<i>tooth</i>	ilig	hinko		isso	'ínk'e
<i>blood</i>	dhiig	mundee		munde	t'ííga
<i>bone</i>	laf	mikk'a			m'íke
<i>kidney</i>	kelli				múro
<i>knee</i>	jilib	gulubba			gurúbbo
<i>lung</i>	sambab				k'adafara
<i>tongue</i>	carrab	arrawo		arrabo	'allábo

## Lowland East Cushitic languages

---

The two largest Cushitic languages Oromo (över 35 mill.) and Somali (ca. 26 mill.) are rather closely related. They are both **Lowland East Cushitic** languages, but still they are probably more different from each other than English is different from German, Dutch or Scandinavian languages.



Source: Mansuur (2009: 191)

Even if Oromo is larger than Somali in number of speakers, Somali is still a more widely used and more stable language than Oromo. Somali has been quite well described and is relatively well standardised. For Oromo this process started some 30 years later, and has not reach as far as it has for Somali, as the language has not been used in writing and in mass media as much as Somali has. However, comprehensive work has been conducted in the last 20 years in order to develop Oromo, and in today's Ethiopia there are many more books printed in Oromo than in Somali.

Lowland East Cushitic languages may be further subdivided into

- Saho-Afar:
- Oromoid: Oromo
- Omo-Tana: Somali
- Peripheral: Yaaku, Dullay

Comparison of some basic vocabulary in different Lowland East Cushitic languages:

	<b>Somali</b>	<b>Oromo</b>	<b>Afar</b>	
	<i>Omo-Tana</i>	<i>Oromoid</i>	<i>Saho-Afar</i>	<i>Peripheral</i>
<i>one</i>	kow	tokko	iníki	
<i>two</i>	laba	lama	nammáya	
<i>three</i>	saddex	sadii	sidóxu	
<i>four</i>	afar	afur	faréyi	
<i>five</i>	shan	shan	konóyu <sup>5</sup>	
<i>six</i>	lix	jaha	laxéyi	
<i>seven</i>	toddoba	torba	malxíini	
<i>eight</i>	siddeed	saddeet	baxaará	
<i>nine</i>	sagaal	sagal	sagaalá	
<i>ten</i>	toban	kudhan	tabaná	
<i>head</i>	madax	mataa	<i>amó</i>	
<i>leg</i>	lug	luka		
<i>mouth</i>	af	afaan	<i>af</i>	
<i>teeth</i>	ilko	ilkaan	<i>boddiná</i>	
<i>blood</i>	dhiig	dhiiga		
<i>bone</i>	laf	lafee		
<i>kidney</i>	kelli	kalee		
<i>knee</i>	jilib	jilba	<i>gulub</i>	
<i>lung</i>	sambab	somba		
<i>tongue</i>	carrab	arraba		

---

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Somali *konton* 'fifty'. The Somali /sh/ is most probably the result from a change from /k/ to /sh/, cf. also, e.g., Danish and Swedish pronunciation of Copenhagen.

But the words for almost all other body parts are quite different in Somali and Oromo.

	Somali	Maay	Baiso	Rendille	Oromo	Afar Saho/Konso
eye	il				ija	
leg	lug			lux <sup>foot</sup>	luka	
mouth	af			af	afaan	
teeth	ilko			ilko	ilkaan	
face	fool				fuula	
blood	dhiig			dig	dhiiga	
bone	laf			laf	lafee	
lung	sambab				somba	
kidney	kelli				kalee	
knee	jilib		gilib	jilib	jilba	
tongue	carrab			harrab	arraba	
bird	shimbir		kimbiri	čimbir	shimpirre	
water	biyo		beke	biče'	bišani	
louse	injir		igiri	injir	injiran	
exist	jiraa		growa		jira	

## Omo-Tana languages

---

**Western:** Dhaasanac, Arbore, Elmolo

Central: Bayso

**Eastern:** Rendille, Boni/Aweera, Karre/Garre, Jiiddu, Tunni, Dabarre, Ashraaf, Digil, Maay, Benadir, Somali...

## Eastern Omo-Tana languages

---

	Somali	Maay	Rendille	Bayso
<i>one</i>	kow, mid			ko
<i>two</i>	laba	lamy		lama
<i>three</i>	saddex			seed



<i>four</i>	afar			afar, apar
<i>five</i>	shan			ken
<i>six</i>	lix			lee
<i>seven</i>	toddoba			todoba
<i>eight</i>	siddeed			siddeet
<i>nine</i>	sagaal			saagaal
<i>ten</i>	toban			
<i>head</i>	madax	mady		mete
<i>leg</i>	lug			luk
<i>mouth</i>	af			mangaagaa
<i>teeth</i>	ilko			ilko
<i>blood</i>	dhiig			
<i>bone</i>	laf			lef
<i>kidney</i>	kelli			kalaalli
<i>knee</i>	jilib			gilib
<i>lung</i>	sambab			somboob
<i>tongue</i>	carrab	anrab		
<i>heart</i>	wadne	widny		wodana

	Somali	Maay	Baiso	Rendille	Oromo	Afar Saho/Konso
eyes	indho			indo		
ear	dheg			dogo		
fire	dab			dab		
leg	lug			lux <sup>foot</sup>	luka	
mouth	af			af	afaan	
nose	san			san		
teeth	ilko			ilko	ilkaan	
hair	tin			tim		
blood	dhiig			dig	dhiiga	
bone	laf			laf	lafee	
knee	jilib		gilib	jilib	jilba	
tongue	carrab			harrab	arraba	
bird	shimbir		kimbiri	čimbir	shimpirre	
water	biyo		beke	biče'	bišani	
milk	caano			hannu		
knife	mindil			mindil		
stone	dhagax			dagax		
tree	geed			gey		

yesterday	shaley	kele	čele	
louse	injir	igiri	injir	injiran
exist	jiraa	growa		jira
I	ani	ani	ani	
you	adi	ati	ati	
he	uu	usu	usu	
she	ay	ese	ish	

## The language situation in the area

---

A very important difference between the language situation in Somalia and Somaliland, and the situation in almost every other country south of Sahara is that Somalia and Somaliland have very small linguistic minorities. The fact that almost all citizens of Somalia and Somaliland can communicate with each other in their own language is something quite unique in an African perspective. It gives a unique possibility to use Somali as the official language of the country in all domains of political, educational and social life, without the risk of running into any major problems.

Most other non Arabic countries in Africa encompass areas inhabited by speakers of several different larger and smaller languages. In all those countries it is difficult to find a common language for education and administration, since no single local language will function for communication with the whole population.

In several other African countries the choice has therefore been to continue using a European language in order not to favourise any of the local languages at the cost of others, but in some countries one of the larger languages of the country has been chosen.

## Languages in Ethiopia

---

The linguistic situation in Ethiopia is totally different than the situation in Somalia. In Ethiopia alone, over 80 different languages are spoken, but Amharic was the only language with an official status until the end of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, and it was the only language used in education and administration.

Today's Ethiopia is a federation of nine ethnically defined regional states that coincide with some of the larger linguistic and ethnic groups in the

country, and today each region can decide about its own language policy. In higher education and research, English is nowadays playing a quite important role as the common lingua franca.



Source: [Wikimedia Commons](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Administrative_Regions_and_Zones_of_Ethiopia).

Until recently, only Amharic was used in Ethiopia as the country's official language, even though that language actually was only the second largest, after Oromo, but the choice of Amharic is of course linked to the fact that the Amhara people had the major political power in the country. Today the choice of Amharic is questioned, above all by the Oromo speakers, who demand both languages to have an equal status at the national level.

Since the middle of the 1990's, the linguistic situation in Ethiopia has developed into a much larger regional independence regarding the choice language for administration and schooling. In the Somali Regional State of Ethiopia, Somali is today used in schools until the 8th grade, and also

to a large extent in the administration of the region. There are now plans to introduce Somali up to grade 12.

According to Zatolokina (2022: 176), Afar, Oromo, Somali and Tigrinya were recognized in February 2020 as having equal status, together with Amharic, as the five official working languages of the central Ethiopian government, not only the regional governments and administration.

The modern linguistic development in Ethiopia towards a larger linguistic diversity has also strengthened the role of English, especially in higher education. Since students have different linguistic background, and many don't know Amharic very well, English has become the predominating "lingua franca".

## Unit 1. Study Questions

---

1. Out of the ten largest languages in Africa:
  - a) Which one(s) are genetically quite closely related to Somali?
  - b) Which one(s) are genetically more distantly related to Somali?
  - c) Which one(s) are genetically not at all related to Somali?
3. How many languages are there in the world today according to generally accepted estimations?
4. Is Somali a large or a small language? Why?
5. How many speakers of Somali are there?
6. How many speakers are there in Somalia and Somaliland?
7. How many speakers of Somali are there in Djibouti?
8. How many speakers of Somali are there in Ethiopia?
9. How many speakers of Somali are there in Kenya?

10. How many speakers of Somali are there in the rest of the world?
11. Approximately how many languages have more speakers than Somali?
12. How many speakers of Swedish are there in the world today?
13. Roughly how many languages have more speakers than Swedish?
14. To which large language family does Swedish belong?
15. Which are the two largest languages in that family?
16. To which subgroup within that family does Swedish belong?
17. Which are the two largest languages within that subgroup?
18. To which large language family does Somali belong?
19. Which are the five largest languages within that family?
20. To which subgroup within that family does Somali belong?
21. Which are the three largest languages within that subgroup?
22. What other subgroups are there within the language family that Somali belongs to?
23. Which is the largest language within each of those subgroups?
24. Which is the target's subgroup?
25. Which are the four largest languages within that subgroup?
26. Which are the five largest languages in Africa?
27. To which language family and to which subgroup do the following languages belong? English, Italian, Arabic, Amharic, Swahili, Kurdish, Oromo, Finnish, Persian, Afar, Turkish, Hindi.
28. Which quite large language, slightly larger than Somali, is genetically very closely related to Somali?



29. How big is that language compared to Somali?
30. Give the names of two Semitic languages that have more speakers than Somali.
31. Both the Cushitic and the Semitic languages belong to the same language family. What is it called?
32. Swedish and English belong to the same large language family and to the same subgroup. What is the family called and what is the subgroup called?
33. Italian, French, Spanish and Portuguese belong to the same language family as Swedish and English, but to another subgroup. What is the subgroup called?
34. Which very large language in the close vicinity to Somalia is not at all genetically related to Somali? To which language family and subgroup does that language belong?
35. Which two language families completely dominate in Africa?
36. What other four language families are also present in Africa, but to a lesser extent?

## Unit 1. Suggested Solutions

---

1. a) Somali is closely related to Oromo; b) Somali is distantly related to Arabic, Hausa and Amharic; c) Somali is not related to Swahili, Yoruba, Igbo, Fula, or Malagasy.
3. It is estimated that there are around 7000 languages in the world.
4. Somali is a large language since there are only 70 languages with a larger number of speakers while there are almost 7000 languages with fewer speakers.

5. Somali is spoken by approximately 26 million people.
6. In Somalia with Puntland and Somaliland, Somali is spoken by some 14 to 16 million people, depending on whether Maay is considered a dialect of Somali or an independent language (and how many speakers there are of Maay).
7. In Djibouti Somali is spoken by over 600.000.
8. In Ethiopia Somali is spoken by some 7 million people.
9. In Kenya Somali is spoken by about 3 million people.
10. In the rest of the world Somali is probably spoken by more than 1.5 million people. It is extremely difficult to establish any more precise figure.
11. Only about 70 languages have a larger number of speakers than Somali.
12. Swedish is spoken by slightly more than 10 million people.
13. About 100 language have more speakers than Swedish.
14. Swedish belongs to the Indoeuropean language family.
15. The two biggest indoeuropean language are English and Spanish.
16. Swedish belongs to the Germanic subgroup (or branch) of the Indo-european language family.
17. The two largest languages in the Germanic group are English and German.
18. Somali belongs to the Afroasiatic language family.
19. The five largest languages in the Afroasiatic language family are Arabic, Hausa, Oromo, Amharic och Somali.

20. Somali belongs to the Cushitic subgroup within the Afroasiatic language family.
21. The three largest languages within the Cushitic subgroup are Oromo, Somali and Sidama.
22. Among the Afroasiatic languages there are also Semitic languages, Chadic languages, Berber languages, Omotic languages and extinct Egyptian languages.
23. The largest Semitic language is Arabic and the largest Chadic language is Hausa. Among Berber languages and Omotic languages there are no widely known languages, but Shilha (or Tachelhit, Tashelhiyt, Taclhiyt) with about 6 million speakers in Morocco is probably the largest Berber language while Wolaytta with about 2 million speakers in Ethiopia is the largest Omotic language. There is today no living Egyptian language, but Coptic is still used by the Coptic orthodox church as their liturgical language.
24. The Semitic languages constitute the largest group.
25. The four largest Semitic languages are Arabic, Amharic, Hebrew and Tigrinya.
26. The five largest languages in Africa are Arabic, Swahili, Hausa, Oromo, and Yoruba.
27. a) English, Indoeuropean family, Germanic subgroup.  
b) Italian, Indoeuropean family, Romance subgroup.  
c) Arabic, Afroasiatic family, Semitic subgroup.  
d) Amharic, Afroasiatic family, Semitic subgroup.  
e) Swahili, Niger-Congo family, Bantu subgroup.  
f) Kurdish, Indoeuropean family, Iranian subgroup.

- g) Oromo, Afroasiatic family, Cushitic subgroup.
- h) Finnish, Uralic family, Finno-Ugric subgroup.
- i) Persian, Indo-European family, Iranian subgroup.
- j) Afar, Afroasiatic family, Cushitic subgroup.
- k) Turkish, Turkic family.
- l) Hindi, Indo-European family, Indian subgroup.

28. One of Somali's closest relatives is of course Maay, if one chooses to regard it as an individual language. Other very close relatives are e.g. Rendille, Boni, Bayso, Elmolo, Dhaasanac and Arbore. Oromo is a slightly more distant, but still a rather close relative.

29. Oromo is a somewhat larger language than Somali, probably spoken by close to 40 million people. Rendille, Boni, Bayso, Elmolo, Dhaasanac and Arbore, on the other hand, are all very small languages, only spoken by a few thousand people. Maay is estimated to be spoken by about two million people.

30. The two Semitic languages Arabic (more than 300 million speakers) and Amharic (about 30 million speakers) both have more speakers than Somali.

31. The Cushitic and the Semitic languages all belong to the Afroasiatic language family.

32. Swedish and English both belong to the Germanic subgroup of the Indo-European language family.

33. Italian, French, Spanish and Portuguese all belong to the Romance subgroup of the Indo-European language family.

34. Swahili is not at all genetically related to Somali. Instead Swahili belongs to the Bantu subgroup of the Niger-Congo language family.

35. In Africa two language families dominate, the Afroasiatic family and the Niger-Congo family. These two families are of approximately the same size with around 500 million speakers each.

36. Furthermore, there is a smaller number of languages in Africa that belong to the Nilotic family and the Khoisan family. These two families only exist in Africa. Finally there are languages in Africa that belong to the Austronesian family and the Indoeuropean family. The only Austronesian language is Malagasy which is spoken in Madagascar. It has almost the same number of speakers as Somali. Among the Indoeuropean languages Afrikaans is only spoken in Africa (South Africa), but many other Indoeuropean languages are used in many different places, e.g. English, French, Portuguese...

## Suggested Readings

---

Degeneh Bijiga, Teferi (2015) *The Development of Oromo Writing System*. PhD thesis, University of Kent. <https://kar.kent.ac.uk/52387>

Jansson, Tore & Jan Retsö (2008) *Afrikas språk*. Göteborgs universitet. [https://canvas.gu.se/files/5093659/download?download\\_frd=1](https://canvas.gu.se/files/5093659/download?download_frd=1)

# Unit 2

## The older history of Somali

## 2. The older history of Somali

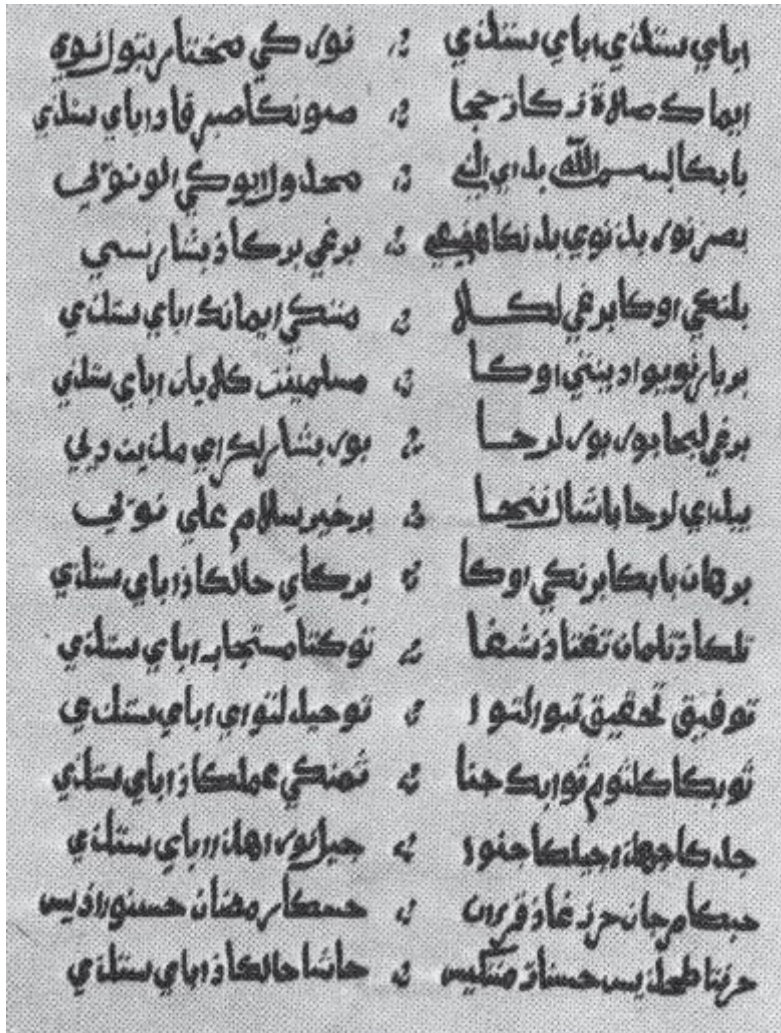
---

Ever since the middle ages Arabic has been the language primarily used to write texts in the lands where Somali is spoken. As the language of Islam, Arabic early became the natural choice for those who were to learn how to read and write. It was therefore natural to write all kinds of documents in Arabic. For several hundred years Arabic remained rather unchallenged as the written language of the area.

Not until in the 1700's and 1800's an interest for local languages began to emerge in East Africa. The reason was then that there was hope that Islam's message would reach people more effectively through the use of local languages. Early on Swahili began to be written with the Arabic script for this purpose. One can assume that this also inspired the use of Arabic script to write in Somali. One of the first to do so was probably Haji Ali Majerten who in the early 1800's lived in Nugal, but later on moved to the Mogadishu area (Idaajaa n.d., note 2). The best known attempts to write Somali in Arabic script were made towards the end of the 1800's by Sheikh Awees Mahamed from Barawe who wrote a considerable amount of poetry (Banti 1988: 21).

During the late 1800's European missionaries and linguists made various attempts to adapt the Latin script to the Somali language. For a long time these attempts were very little known among the Somalis, and when it finally became more generally known that attempts were conducted to write Somali with Latin script this was met with partially negative reactions, mainly for religious reasons (Idaajaa n.d.: 2).

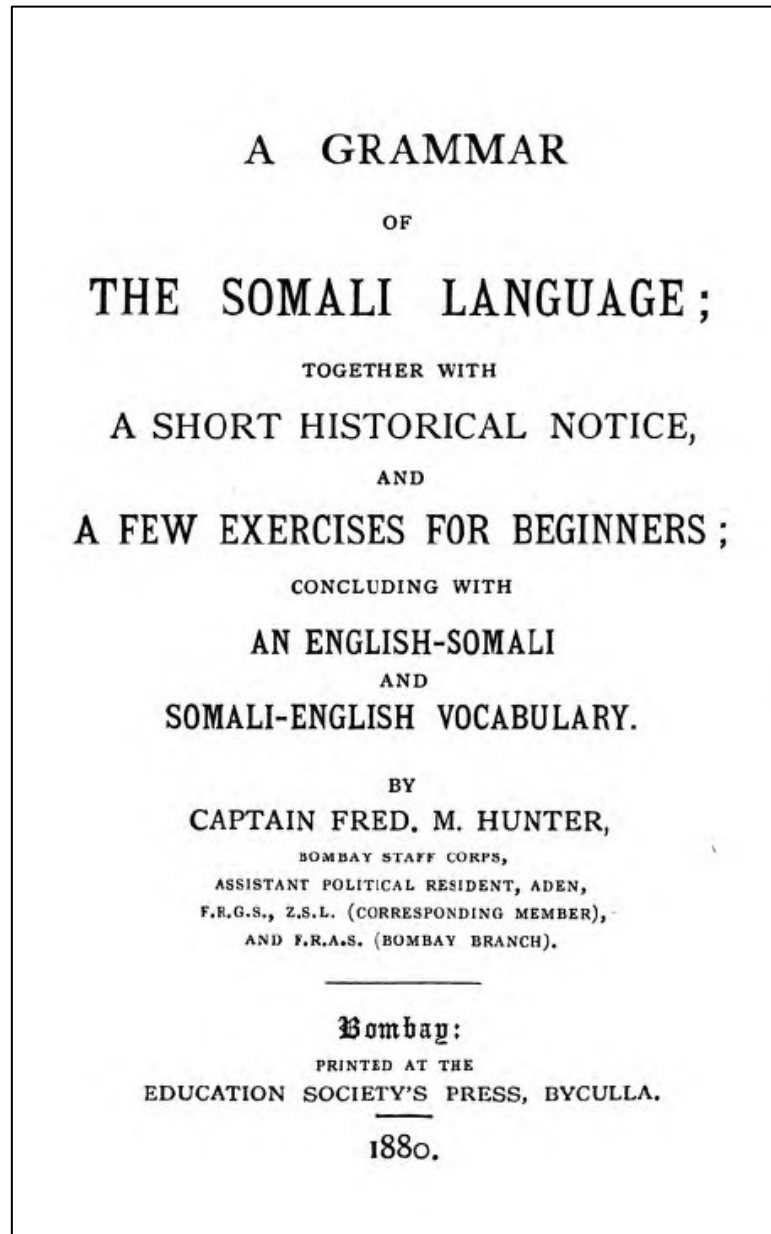




*Abbaay sittidey abbaay sittidey nuurkii Mukhtaar batuula Nabii*  
*Iimaanka salaata sakaat xijaa soonkaa sabarkaada abbaay sittidey*  
*Baabkaa bismillaahi biddaaya anNabii mahadoola abbowkey Allow Nebiyee*  
*Basar nuur badnooy beddenkaa hillacaa berigii barakaada bishaara na sii*  
*Ballankii awkaa berigii la galaa mininkii iimaanka abbaay sittidey*  
*Barbaar Nebiyow diintii awkaa muslimiinta galaayaan abbaay sittidey*  
*Berigii la baxaa buurbuur la rahaa buur bishaara la koraaya Madiinadiyey*

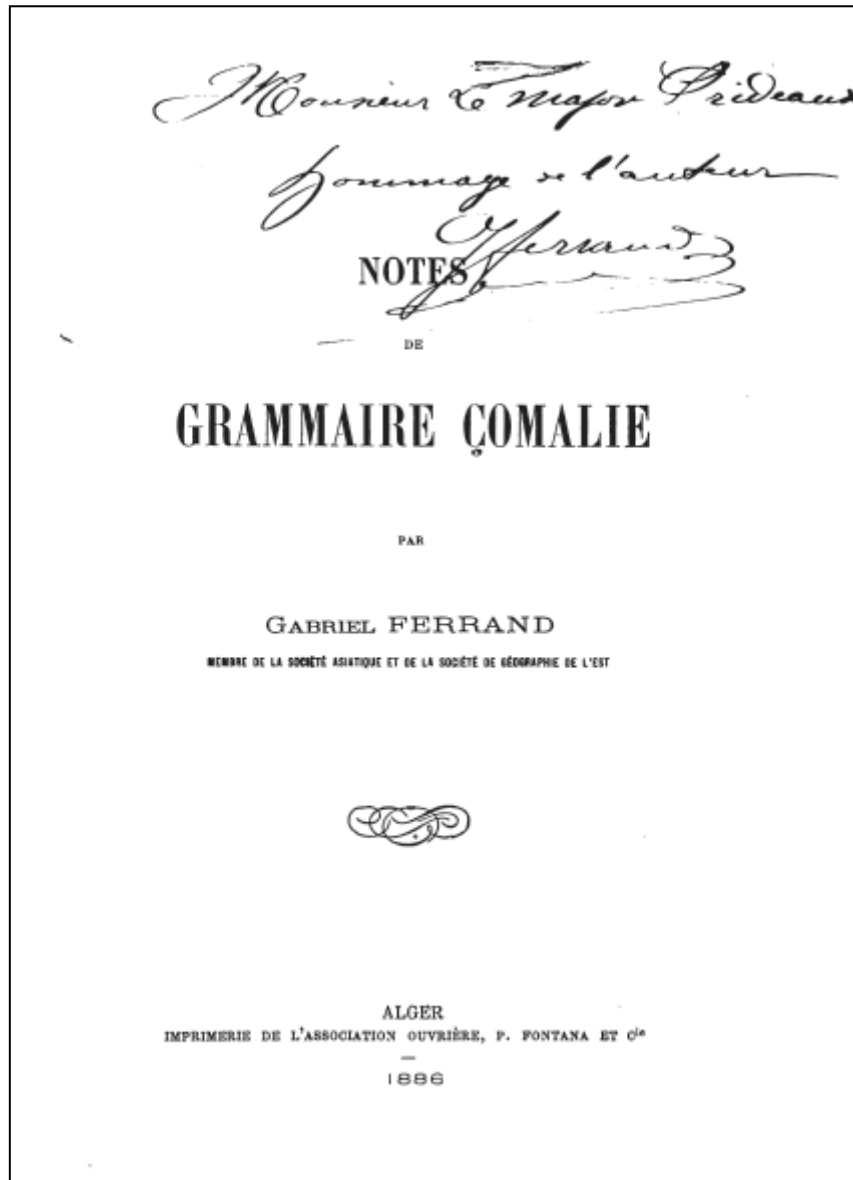
Illustration 1. The first page of *Abbaay sittidey* by Sheikh Awees Mahamed  
 with corresponding Latin transcription. Source: Banti (1988).

The first real reference grammar of Somali was written in English by Fred Hunter. It consists of 181 pages and was printed in Bombay, India, in 1880. The author is not an trained linguist, but a military officer working in the Horn of Africa.



*Illustration 2. The first Somali reference grammar.*  
*The whole book (181 pages) can be accessed digitally at Gupea:*  
<http://hdl.handle.net/2077/57923>

The next Somali reference grammar was written in French by Gabriel Ferrand. It is considerably smaller, consisting of just 28 pages. It was printed in Alger in 1886.

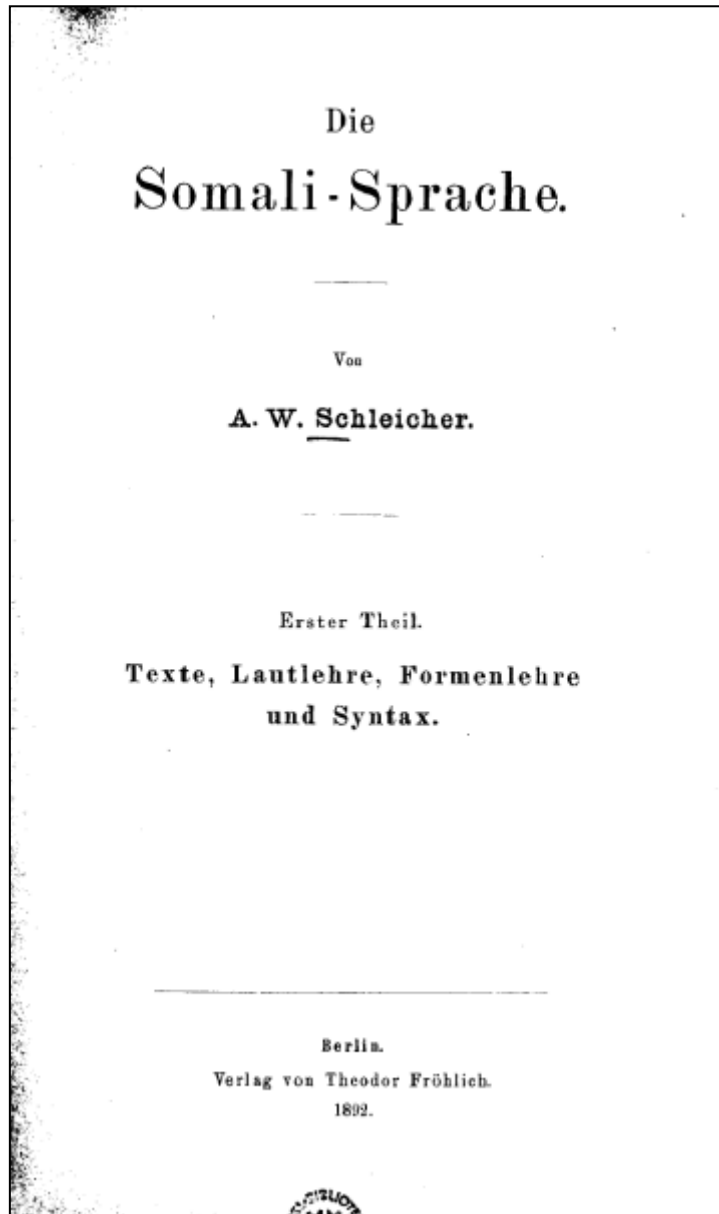


*Illustration 3. Somali reference grammar in French from 1886.*

*The whole book (28 pages) can be accessed digitally at Gupea:*

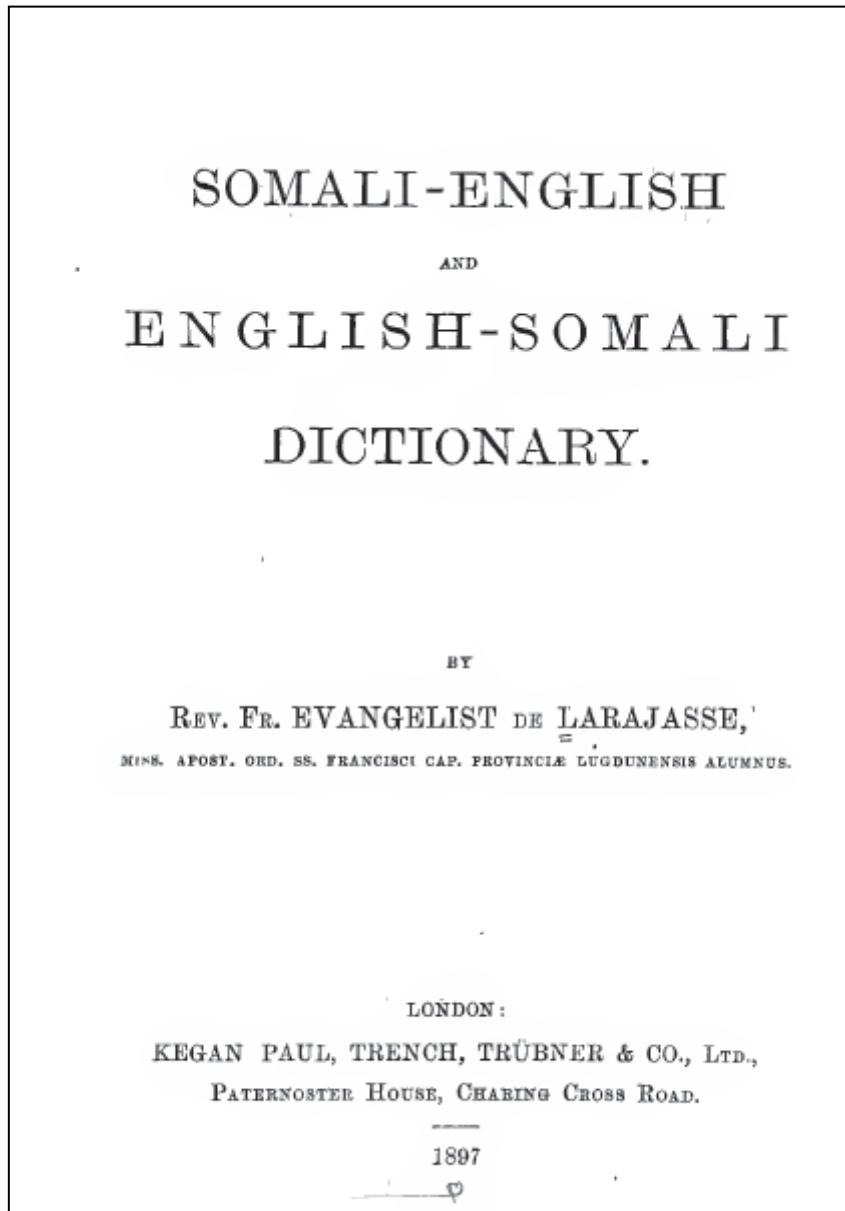
<https://gupea.ub.gu.se/handle/2077/57977>

Already in 1892 another reference grammar followed, this time in German, written by A. W. Schleicher, who was a PhD student in Berlin and Vienna. It comprises 159 pages and is printed in Berlin.



*Illustration 4. Somali reference grammar in German from 1892.  
The whole book (159 pages) can be accessed digitally at Gupea:  
<http://hdl.handle.net/2077/30609>*

In 1897 the first real dictionary of the Somali language was published. It was a Somali-English dictionary (with a shorter English-Somali appendix) written by Evangelist de Larajasse. The book contains 301 pages and was printed in London.

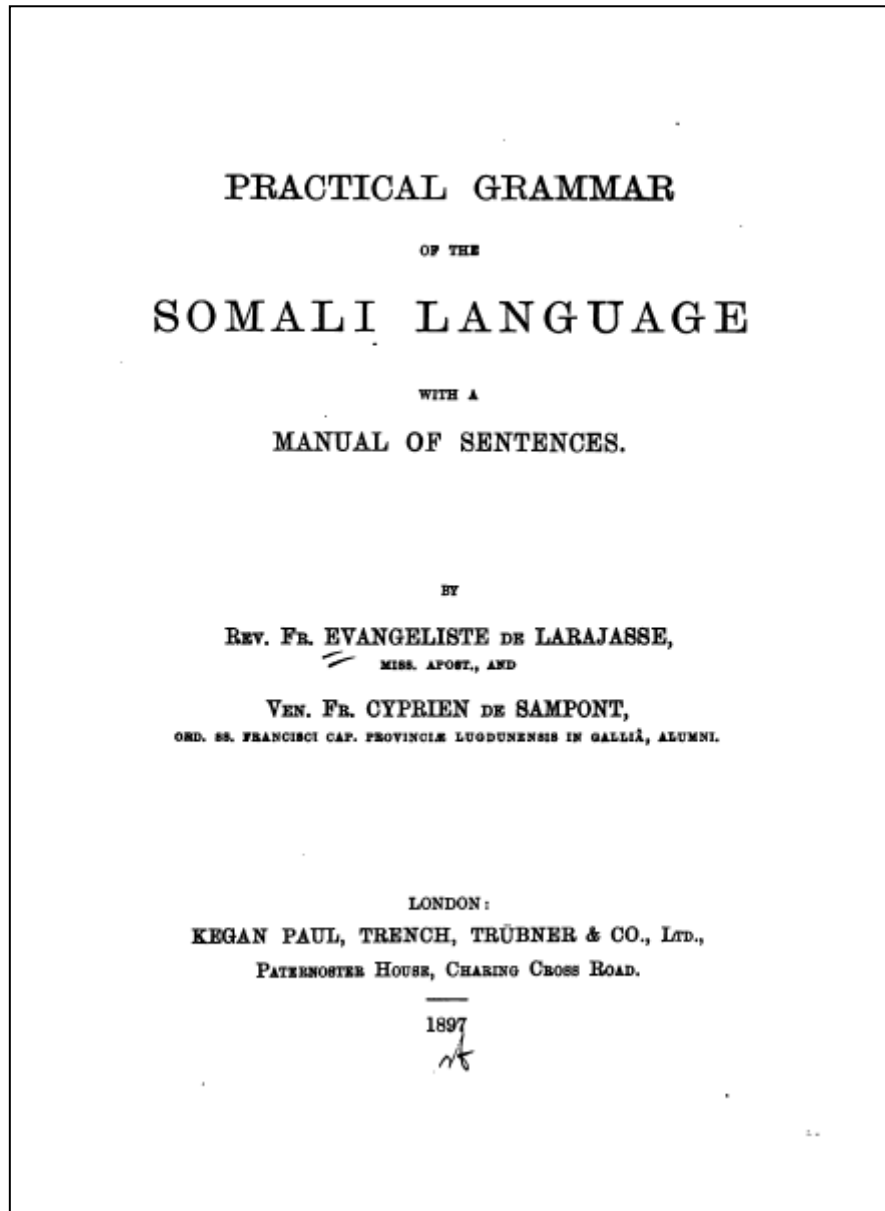


*Illustration 5. The first Somali dictionary.*

*The whole book (301 pages) can be accessed digitally at Arcadia:*

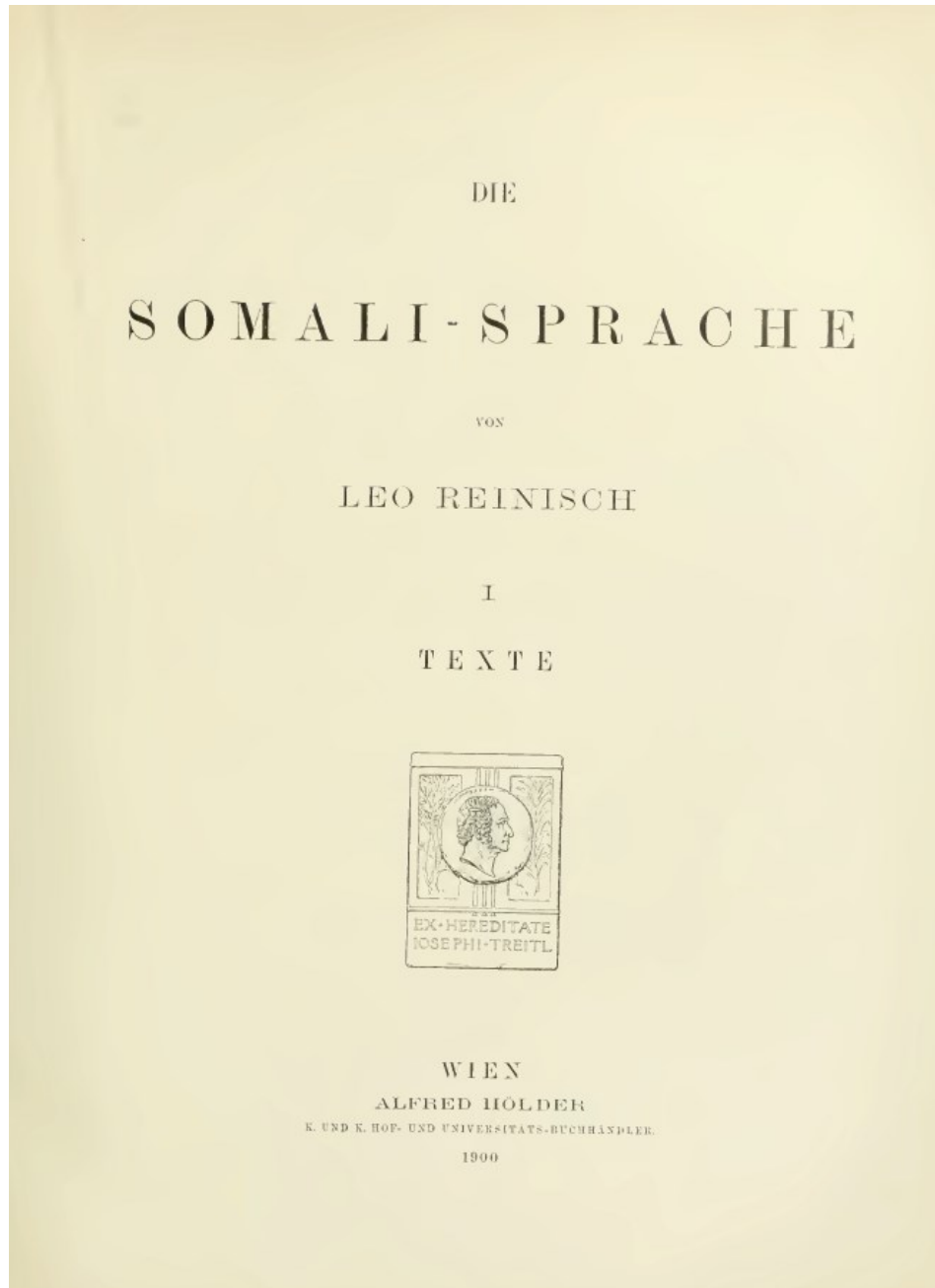
<http://hdl.handle.net/2307/5177>

In the same year also a Somali reference grammar written in English was published by the same author in cooperation his colleague Cyprien de Sampont. This book contains 265 pages and was also printed in London.



*Illustration 6. The second Somali reference grammar in English.  
The whole book (265 pages) can be accessed digitally at Arcadia:  
<http://hdl.handle.net/2307/5366>*

In 1900, a collection of Somali texts was published in Vienna. It contains 287 pages and was edited by Leo Reinisch, 1832–1919, considered the founder of Cushitic studies, professor of Egyptology 1868–1900, and Vice Chancellor of the University of Vienna in the 1890s (Pugach 2006). Reinisch partially builds on his student Schleicher's work, since Schleicher died before he was able to publish the materials that he had collected.



*Illustration 7. An anthology of Somali texts from 1900.*  
The whole book (287 pages) can be accessed digitally at Gupea:  
<http://hdl.handle.net/2077/30613>



## 73. Vater und son.

*Nín-bā hōlā badan lahā, nínku-se  
inan bū lá yahay.*

*Markāsū nínki bukóday ō inan-kísi  
ká yidi: »haddán dinto, hōláha ō dan  
adā is ká la; hasé-ahāte sáddeh waḥ is  
kú ōgó: dīg sokáya ha gálin! haddád dīg  
sokáya gášo, hōláha ō dan yā la ga gá  
mag qáta: markāsád ūyqōda. Hāta-ná  
wíḥi ḥarāṇa is ká ōgó! Hāta-ná nāg ti  
basári'a há gūrsan! Haddúd gūrsato, sōr  
wisíḥ-la yay kū sísa. ad qáho kú qáta,  
ad ū dímata.»*

*Markāsū inanki yidi: »háyje!« Mar-  
kāsū inanki bári dúmbe nāg basári'a gūr-  
saday.*

*Markāsáy ūša dúmbe sor wisíḥ-la ū  
kéntay, markāsū sōrti wisíḥda lahúyd ár-  
kay, markāsū gábiyay:*

*»Allah lulálaye, ilayn gājo wā kulúšahay!  
Allah lulálaye, Allah sōr wisíḥ-la yā ī  
kéntay!*

*Allah lulálaye, ilayn basári wā ḥansīr!  
Allah lulálaye, abbáhay-bā bári hóre ī gú  
yidi: nāgti basári'a há gūrsan!*

*Allah lulálaye, mahān abbáhay ū máqli  
wāy! :*

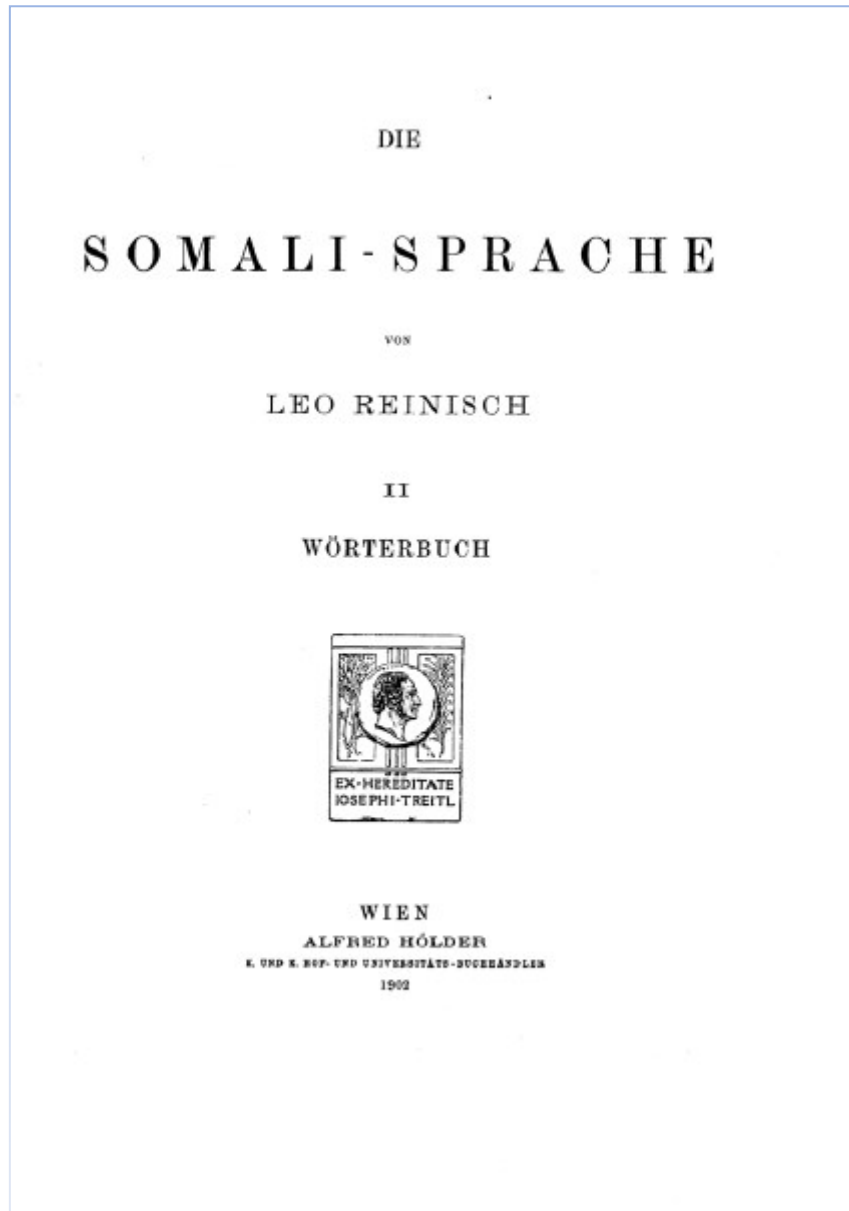
Illustration 8. An example of a text from

Leo Reinisch: *Die Somali-Sprache*. Wien 1900.

The whole book (287 pages) can be accessed digitally at Gupea:

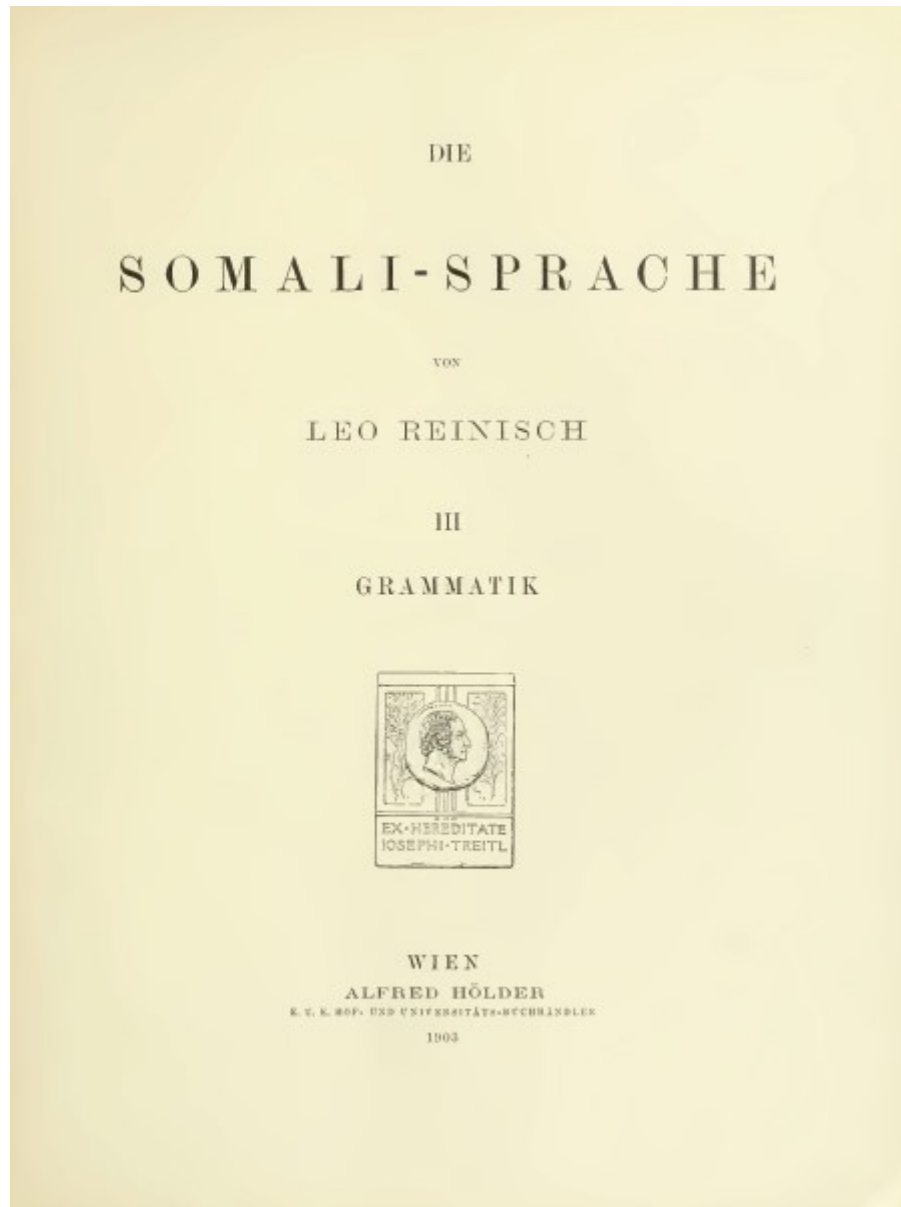
<http://hdl.handle.net/2077/30613>

In 1902, Prof. Leo Reinisch also published the second comprehensive dictionary of Somali. It was a Somali-German dictionary (with a shorter German-Somali appendix) containing 540 pages.



*Illustration 9. Somali-German dictionary from 1902.  
Part of the book can be accessed digitally at Arcadia:  
<http://hdl.handle.net/2307/1705>*

The following year Prof. Reinisch also published a reference grammar with 126 pages.



*Illustration 10. Somali reference grammar in German from 1903.*

*The whole book (126 pages) can be accessed digitally at Gupea:*

<http://hdl.handle.net/2077/30610>

In 1908 and 1909 two Somali readers were printed in Sweden by the priest Per Olsson who was running a missionary station in Jubbaland 1899–1926 together with several other Swedes (Tyrberg 2015). The books were intended for the schools that were run by the missionaries in Kismaayo, Goob Weyn and Yoontoy (situated in Jubbaland, today's Jubbada Hoose or Lower Jubba Region). He also printed a book of biblical stories and the Gospel of Mark.

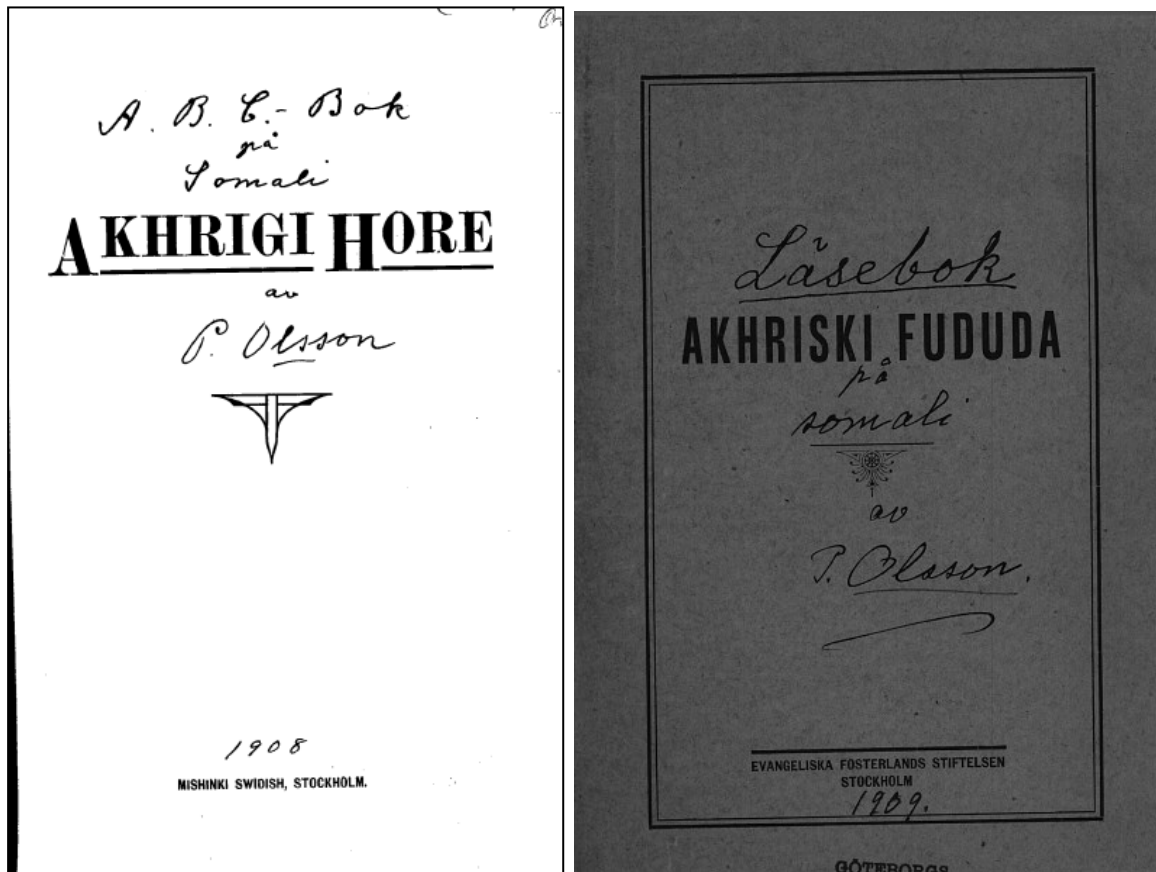


Illustration 11. Two Somali readers printed in Sweden in 1908 and 1909.

Both books can be accessed digitally at Gupea:

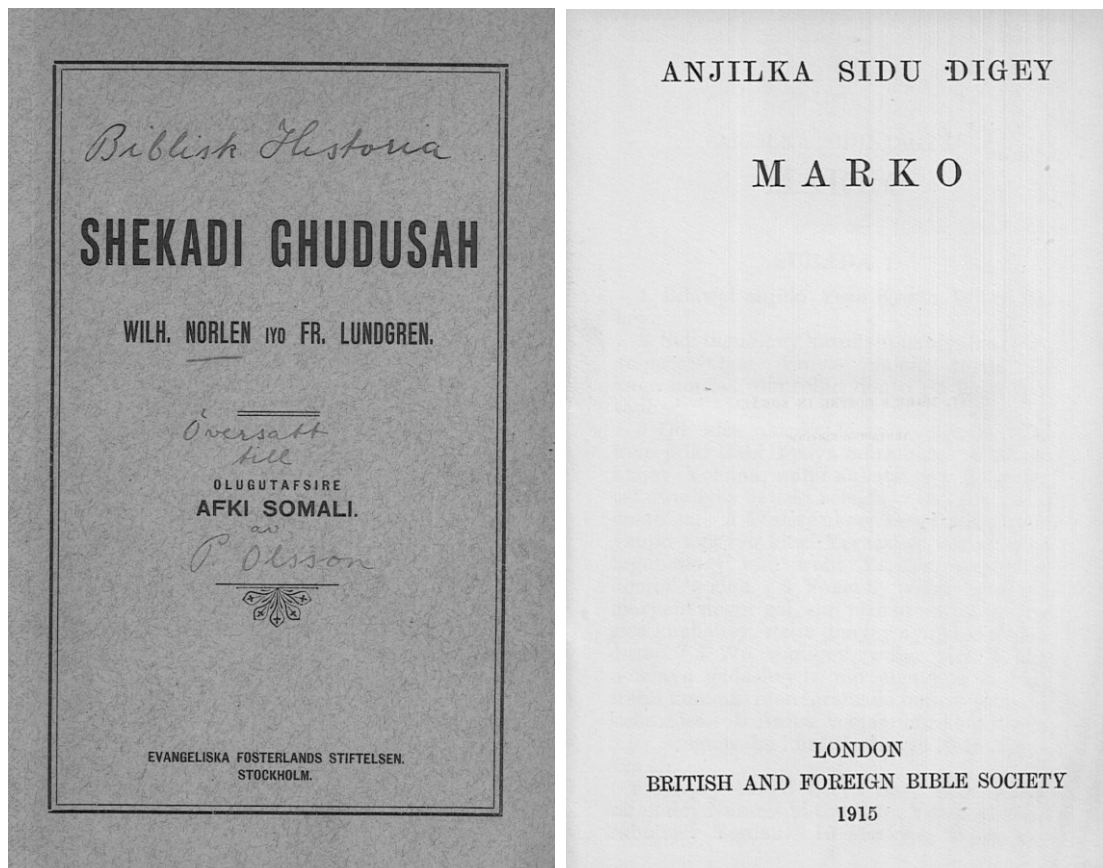
<http://hdl.handle.net/2077/30595> ; <http://hdl.handle.net/2077/30598>

### Shekadi gel iyo nin maskine.

Wahas aha nin maskine, wahas ukae keligis durka. Beri walba inu tago jidka tugsado un, sidas shughul kisa way.

Berigo wahu arke dad odonayin gel kodha okadume. Wahay yiren: Adig abo, gel kayni dume maaragte? Wahu yire: Rati gina bala mia? Wahay yiren: Run way, inted kuaragte? Wahu yire hadana: Rati gan mahokola, lug tisa bedaḥde mahanuni? Wahay yiren: Run way, bes intes joga? Wahu yire: ma iligo bulaya rati gan? Wahay yiren: Run way, run way Abo, nosheg inted kuaragte. Wahu yire hadana: Ferti midikte barid mia, iyo ferti bedaḥde malab mia? Wahay yiren: Mahad kuogate ghalab kis? Ilowse run way hadal kaga, inted kuaragte bes? Wahu yire: Bes

*Illustration 12. A short story found in one of Per Olsson's readers.*



*Illustration 13. The Biblical Stories, printed in Sweden in 1908, and the Gospel of Mark, printed in Britain in 1915.*

*Both books can be accessed digitally at Gupea:*

<https://hdl.handle.net/2077/73304> ; <https://hdl.handle.net/2077/73308>

Both Latin and Arabic systems had been developed for writing Somali, but there were several different systems and quite some variation between the individual authors and their texts. Regardless of the type of script chosen, the same challenges had to be faced: it was necessary to find good symbols to represent all the sounds that occur in Somali. Neither the Arabic script, nor the Latin alphabet had ideal letters for all the Somali sounds. At the same time, the inventory of Somali sounds still hadn't been investigated systematically enough, hence there wasn't a good enough scientific basis to build on in order to develop the ideal alphabet and spelling system. All the early efforts were therefore to a certain degree characterised by the authors' personal preferences.

Some of the most typical Somali consonants were written in the following ways in some of the early publications:

Today's spelling	c	dh	j	kh	q	sh	x	y
Hunter 1880		ḍ	j	k'	ḡ	sh	h	y
Ferrand 1886	<sup>c</sup>	d/dh	dj		kh	ch	h'	i
Bricchetti-R. 1889		dh	gi		g	sci	h	j
Schleicher 1892	<sup>o</sup>	ḍ	j		ɣ	š	ḥ	y
Larajasse 1897	<sup>c</sup>	ḍ			ḥ	sh	ḥ	y
Reinisch 1900	<sup>c</sup>	ḍ	j		q	š	ḥ	y
Schleicher 1900	<sup>o/c</sup>	ḍ	j		ḡ	š	ḥ	y
Kirk 1905	<sup>c</sup>	ḍ	j		kh	sh	hh	i
Jahn 1906	<sup>c</sup>	ḍ	j		q	š	ḥ	y
Olsson 1909	–	dh	j	kh	gh	sh	<u>h</u>	y
Moreno 1955	<sup>c</sup>	ḍ	ḡ		q	š	ḥ	y



Long vowels were also written in a variety of ways.

In order to avoid the choice between Arabic and Latin script, but also to strengthen the uniqueness of the Somali language, the idea of creating a unique Somali script was born. Between 1920–1922, the first serious attempt was made to create a unique script for Somali. The creator was Osman Yusuf Kenadid, a scholar in Islam and the Arabic language. He descended from the family ruling the Sultanate of Hobyo at the southern coast of Somalia between 1884 and 1925. He claimed that his script was inspired neither by the Latin nor by the Arabic alphabet. Despite his claims, though, one can quite easily see similarities between the shape of these new letters and certain letters in different existing alphabets. Also, Osman's new script was written from left to right, like the Latin script. Initially this new script, under the name *Osmania*, enjoyed some interest in the part of Somalia that was then ruled by Italy.



*Illustration 14. The Osmania alphabet.*

When the first Somali political party, the Somali Youth League, was founded in 1943, a decision was taken to use Osmanya to write in Somali and the party decided to work for the introduction of this script as the



official script for Somali. The party also took the initiative to start teaching the script and to some extent the Osmanya script also spread to schools outside the Italian colony, e.g. to Addis Ababa and Yemen. However, after some time, there was considerable disagreement about the Osmanya script as it began to be considered too closely related to the family and clan whose name was used for it.

Some years later, the Somali Youth League (SYL) had a new leadership, and the chairman Haji Mohamed Hussein was strongly opposed to the Somali language. Instead, he wanted to introduce Arabic as the official language of Somalia. On the 20 April 1950, a referendum was organised. The result was in favour of Arabic. Already on the 22 April, the presidum of SYL wrote a request to the Italian authorities asking for the introduction of Arabic as the country's official language (Maino 1957: 17), arguing that there is no unified form of Somali that could be taken as the point of departure for standardised Somali. The vocabulary was also claimed to be limited, making it impossible to express oneself well enough in Somali. Arabic, however, as a great language with a rich culture, a language of international communication and a LINGUA FRANCA<sup>6</sup>, was already functioning well in Somalia. The majority of the Somali population was claimed to already know Arabic. Haji Mohamed probably tried to gain political power by gaining support from religious leaders and leading businessmen. The answer from the Italian authorities on the 17 May was that Arabic can already in the present situation be studied alongside with Italian in the Somali schools. On the 2 February 1951, the territorial council furthermore approved a resolution confirming that Somali is always to be

---

<sup>6</sup> A LINGUA FRANCA is a foreign language which is used for communication between persons who don't know each other's mother tongue. In today's world English is a very common lingua franca, but in some parts of the world other languages clearly dominate in this function.

used in oral communication and that a solution needs to be found as soon as possible in order to be able to write in Somali (Maino 1957: 18).

At this point, the crucial question wasn't any longer which script to choose for Somali, but which language should be the official language of the new Somali Republic: Somali, Arabic, Italian or English?

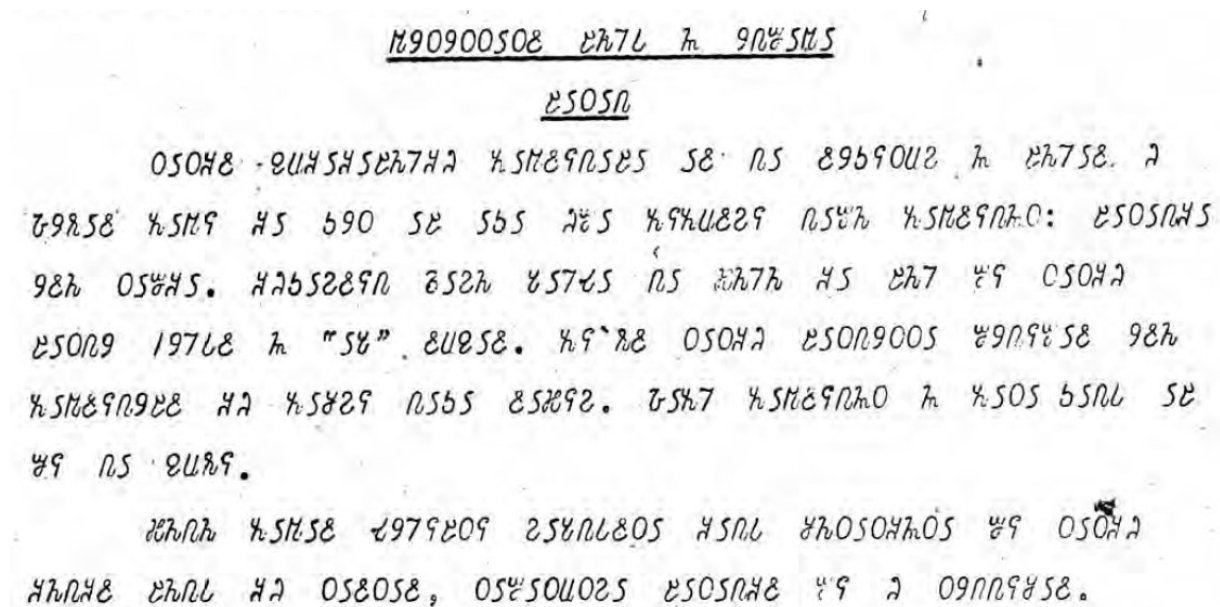
The population was divided by their different opinions. On the one hand, there was serious opposition against Somali among those who wanted to introduce Arabic as the country's official language, on the other hand there was also a strong oppositions against the Latin script among those in favour of Somali, wanting to write Somali with the Arabic script, mainly for religious reasons.

In this complicated situation, the authorities of the new republic decided in 1962 to make English the new common language of tuition in the Somali primary and secondary schools (Hared 1992: 33). At university level, however, Italian remained the major language of instruction, and it did so even in the 70's and 80's, when Somali was introduced in primary and secondary schools.

# Unique Somali scripts

In addition to the Latin and the Arabic script, a number of unique scripts have also been suggested for Somali during the 1900's. The three most widely known are presented below. In addition to these three there were another eight less known suggestions that were all evaluated by a Somali language commission in 1960-1961.

The oldest and most well known is Osmania, created in the beginning of the 1920's.



Section from: Keenadiid (1966) *Sheekada yaabka le oo dadka*.

# The Osmania Alphabet

$\delta = '$	$\mathfrak{b} = \text{m}$	$\mathcal{O} = 0$
$\mathfrak{w} = \text{b}$	$\mathcal{Z} = \text{n}$	$\mathcal{S} = 1$
$\mathfrak{o} = \text{t}$	$\mathfrak{h} = \text{w}$	$\mathcal{E} = 2$
$\mathfrak{l} = \text{j}$	$\mathfrak{e} = \text{h}$	$\mathcal{H} = 3$
$\mathcal{M} = \text{x}$	$\mathfrak{e} = \text{y}$	$\mathfrak{d} = 4$
$\mathfrak{h} = \text{kh}$		$\mathfrak{e} = 5$
$\mathcal{O} = \text{d}$		$\mathfrak{y} = 6$
$\mathfrak{r} = \text{r}$	$\mathcal{S} = \text{a}$	$\mathcal{J} = 7$
$\mathfrak{d} = \text{s}$	$\mathfrak{a} = \text{aa}$	$\mathcal{C} = 8$
$\mathfrak{sh} = \text{sh}$	$\mathfrak{e} = \text{e}$	$\mathcal{U} = 9$
$\mathfrak{dh} = \text{dh}$	$\mathfrak{ee} = \text{ee}$	
$\mathfrak{c} = \text{c}$	$\mathfrak{i} = \text{i}$	
$\mathfrak{g} = \text{g}$	$\mathfrak{ii} = \text{ii}$	
$\mathfrak{f} = \text{f}$	$\mathfrak{o} = \text{o}$	
$\mathfrak{q} = \text{q}$	$\mathfrak{oo} = \text{oo}$	
$\mathfrak{k} = \text{k}$	$\mathfrak{u} = \text{u}$	
$\mathfrak{l} = \text{l}$	$\mathfrak{uu} = \text{uu}$	

Try reading the rest of this short text...

dayuuradaha   cusubi   waa dhawr   jaad  
 OS&h7SOS&S   ዓለፈዋል   ነፃ   ሌሊት   190.  
waxaa   ka   mid   ah   kuwa dheereeya   oo   loo  
 ንሙሉ   ዓለ   ነፃ   ላይ   ዓለኝ   ሌሊት   ነፃ   ስሙ  
 ጸናታልህ   09797ሊ   ጸናታል   ነፃ   ላይ   ነፃ   ንሙሉ  
 ዓለ   ነፃ   ላይ   ዓለኝ   ነፃ   ስሙ   ንሙሉ  
 ነፃ   ነፃ   ነፃ   ዓለ   ስሙ   ነፃ   ነፃ   ነፃ  
 ሌሊት   ስሙ   ነፃ   ነፃ   ነፃ   ነፃ   ነፃ  
 ዓለ   ዓለ   ዓለ   ዓለ   ዓለ   ዓለ   ዓለ  
 ነፃ   ነፃ   ነፃ   ነፃ   ነፃ   ነፃ   ነፃ







## Unit 2. Study Questions

---

1. When were texts first written in Somali (not only individual words)?
2. Which script was initially used by Somali poets?
3. Which script was initially used by linguists?
4. When was the first large Somali dictionary published? In which language were the translations? What was the name of the author?
5. When was the first grammar of Somali published? In which language? What was the name of the author?
6. What is a lingua franca?
7. What was the name of the first uniquely Somali alphabet? When and by whom was it created?
8. Which script was advocated by SYL (the Somali Youth League)?
9. Later on that party change its preferences for a script. How?
10. When was it decided in Mogadishu for the first time that the authorities should start using Somali as the spoken medium of communication and find a solution to start using it also in written communication as soon as possible?

## Unit 2. Suggested Solutions

---

1. Substantial texts in Somali first occur during the second half of the 1800s. The oldest preserved texts are from the end of the 19th century.
2. Somali poets use the Arabic script.
3. Linguists use Latin script.

4. The first large dictionary was published in London in 1897. It was a Somali-English dictionary prepared by Evangelist de Larajasse.
5. The first Somali grammar was published in 1880 in Bombay. It was written in English by Fredrick M. Hunter.
6. A lingua franca is a language that is used by people who have different mother tongues as a medium of communication in cases when neither of their two mother tongues can be used because they don't speak each other's languages. In Africa it is common that English, Arabic, French or Portuguese serve as a lingua franca.
7. The first uniquely Somali alphabet was Osmania, created in the early 1920's by Osman Yusuf Kenadid.
8. In the 1940's SYL advocated the Osmania script and wanted to make Somali the official language using Osmania for writing it.
9. Around 1950 SYL instead decided that they wanted Arabic to be the official language of the country.
10. The first decision that the authorities should use Somali for oral communication was taken in Mogadishu in 1951. As soon as possible it should also be used in writing.

## Suggested Readings

---

Giorgio Banti. 1988. [Scrittura](#). I boken *Aspetti dell'espressione artistica in Somalia*, redaktör Annarita Puglielli, s. 21–29.

Mauro Tosco. 2010. [Somali writings](#). I webbtidskriften *Afrikanistik-Aegyptologie online*.

## References

---

Andrzejewski, B. W. 1974. The introduction of a national orthography for Somali. <http://hdl.handle.net/2307/2550> (9.3.2020)

Banti, Giorgio. 1988. *Scrittura*. In Puglielli, Annarita (ed.), *Aspetti dell'espressione artistica in Somalia*, 21–29.  
<http://hdl.handle.net/2307/997> (9.3.2020)

Galaal, M.H.I. et al. 1961. *Linguistic report. The report of the Somali Language Committee*. Mogadiscio. <http://hdl.handle.net/2307/2620> (9.3.2020)

Hared, Mohamed Farah. 1992. *Modernization and Standardization in Somali Press Writing*. PhD thesis. Los Angeles: U Southern California.  
<http://digitallibrary.usc.edu/cdm/ref/collection/p15799coll3/id/266559> (9.3.2020)

'Idaajaa', Axmed F. Cali. No date. Shire Jama Ahmed. A pioneer of the development of Somalia's national orthography. Manuscript.  
<https://hdl.handle.net/2307/2584> (9.3.2020)

Lamberti, Marcello. 1986. *Map of Somali Dialects in the Somali Democratic Republic*. Hamburg: Helmut Buske Verlag. 57 pp.  
<http://hdl.handle.net/2307/3034>

- Maino, Mario. 1957. Breve storia della lingua somala. *Somalia d'oggi*.  
Giugno II/2. Mogadiscio. 17-19. <http://hdl.handle.net/2307/750>  
(9.3.2020)
- Mansuur, C. C. 2009. *Taariikhda iyo luqadda bulshada Soomaaliyeed*.  
Stockholm: Iftiinka aqoonta.
- Mohamed, O. O. 1976. *Administrative efficiency and administrative language in Somalia*. < <http://hdl.handle.net/2307/1553> > Accessed 9.3.2020.
- Tosco, Mauro. 2010. Somali writings. *Afrikanistik-Aegyptologie online*.  
<https://www.afrikanistik-aegyptologie-online.de/archiv/2010/2723>  
(9.3.2020)
- Tyrberg, Andreas. 2015. Kyrka i Jubaland?: EFS missionsfält i Jubaland  
1904-1935. MA thesis. Uppsala University, Department of Theology.  
<http://urn.kb.se/resolve?urn=urn:nbn:se:uu:diva-275827> (9.3.2020)

# Theme 3: The Standardisation of Somali

Morgan Nilsson

September 13, 2024

# 1 What is a standard language?

Simply stated, a standard language is a form of a language that is relatively stable and used in different public settings, such as education, politics and mass media. The purpose is usually to facilitate communication between the inhabitants of a linguistic area or country. A standard language is first of all a written language, but also the spoken language in public settings is often aiming towards that very same standard, even though variation in spoken language is usually considerably larger than it is in the written standard.

To a large extent a standard language evolves on its own over a long period of time, but it is also common that this process is influenced to a smaller or larger degree by different groups of the society. It normally the language of influential persons or groups that constitute the foundation for the standard language. Such influential persons or groups may be of different kinds, e.g., politicians, wealthy traders and businessmen, religious leaders and writers or poets enjoying high esteem by the public. Standard Russian is said to have emerged from the language of Alexander Pushkin, and Italian from the language of Dante Alighieri. For the Somali standard the language of the traditional oral poetry was an early source of inspiration.

Such influential people's language can sometimes function as a foundation for politically governed language planning. The authorities may then take initiatives for language reforms which are carried through in the educational system and the administrative bodies of a whole country. This is something that happened in Somalia in the 1970's and 1980's. How mass media react and to what extent they adopt the imposed standard, and what kind of power the politicians have over the mass media are of course important factors in this development. In Somalia the military dictatorship had total control over all mass media and publishers from 1969 until the end of the 1980's.

Most standard languages are described in different handbooks, mainly dictionaries and reference grammars. The production of such handbooks is referred to as the CODIFICATION of the language. Such handbooks are sometimes produced after a political decision, as was the case with the first monolingual Somali dictionary from 1976 and the first reference grammar from 1971 (2nd edition 1973), but many codificational handbooks are produced by individuals or by private publishing houses, and gain their status based on the good reputation of the author or the publisher. This is typically the situation for English. Somali of today has a quite weak codification, as no author or publisher enjoys exceptional prestige, hence the codification can only be derived from "the sum" of all the major handbooks available.

## 2 The first steps towards a Somali standard

In 1941 radio transmissions started for the first time from Hargeisa and in 1951 also from Mogadishu (Hassan & Ahmed 2011: 12, 44). Both stations were transmitting in several languages, also in Somali. Already from the very beginning the editorial staff had to make decisions about what “kind” of Somali to use for broadcasting. Of course, the choice fell on a variety of Somali that enjoyed high esteem and was considered prestigious. Soon the language used by the radio became more and more unified and stable, which is exactly what is typical for standardisation.

Above all there was a need to develop new vocabulary in order to be able to speak about different abstract notions. In other words, Somali terminology was needed. Some of the most urgent areas were politics and economy, as these areas are very common subjects in news reports. To develop and enrich a language’s vocabulary and strive towards a situation where all the speakers of a language use the same word for the same notion, so that misunderstandings are avoided, is also a very important part of the standardisation process.

The next important step in the standardisation process was the establishment of a number of theatres in different towns and cities during the 1950’s as they began to perform in Somali. Here the language was used in new settings, and another part of the language and its vocabulary was slowly adjusted to a common standard norm. Within artistic areas, such as theatre, poetry and fiction, there is of course a larger freedom to use the language in more personal ways, but at the same time it is completely natural that the public and the artistic forms of language influence each other mutually so that both forms slowly converge and the standard language over a period of time becomes more and more unified.

But at this time, Somali was practically only used in its oral form. The discussions about the written language were completely focused on which alphabet to adopt. As long as that issue wasn’t resolved, it was difficult to start using written Somali to any larger extent, even if certain individuals of course did write in Somali to some extent as far back as the late 1800’s. The problem was that there were different groups advocating different solutions: Arabic script, Latin script or a unique Somali script. In addition to that there were also groups in favour of discharging Somali as a written language altogether, and make Arabic the official language of Somalia.



### 3 Yassin and Shire

Two persons played a very important role for the standardisation of Somali, Yassin Osman Kenadid and Shire Jama Ahmed. They were both very knowledgeable about languages.

Shire Jama Ahmed was born in 1936 in Wardheer in the Somali part of Ethiopia. Early in life, he studied Arabic in Mogadishu. Between 1945 and 1951 he attended a British school in the north and then returned to his Arabic studies. In 1955 he received a scholarship to study at the university of Cairo. It seems probable that he devoted the years in Egypt to the study of languages and linguistics. In 1957 he returned, 21 years old, to Somalia and immediately joined the on-going language debate.

There was large resistance against the Latin script. Osmania was considered suitable on nationalistic grounds, whereas the Arabic script was considered suitable on religious grounds. The Latin script was almost completely associated with the exercise of colonial power, and the few persons who openly advocated the Latin script had to endure harsh criticism from the general public.

Yassin, Shire and many, many others were convinced that there was no reason to choose another official language than Somali, since Somalia – as one of very few countries in Africa – had a linguistically almost homogeneous population. They pointed out that other very large muslim countries, like Turkey, Iran and Pakistan, had chosen a local language as the official language, not Arabic. Not to be able to use one's mother tongue as the official language poses large obstacles for the majority of the population, and it would largely hinder the future development of Somalia. They claimed that it was absolutely necessary to choose Somali as the official language if one was serious about working for the introduction of public schools for the whole population and erasing illiteracy.

Even though Yassin and Shire had a common goal in making Somali the official language of the country, there was still serious disagreement between them. Yassin was an advocate of the Osmania script developed by his father, whereas Shire advocated the Latin script, mainly for technical and economical reasons. The existing printing presses and typewriters in Somalia could handle the Latin script since they were used to write the languages of the colonial powers, English and Italian.

Illustration 1: The first page in Somali in a daily newspaper, 2 March 1957



## 4 The first public text in Somali

The first Somali Prime Minister (1949-1961) Abdullahi Issa Mohamud was an advocate of the Latin script and in the Italophone daily newspaper *Corriere della Somalia* a page in Somali writeten with the Latin script was introduced as early as 2 March 1957 under the title *Wargeys-ka Somalied*. (See illustration 1.) However, due to serious protests this page disappeared just as suddenly as it had been introduced.

This intermezzo caused Shire to work even more intensely for the introduction of the Latin script. He compared the Latin script to things like electricity, pointing out that both electricity and the Latin script had been introduced in Somalia by the colonial powers, but nobody wanted to get rid of electricity. He also pointed out that other large languages in mulsim countries, for example Turkish, hade introduced the Latin script successfully. By and large, Shire had developed his own proposal for a Latin alphabet for Somali already by 1960, and he had designed it in almost the same way as the alphabet that tiday constitutes the official standard Somali orthography.

## 5 The first language commission

When the independent republic of Somalia was formed on 1 July 1960, the language issue was not solved. Instead Italian and English, togheter with Arabic, continued to be used as administrative languages. People now came to realise how difficult it is to have a foreign language as the official language of the country. The need to introduce Somali as the official language became more and more evident for large parts of the population. Already

Illustration 2: An article in *Wargeys-ka Somaliyed*, 2 March 1957

# Wareg-gî dhowâ ê hâkin-ka magâlo-da baydhabod iyo madah-dî ay kulmen

Hâkin-ka magâlo-da Baydhabod ê Ahmed Râge 'Abdi ah bâ malin dhaweyd wuhû ku sô waregey bûloyin-ka ka tirsan magâladisa.

Bûlo-da Gorisane la yirahdo mar-ku tagey hâkin-ku ô û ku waregey iyada iyo war-têda ba bu wahû u yimid duq-î mêl-sha ô isagu na u ga waramey in la gu nabad qâbo bûlo-da ô ay miyiran tahai, la na bihiyo 'anshurta bêraha. Wuhû duqu hâkin-ka ogeysiyey in 'êl-ki bûlo-da lô bâhan yahai in la qodo. Wahâ ra'iyey dad-ka ka sokow in bêr-tu na ku tôseyso. Hâkin-ku na sabab-tî dahisey 'êl-ka qodnin-kîsa bu uga waramey wahâ na u ka ballan qâdey inû u dadâlo, dabadêd na hâkin-kî wahû sô adey bûlo-da la yirahdo Tigan-Kasa Sheb.

Mêl-shân na wahû ku la kulmay dugow-dî iyo 'ulumodî, hawên-ku na wâ ay u 'ar-rab-dhaben, dhallin yaro-du na wâ ay u 'ayârtay wahâ na la tiriyey hêso Dowlad-da amman-têda ah. Hâkin-ku, gêd-kî 'âdo-da ahâ hostisa bu ikhyar-tî ku la hadley, wahâ

na u gar siyey salan-tisa iyo tî hâkin-ka jaha-da. Dawr odey bâ ka hadlay gêd-kî ô ku mahad naqay hâkin-kî wahâ na y weydisten in lô qodo 'êlal iyo waroh. Mar-kôda wahâ hadley ô la dardarmey hâkin-ka duqa la yirahdo Hussên 'Abdi Nûr iyo rag kale ô ku adkêyey 'od-kôda inû gârsiyo hâkimmo-da sare ô degdeg lô ga kâlmeyo biyo yarida, wahâ ballanqâdey in la sô diro rag farsamo leh ô firya sidi wah-lô sameyn karo.

Dabadêd-na wahû u sô 'ar-rabay Baydhaboh.

Nin-ka madah ah haffis-ka ka furan Addis-Ababa ô ka tirsan mêlsha la yirahdo UNICEF, la na yirahdo maga'isa H. Ehrenstrale, iyo Fulvio Rizzetto bâ wahey ku hoyden Baydhabo, wahâ dhaweyey hâkin-ka Jahada Hâjî Bashir Isma'il, inti ay jôgen na magâloda u wêyn Alto Juba, wahay âd u dâwaden Isbital-ka iyo dugsi-ga wêyn ê Jahada iyo dugsiyoda kale, wahâ na ay âd u shekeysten nin-ka la madah-ah sida so'od-kôdu yahai iyo sidu wah tar-kôdu yahai.

on the 8 December 1960 the government of the new republic appointed a commission with nine members, led by Musa Ismail Galaal, to recommend the most suitable script for Somali from a purely technical perspective. The commission however pointed out itself in the report that was delivered on the 15 May 1961 about a suitable orthography for Somali, that the commission had also taken into consideration the economical situation in the country and the development of society in general.

The commission gave the public 15 days to submit proposal for a Somali orthography in order to then evaluate these proposals with respect to 17 criteria that the commission already on beforehand had formulated. Some of the most important criteria were that the script should be phonetic, simple (without accents or other support signs), economically defendable (possible to write and print with the equipment that already existed in the country), possible to use for telegraphing, easy to learn, possible to use for all dialects, as well as being unique for Somali (not directly imported from any other language). Questions regarding religion and culture were not included in the criteria, totally in accordance with the instructions given to the commission.

The whole commission first engaged in studies of orthography from a general linguistic perspective, telegraphy, as well as Somali phonetics and grammar.

18 different proposals for a Somali orthography were submitted, and they were all scrutinised according to the 17 criteria that had been established by the commission. Eleven of the proposals wanted to introduce a completely new and unique alphabet for Somali, four suggested different adaptations of the Arabic script and three were adaptations of the Latin script.

The commission emphasises in its report that there is no connection between an alphabet used for a language and the religious beliefs of its speakers. It is especially emphasised that such was the unanimous opinion of all the members in this muslim commission. The commission also declares that it was following its conscience by choosing the script that best serves the development of the Somali society.

In their report the commission emphasises that all proposals for new and unique Somali scripts were written from left to right, like the Latin script, and this is interpreted as an indication that subconsciously the Somali populations has a positive attitude towards the basic principles of the Latin script. Furthermore, the shape of the letters in the unique Somali alphabets had more in common with the Latin letters than with the Arabic ones, and about one fourth of the signs in the unique Somali proposal heavily resemble individual Latin characters. All the unique Somali proposals are however economically impossible to defend since all typewriters and printing presses would have to be replaced.

Also when it comes to the Arabic proposals, the commission argues that the number of typewriters and amount of printing equipment is small and that the cost for acquiring a sufficient amount of such equipment would be too high. It is also pointed out that the readability and the learning of the Arabic script is impaired by the use of small diacritic signs and that the Arabic vowel system with its three short and three long vowel signs is too restricted for Somali. Some signs are also used for both a vowel and a consonant, and the short vowels are written with signs that are generally not applied in the Arabic orthography. It would however be absolutely vital to write those signs for Somali. It was also emphasised that earlier attempts to write Somali with the Arabic alphabet, conducted among others by Sayid Mohamed Abdillahi Hassan, Mohamed Abdillahi Mayal (Berbera), Osman Yusuf Kenadid, Sheikh Abdulrahman Kadi (Borama) and the Englishman J. S. King had not led to any well functioning result. Mohamed Abdillahi Mayal had produced schoolbooks written with the Arabic script, but they had not been welcomed with enthusiasm by the public. Sayid Mohamed Abdillahi Hassan had abandoned his idea to write down his texts due to the difficulties to handle the Somali vowels with the restricted inventory of Arabic signs. Osman Yusuf Kenadid had in the 1920's finally chosen to create his own alphabet, which meant an important step forward for investigation of the Somali sound system, and led to the creation of a suitable number of vowel symbols.

From the perspective of the commission the Latin script had many more advantages than the uniquely Somali scripts and the Arabic script. However, within the commission Yassin Osman Kenadid was a strong advocate of his father's Osmania script and Ibrahim Hashi Mohamud a dedicated supporter of the Arabic script. Both realised that their viewpoint had very small chances based on the 17 criteria decided upon by the commission, and towards the end of the process Ibrahim Hashi Mohamud and Mohamud Jama Afballad left the commission as a protest, while Yassin Osman submitted a written request for a leave.

Therefore, in the end only six of the commission's members recommended Shire Jama Ahmed's proposal in a slightly adjusted version. Of course, Shire himself was part of the commission and therefore also in these adjustments. According to the commission's final report, Shire had developed his script in 1960 and it consisted at the time when it was submitted of the set of symbols rendered by illustration 3 (Galaal 1961: 57).

The only difference when compared to today's orthography is that Shire suggested to write the long vowels with an accent and that he used "ch" for today's "x", while "x" was used for today's "kh".

When the commission had made its choice, the recommendation was to

Illustration 3: Shire Jama Ahmed's proposal for a Somali orthography

Consonants,	b	t	j	ch	x	d	r	s	sh	dh	c	g	f	q	k	l	m
	n	w	h	y	.												
Vowels, (Short)	a	i	u	e	o												
" (Long)	`a	`i	`u	`e	`o												

Illustration 4: The Language Commission's proposal for a Somali orthography

Consonants,	.b.	.t.	.j.	.ch.	.kh.	.d.	.r.	.s.	.sh.	.dh.	.c.						
	.g.	.f.	.q.	.k.	.l.	.m.	.n.	.w.	.h.	.y.	.ny.	.jy.					
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
Vowels (Short)	.a	.	.i	.	.	.u	.	.	.e	.	.	.o	.	.	.	.	.
" (Long)	aa	.	ii	.	.	uu	.	.	ee	.	.	oo	.	.	.	.	.

use Shire's proposed alphabet with slight modifications as shown by illustration 4 (Galaal 1961: 70).

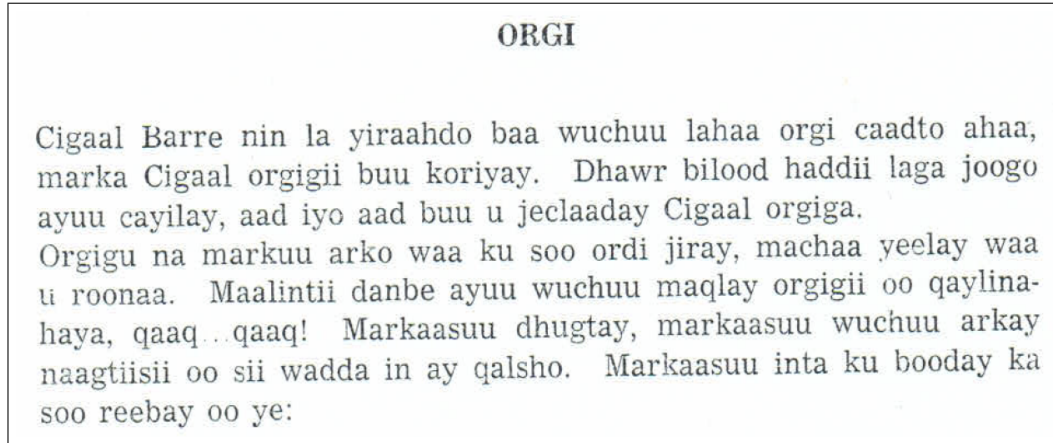
Notice that the only remaining difference compared to today's orthography is that "ch" is still suggested instead of today's "x". The combinations "ny" and "jy" are only added to render specific sounds in certain southern dialects. The accents are added as a means to represent tone or stress if necessary.

## 6 The politicians hesitate to take action

The recommendations of the commission were left without action by the politicians for a number of years. Instead it was decided that English would be the language of instruction in Somali schools, whereas the university in Mogadishu continued to use Italian.

In 1966 the politicians asked a new commission for a new recommendation, this time through UNESCO. Professor B. W. Andrzejewski at the university of London was appointed together with two other linguists. Seven different proposals for a Somali orthography were submitted this time: three with Latin script, two with Arabic script and two unique Somali scripts. The commission chose not make any direct to recommendation, but instead

Illustration 5: From Shire's *Gabayo, maahmaah iyo sheekooyin yaryar*, 1965



to discuss different advantages and disadvantages of the different proposed scripts. Among the Latin alphabets proposed, the advantages of Shire Jama Ahmed's proposal was clearly stated, especially for technical and economical reasons. Once again the politicians were worried about the public opinion and once again they left this commission's recommendations without action.

Throughout the 1960's Shire devoted a lot of efforts to systematic collection of a large amount of oral poetry and stories that he wrote down with his own Latin orthography. In 1965 he published a book with the title *Gabayo, maahmaah iyo sheekooyin yaryar*. A short passage from the book can be found in illustration 5.

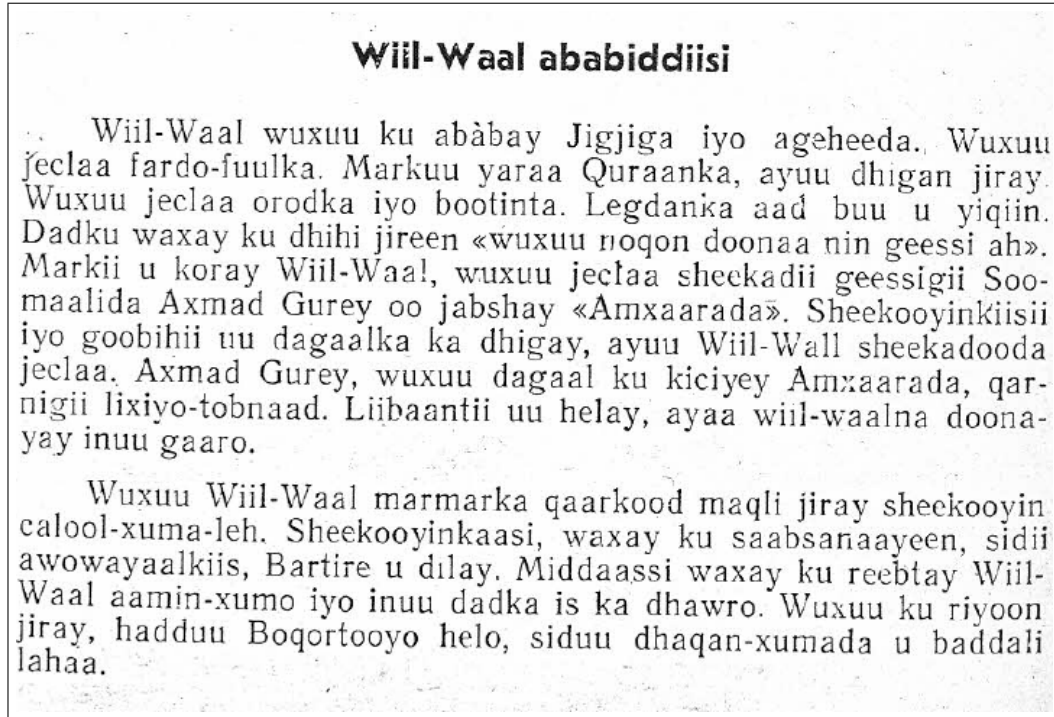
The following year he started to publish his texts in his own journal called *Iftiinka Aqoonta*. It appeared with six issues from November 1966 until July 1967. Thanks to this journal Shire's alphabet slowly gained more supporters. In the journal he had made the last small changes in his orthographic system. He had introduced the letter 'x' and the sign ' for the glottal stop called *hamsa*. In all major respects, the spelling in the journal is the same as today's standard Somali spelling. The most important difference that still remains is that more consonants than today's seven may be doubled, e.g., *affar*, *Xassan*. A short passage from the last issue of the journal is shown in illustration 6.

## 7 Somali becomes the official language

In 1969 the military seized power in Somalia and declared that Somali would be introduced as the official written language as soon as possible. Therefore,



Illustration 6: From Shire's *Iftiinka Aqoonta* no 6, 1967



in January 1971 a commission consisting of 11 men was appointed with the task to prepare schoolbooks, a reference grammar and a dictionary, as well as to develop modern technical terminology (Laitin 1977: 115).

The commission was however not supposed to take a stance about which script to apply. Hence, the books were prepared without knowing for sure which script would be used and the instructions for the commission stated that each member was free to write in the way he himself preferred, but of course there were only typewriters with Latin script available (Laitin 1977: 117). The orthography would then be corrected afterwards according to coming decisions by the government.

On 21 October 1972 it was decided that Somali was going to be written with the Latin script that had already been used by Shire Jama Ahmed. All state employees were given three months to learn to write in Somali and Somali was introduced as the official language of the republic on 1 January 1973. It was immediately applied throughout the administration, and later that same year it was introduced as the language of instruction in the lower grades of the Somali school system. Within just a few months Somali also replaced the previous languages in the daily press.

Despite the fact that Shire's orthography was introduced with absolutely

Illustration 7: From *Abwan Urursan Af Soomaali iyo Russha*, 1969

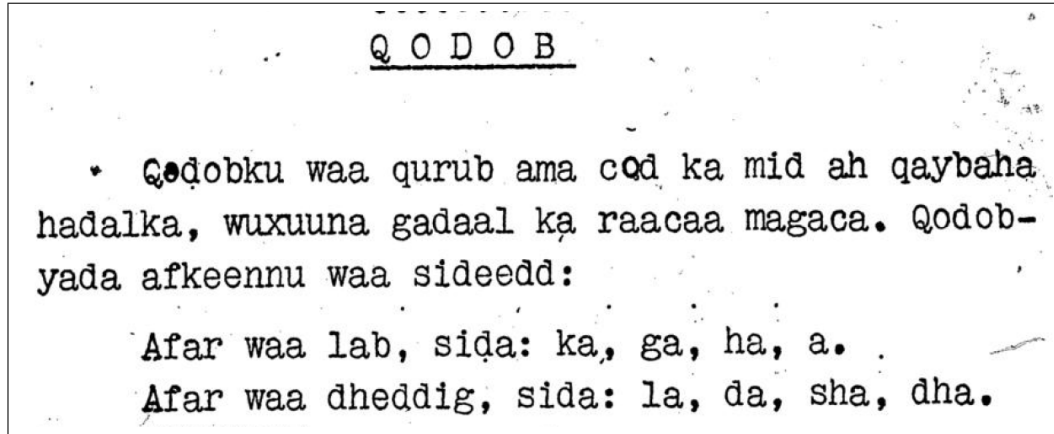
<b>ban-ka</b> <i>м.</i> 1) равнина; 2) площадь (в городе).	<b>barbardhigid:</b> <i>is</i> ~ сравни- вать.
<b>bandhig-ga</b> <i>м.</i> 1) ярмарка; 2) выставка; показ; 3) му- зей.	<b>barbardhigid-da</b> <i>жс.:</i> <i>is</i> ~ сравнение.
<b>bangi-ga</b> <i>м.</i> банк.	<b>bare-ha</b> <i>м.</i> педагог, учи- тель.
<b>baniadem-ka</b> <i>м.</i> челове́че- ство.	<b>barxad-da</b> <i>жс.</i> вестибюль; коридор.
<b>baniademnimo:</b> ~ аһ чело- веческий.	<b>bari-da</b> <i>жс.</i> курдюк.
<b>bannaan</b> свободный, неза- нятый.	<b>bari-ga</b> <i>м.</i> восток; Bariga Fog Дальний Восток; Bariga Dhexe Средний Восток; Ва- riga Dhow Ближний Восток.
<b>bannaan-ka</b> <i>м.</i> 1) свобод- ное (незанятое) место; 2) площадь (в городе).	<b>barid</b> 1) учить (кого-л.); 2) преподавать.

minimal modifications, this remains a surprisingly unknown fact among the general public. A number of books and journals had already been published with the Latin script during the 15 years that had passed since the first page in *Corriere della Somalia* in March 1957. Besides Shire's *Iftiinka Aqoonta* there is also, among a handful of other titles, the first Somali-Russian and Russian-Somali dictionary from 1969 as well as the language commission's first reference grammar in Somali from 1971. Short samples from these books are reproduced in illustration 7 and 8.

Just like most other standard languages today's written Somali has evolved and found its present shape through a dynamic process, even if certain individuals have influenced that development to a quite large extent. Hence, the legislation from 1972 mainly means a legal formalisation of the language norm that already to a large extent had been established on its own. The important effect of the political decision was not that "Somali was given a script", it already had one since a number of years, but that the de facto already functioning written language finally, supported by the new law, was introduced as the country's OFFICIAL LANGUAGE in administration and education, replacing English, Arabic and Italian.

After 1972 the language commission became part of Somalia's Academy of Culture and Shire Jama became its chairman. He was also one of the authors of the first reference grammar of the Somali standard language *Aasaaska Naxwaha Af Soomaaliga* (1st ed. Mogadishu 1971, 46 p.; 2nd ed. Mogadishu 1973, 40 p.). At the same time he also published his own Somali reference

Illustration 8: From *Aasaaska Naawaha Af Soomaaliga*, 1971



grammar called *Naawaha Af Soomaaliga* (1st impression, Mogadishu 1973, 156 p.; 2nd impression 1976). Later on Shire became the cultural attache at the Somali Embassy in Stockholm. He remained in Stockholm for the rest of his life.

## 8 The Literacy Campaign

BBC: Somalia's Rural Literacy Campaign

YouTube: Somalia Literacy Campaign Ololaha Horumarinta Reer Miyiga 1974

## 9 Standard Somali

How stable is the Somali standard language? It is of course a difficult question to answer, but if one compares Somali to most other languages in the world, it is quite well standardised. The fact that there are people who oppose to the norms of the present standard is nothing strange. Those things happen in most languages, especially younger ones. An interesting comparison might be the lively debates about standard language in Norway.

Some factors that are often mentioned as typical for a standard language are that the standard form of a language – in contrast to its dialectal forms – is:

- prestige: symbolises status and high prestige;
- functions: used in politics, administration, education, mass media;

- codification: documented in dictionaries and reference grammars, leading to uniformness and stability;
- official status: sanctioned by political decisions as the common language of a specific geographic area.

To a large extent the Somali language of today exhibits many of these characteristics of a standard language. Maybe it did so to an even larger extent in the 1980's, when only Somali was used in education (except university), in political life and administration.

Today, there are political decision about the status of the Somali language in additional states and regions. Somali is also systematicall used in mass media. There is a number of new dictionaries and reference grammars documenting the language and for the most part these works exhibit a very homogenous decription, even though there is also a smaller degree of varaition, which isn't surprising due to the fact that the Somali standard language is relatively young and is used over a very large geographic area encompassing several different countries.

## 10 Somali language planning and support

For Somali there are no stable organisations with a long-standing tradition of planning and supporting the development of the standard language like there are in many coutries that have an academy, a prominent publishing house or a university department with certain special responsibilities for the national language or languages. Finland has its Institute for the languages of Finland, Sweden has The Swedish Academy and the Langaug Bank etc. There is no such long-standing and stable organisation whose main aim would be to support the development of standard Somali. Hsitorically, however, several organisations have contributed to this development and some of them have had this work as one of their objectives.

- Radio Hargeysa and Radio Mogadishu,
- the first langauge commission 1960-61,
- the third langauge commission "Guddiga Af Soomaaliga" 1971-73,
- The Somali National Academy of Culture,
- universities and institutes where researchers work on Somali, especially Centre d'Etudes et de Recherche de Djibouti and the universities of Mogadishu, Hargeisa, Djibouti, Jigjiga och Dire Dawa,

- the authorities for education in Mogadishu, Garoowe, Hargeisa and Jigjiga that produce textbooks for their respective schooling systems,
- The Somali Language Academy, Akadeemiye-Goboleedka AfSoomaaliga (AGA), founded in 2013, today based in Mogadishu.

## 11 Documentation and codification of Standard Somali

Compared to languages such as Swedish or English, many of the factors characteristic for a standard language are of course not fulfilled to a similar degree, but compared to most other languages of the world, the degree of standardisation is still high and many efforts have been done in order to give the language a unified form. In a global perspective there is a large number of publications describing Somali, but no single handbook hasn't yet gained the status of "codificational codex". However, many respected publications agree to a very high degree on most facts:

- Stepanjenko. 1969. *Abwan urursan af Soomaali iyo Rusha*. PDF
- Schoolbooks written during the 1970's and 1980's. PDF
- Guddiga Afka Soomaalida. 1971. *Aasaaska naxwaha af Soomaaliga*. PDF
- Guddiga Af Soomaaliga. 1973. *Aasaaska naxwaha af Soomaaliga*. PDF
- Shire J. Ahmed. 1973, 1976. *Naxwaha Af Soomaaliga*. PDF
- Yaasiin C. Keenadiid. 1976. *Qaamuuska Af-Soomaaliga*. PDF
- 1985. *Dizionario somalo-italiano*. PDF
- Zorc m.fl. 1993. *Somali-English dictionary*.
- Mansur & Puglielli. 1999, 201x. *Barashada naxwaha af-Soomaaliga*. PDF
- New schoolbooks in Somalia, Somaliland and Ethiopia in the 2000's and 2010's.
- 2008. *Qaamuuska af-Soomaaliga*. Nairobi.
- 2012. *Qaamuuska af-Soomaaliga*. Roma. PDF

- 2013. *Qaamuus Afsoomaali*. Jabbuuti.
- Modern mass media and fiction applying a quite homogenous norm.

This all means that there are many different actors of quite different types that together work for the strengthening, stabilisation and development of the Somali standard language.

As long as individuals and institutions are willing to conduct work based on the existing tradition and the foundation already laid down, then every effort is generally very valuable, without regard to whether the work is backed up by a governmental institution or not. Different kinds of publications that reinforce the prevailing, established norms contribute to further strengthening of that norm and the development of an even stronger and clearer standard.

When previous handbooks do not give any clear answers to certain questions and problems, the safest way for authors of new publications is to try and find out how the majority of the speakers and writers of the language actually use their language. Today that it much easier to do than in the past, with help from computers, corpora and the internet.

It is however more problematic when individuals and in some instances also institutions propose far reaching changes in the existing norms and principles that are already very well established, e.g., to change the spelling of complex pronoun and preposition clusters, and to write **u gu** instead of the very well established **ugu**, or to double other consonants than the well established seven (**b, d, g, l, m, n, r**), e.g., **affaf** instead of the established **afaf**. With such new ideas there is a high risk of causing large confusion. In well established standard languages that kind of “planned” changes are very uncommon. Such proposals are also usually met with considerable opposition from the public. One example could be the introduction in 1996 of three identical consonants in a row in German compound words, e.g., *Schiff* ‘ship’+ *Fahrt* ‘traffic’ > *Schiffahrt* ‘shipping’ instead of the traditional *Schiffahrt*, something that arouse strong feelings and still hasn’t been accepted by many people.

Similar cases of far reaching changes in the Somali orthography can be found in the dictionary *Qaamuus Ereykoobe* that was published in Djibouti in 2004. This dictionary is therefore not very useful for the public, but it is of course interesting for linguists and others who can see through the odd spellings.

For Somali there are actually very many really stable norms and principles for both spelling, grammar and vocabular. These norms and principles have however not always been fomulated into “rules” that are generally taught,

learnt and followed. But it is evident that many linguistically conscious writers and editors apply the same generally accepted rules since the way of writing differs quite little between different experienced writers.

E.g., there is total agreement on the set of letters and how they should be used to denote Somali sounds, which letters may be doubled, i.e., **a, o, u, e, i; b, d, g, l, m, n, r** and no other. In the same way there is a very high degree of agreement on the shape of almost all the inflectional forms.

On the other hand there are certain details for which there are no generally accepted rules, e.g., whether one should write **ay** or **ey**, whether to use **dh** or **r** after a vowel in certain words, or whether the focus particle should be written **waxa** or **waxaa**. In these instances there is basically a totally free choice for each and everyone between the two possibilities, and both ways are equally correct, even though they might not be equally common.

## 12 Study Questions

1. When and where was written Somali used for the first time for official communication with the public?
2. When was the first language commission by the authorities?
3. How many members did it have? What kind of people were in the commission?
4. What was the mission of the commission?
5. At what result did the commission arrive?
6. When was the second commission appointed?
7. How many members did it have? What kind of people did it consist of?
8. At what result did the second commission arrive?
9. When was the third commission appointed?
10. How many members did it have?
11. What kind of work did the third commission carry out?
12. When was it decided that Somali should become the official language of Somalia? Who took this decision?

13. When did it become obligatory for authorities to start using Somali as the country's official language?
14. Somali had already been used for some time in the form that later became the official form of Somali. When was it first used in that form?
15. What persons gave Somali the orthography (the spelling system) that is still used today?
16. What strong arguments were there in favour of the Latin script?
17. What was the name of the first Somali dictionary written with today's spelling? When was it published?
18. What is the name of the first Somali dictionary in which the meaning of the words is explained in Somali? What was the name of the main author? When was it published?
19. In the 1970s two reference grammars of Somali were published describing the recently established standard language. What were the names of those publications? When and where were they published? Who were the authors?
20. What is the meaning of the notion "standard language"?
21. Which one among today's Somali letters was the last one to become established?
22. What is the name of the very first publication using the same orthography as today? When was it published? By whom?
23. In the 2000s three monolingual dictionaries that apply the standard orthography have been published. What are their names? When and where were they published?
24. In the 2000s there was also a monolingual dictionary published which uses a modified orthography that differs substantially from the generally accepted standard. What's the name of that dictionary? When and where was it published?
25. What's the name of the most important, largest and most scientific monolingual grammar? When and where was it published? Who are the authors?



## 13 Suggested solutions

1. Written Somali was used for the first time in communication with the general public on the 2 March 1957 in the newspaper *Corriere della Somalia / Wargeys-ka Somaliyed*.
2. The first language commission was appointed by the authorities on 8 December 1960.
3. It consisted of 9 persons who in different ways were engaged in the debate about written Somali.
4. The task of this commission was to recommend the most suitable script for Somali for a purely technical perspective.
5. The commission arrived at the conclusion that for technical and economical reasons they had to recommend the Latin script. They recommended an alphabet that was very close to what Shire had proposed.
6. The second commission was appointed in 1966.
7. It consisted of three foreign professors.
8. The second commission arrived at the same conclusion as the first commission.
9. The third commission was appointed in 1971.
10. It consisted of 11 persons.
11. The task of this commission was to write and translate textbooks for the schools and prepare a grammar book and a dictionary.
12. On the 21 October 1972 Siyad Barre announced that the government had decided to introduce Somali as the country's official language.
13. The actual introduction of Somali as the official language of Somalia took place a little more than two months later, on 1 January 1973.
14. During the second half of the 1960s, written Somali had already started to be used in the form that later became the official. It was used already in 1966 in the journal *Iftiinka Aqoonta*, and later a number of other publications, among other also in a dictionary named *Abwan urursan af Soomaali iyo Rusha [Somali and Russian dictionary]* (1969) and the grammar book *Aasaaska naawaha af Soomaaliga [Basics of Somali grammar]* (1971).

15. Shire Jama Ahmed is probably the individual that has played the most important part for today's Somali spelling system or orthography. He was one of the most active advocates of the Latin script. In 1960 he submitted his proposal for a Somali alphabet to the scientific commission whose task it was to choose how Somali should be written. He was also a member of the commission that finally recommended his alphabet with a few minor modifications. Even though the alphabet was not officially sanctioned by the authorities, it was used in the 1960s, among other things in Shire's journal that promoted the Somali language and literature, which led to a gradual raise in popularity for his alphabet, and other writers to follow him in the use of it. Finally, the authorities announced that Somali would be the official language of the country, written according to Shire's alphabet that was by then used by a number of other authors.
16. The strong arguments in favour of the Latin script were, among others, that
  - all typewriters and printing presses in Somalia had the necessary equipment for Latin script in order to print in English and Italian. Equipment for another script would be very expensive to purchase.
  - the Latin script was easier to adapt to the Somali vowel system, than was the Arabic script. Among the Somalis, the literacy rate in Latin script was supposedly already higher than for Arabic script. The unique Somali scripts that were suggested were also more similar to the Latin script than to the Arabic script.
  - for those who could not read and write, it would supposedly be easier and quicker to learn the Latin script than the Arabic script. The letters as such as well as the differences between the letters are supposedly larger and more noticeable in the Latin script than in the Arabic script, where many letters only differ by the number of dots or other small details.
17. The first Somali dictionary written with today's spelling was *Abwan urursan af Soomaali iyo Rusha, Rush iyo af Soomaaliya* by D. I. Stepanjenko and Mohamed Haji Osman, printed in Moscow in 1969.
18. The first Somali dictionary with all explanations in Somali was *Qaamuuska Af-Soomaaliga* by Yaasiin Cismaan Keenadiid, published in Mogadishu (but printed in Florence, Italy) in 1976.

19. The two earliest grammar books that describe the newly established standard Somali language are *Aasaaska narwaha af Soomaaliga* [The basics of Somali grammar] by Guddiga afka Soomaalida (The Somali Language Commission), published in Mogadishu in 1971 with a second revised edition in 1973, and *Naxwaha Af Soomaaliga* [The grammar of Somali] by Shire Jama Ahmed, published in Mogadishu in 1973 and reprinted in 1976.
20. A "standard language" is the form or variety of a language that is **perceived** as stabil, neutral, prestigious and common to all speakers of that language. This form of the language is above all used by authorities, schools and mass media. It is also documented in dictionaries and grammar books.

For some languages there is a political decision that determines what is the correct form of the standard language. It is then common practice to choose a specific dictionary and/or grammar book as the source for information about correct usage. For many languages there is also a certain institution that has a responsibility to foster and develop a recommended form of the standard language.
21. The Somali letter that got into use last of all was "x" which was introduced in 1966 instead of earlier "ch" or "hh".
22. The very first printed publication with the same orthography as today was most probably *Iftiinka Aqoonta* [The light of knowledge] by Shire Jama Ahmed, published in Mogadishu on 10 November 1966).
23. The three monolingual Somali dictionaries that have been published in the 21st century and use the standard orthography are:
  - *Qaamuuska af Soomaaliga, Koobaha Af Soomaaliga* by Khaalid Cali-Guul-Warsame, published in Dragør (Denmark) in 2008, but printed in Nairobi,
  - *Qaamuuska af-Soomaaliga*, edited by Annarita Puglielli and Cabdalla Cumar Mansuur, published in Rome in 2012, and
  - *Qaamuus Afsoomaali*, edited by Aadan Xasan Aadan and published in Djibouti in 2013.
  - In 2022 and shortened version of the 2012 dictionary by Cabdalla Cumar Mansuur and Annarita Puglielli was published in Rome under the title *Qaamuus dugsiyeedka af Soomaaliga (iyo narwaha af Soomaaliga oo kooban)*.

24. The monolingual dictionary *Qaamuus Ereykoobe* [A thesaurus dictionary] that was published in Djibouti in 2004 uses a modified orthography that differs from the traditional, generally accepted orthography in substantial ways.
25. Today's most important, largest and most scientific Somali grammar written in Somali is most likely *Barashada naxwaha af Soomaaliga* [The study of Somali grammar] by Cabdalla C. Mansuur and Annarita Puglielli, published in London in 1999).

## Unit 4: The variation within Somali

Morgan Nilsson

September 20, 2024

## 1 Sociolinguistics

Just like any other language, Somali exhibits some variation between different speakers, different places and different situations.

In different languages this kind of variation may look in many different ways and depend on many different factors. How languages vary is the object of study in the field of **SOCIOLINGUISTICS**, or sometimes also language sociology. The different forms of a language are usually called **VARIETIES** of the language in question.

A language can vary due to many different factors, e.g. geographic areas. Varieties that are spoken within more restricted areas and differ quite a bit from the standard variety are often referred to as **TRADITIONAL DIALECT**, whereas varieties that are spoken over larger areas and generally do not differ as much from the standard variety are often referred to as regional varieties or **REGIONAL DIALECTS**.

## 2 Regional variation within the standard

When the differences between varieties in different regions are very small, they may be perceived as parallel forms of the standard language. This situation commonly arises when there is more than one strong central administrative city or capital where the same language is spoken. Typical examples of such languages with parallel regional standards is English and Spanish, which are spoken in several different countries around the world, but also Swedish (in Sweden and Finland), German (in Germany, Austria, Switzerland and Luxemburg), French (in France, Switzerland, Belgium, Canada and many more countries), Russian (in Russia, Belarus and several other countries), Greek (in Greece and Cyprus), Persian (in Iran and Afghanistan)...

A similar situation can today be observed also for standard Somali in the different regions where it is spoken. There are three strong regions with the administrative central cities Mogadishu, Hargeisa and Jigjiga. These three regional administrations use slightly different varieties that all constitute forms of a common standard Somali language.

Among other things, these differences can easily be traced in administrative documents, such as laws, but also in the different series of schoolbooks produced in each of the three regions.

In all the mentioned languages there is a general consensus that there is **one** common standard language that is being used in slightly different forms in different regions.

Until the beginning of the 1990s, also Serbo-Croatian was generally re-

garded as one language exhibiting slightly differing regional varieties within one standard. Since then the situation has changed dramatically, mainly for political reasons. The prevailing situation of today is that the same varieties are generally regarded as four different standard languages in four different states – Bosnian, Croatian, Montenegrin and Serbian – even though the differences between these four languages are not larger than between the regional varieties of many other standard languages over the world.

### 3 Regional variation in Swedish and English

The fact that a standard language may exhibit variation within the standard between different regions is very common and very natural. For example, in Swedish there are two phonemes that exhibit a large regional (or even individual) variation: /r/ and /ʃ/. Also the realisation of the tonal accent varies a lot depending on region. And of course there are differences in the vocabulary, for example such a technical term as ‘motorway intersection’ which the authorities call *mot* (related to English ‘meet’) in the south west and *trafikplats* in the rest of the country. There are also grammatical differences, e.g. adjectives have a special masculine form that is mainly used in the south west: *den gamle mannen* ‘the old man’ versus *den gamla kvinnan* ‘the old woman’, whereas in the rest of the country the form *gamla* is gender neutral. There are also noticeable differences between the standard in Sweden and in Finland.

Regional variation in the vocabulary is common in practically all languages. As an illustration some examples of differences between the United States and Britain:

BRITAIN	U.S.
<i>tarmac</i>	<i>blacktop</i>
<i>mobile phone</i>	<i>cell phone</i>
<i>overall</i>	<i>coveralls</i>
<i>nappy</i>	<i>diaper</i>
<i>lift</i>	<i>elevator</i>
<i>rubber</i>	<i>eraser</i>
<i>rubbish</i>	<i>garbage</i>
<i>pneumatic drill</i>	<i>jackhammer</i>
<i>timber</i>	<i>lumber</i>
<i>bedside table</i>	<i>nightstand</i>
<i>pavement</i>	<i>sidewalk</i>
<i>post code</i>	<i>ZIP code</i>
<i>cleg</i>	<i>horse fly</i>
<i>crisps</i>	<i>chips</i>
<i>chips</i>	<i>french fries</i>
<i>electric fire</i>	<i>space heater</i>
<i>gear box</i>	<i>transmission</i>
<i>hoover</i>	<i>vacuum cleaner</i>
<i>landslip</i>	<i>landslide</i>

	FRANCE	BELGIUM
<i>déjeuner</i>	<i>lunch</i>	<i>breakfast</i>

## 4 Regional variation within Standard Somali

When it comes to Standard Somali the largest regional differences can be found in the vocabulary, also in very basic vocabulary. The differences in pronunciation and grammar are much smaller, but there are certain very typical and frequent differences, such as

- the pronunciation of /j/ as voiced [ɗ] or voiceless [tʃ].
- the use of /dh/ or /r/ in the middle or at the end of words, e.g. **tidhi** or **tiri** *you/she said*
- the use of /kh/ or /q/, e.g. **waqti** or **wakhti** *time*
- the presence or absence of /n/ before a consonant, e.g. **daanyeer** or **daayeer** *monkey*



- the use of /o/ or /a/ at the end of names and a few other words, t.ex. **Sahra** or **Sahro**, **laba** or **labo** *two*,
- the inflectional ending **-saa** or **-daa** after **-i-**, e.g. **akhrisaa** or **akhri-daa** *you/she writes*
- the use of subject pronouns in questions and negated clauses, e.g.  
**Muu arki karo** or **Ma arki karo** *He can't see it.*  
**Miyuu arki karaa?** or **Ma arki karaa?** *Can he see it?*
- Word order with the negation **aan** in subordinate clauses, e.g.  
**Waxaan rabaa in uusan tegin** or **Waxaan rabaa in aanu tegin**  
*I don't want him to go* (aanu < aan + uu; uusan < uu + aan).
- Vocabulary:  
**kalluun**, **mallaay** *fisk* (se illustration 1)  
**beed**, **ukun ägg** (se illustration 2)  
**kubbad**, **banooni** *boll* (se illustration 3)  
**ayskiriin**, **jalaato**, **qaboojiso** *glass*  
**xaggee**, **halkee**, **meeshee**, **meelma** *var?*  
**sannad**, **sano**, **jir** *år*

MOGADISHU	BOSASO	HARGEISA
<i>banooni</i>	<i>kubbad</i>	<i>kubbad</i> ‘ball’
<i>moos</i>	<i>muus, moos</i>	<i>muus</i> ‘banana’
<i>baaquli</i>	<i>baaquli, madiibad</i>	<i>madiibad</i> ‘bowl’
<i>wiil</i>	<i>wiil</i>	<i>inan, will</i> ‘boy’
<i>xaaqin</i>	<i>xaaqin</i>	<i>mafiq</i> ‘broom’
<i>walaal, aboowe</i>	<i>walaal, boowe</i>	<i>walaal</i> ‘brother’
<i>baabuur, gaari</i>	<i>gaari, baabuur</i>	<i>gaadhi</i> ‘car’
<i>yaanyuur, mukulaal</i>	<i>bisad, dummad</i>	<i>bisad</i> ‘cat’
<i>dooro</i>	<i>digaag, dooro</i>	<i>digaag</i> ‘chicken’
<i>albaab, irrid</i>	<i>albaab</i>	<i>albaab</i> ‘door’
<i>ukun</i>	<i>ukun</i>	<i>beed</i> ‘eggs’
<i>mallaay</i>	<i>kalluun, mallaay</i>	<i>kalluun</i> ‘fish’
<i>bur</i>	<i>bur, daqiiq</i>	<i>daqiiq</i> ‘flour’
<i>dawaco</i>	<i>dawaco</i>	<i>dacawo</i> ‘fox’
<i>gabar</i>	<i>gabar</i>	<i>inan, gabadh</i> ‘girl’
<i>awoowe, abkow</i>	<i>awoowe</i>	<i>awoowe, awoow</i> ‘grandpa’
<i>ayeeyo, abooto</i>	<i>ayeeyo</i>	<i>ayeeyo, ayeey</i> ‘granny’
<i>cagaar</i>	<i>cagaar</i>	<i>akhtar</i> ‘green’
<i>nus, haaf, bar</i>	<i>bar, haaf</i>	<i>badh</i> ‘half’
<i>halkaan, inta, meeshan</i>	<i>halkan</i>	<i>halkan</i> ‘here’
<i>meeqa, meeqo</i>	<i>immisa, meeqa</i>	<i>immisa</i> ‘how much’
<i>baahi</i>	<i>gaajo</i>	<i>gaajo</i> ‘hunger’
<i>waraabe, dhurwaa</i>	<i>dhurwaa</i>	<i>waraabe</i> ‘hyena’
<i>jirran, xanuunsan</i>	<i>xanuunsan, jirran</i>	<i>xanuunsan</i> ‘ill’
<i>jalmad, kirli</i>	<i>kildhi, kirli</i>	<i>kildhi</i> ‘kettle’
<i>jiko, kushiin</i>	<i>jiko</i>	<i>madbakh</i> ‘kitchen’
<i>mind, middi</i>	<i>mind, middi</i>	<i>middi, mind</i> ‘knife’
<i>firi</i>	<i>firi, eeg</i>	<i>eeg</i> ‘look’
<i>daanyeer</i>	<i>daanyeer, daayeer</i>	<i>daanyeer, daayeer</i> ‘monkey’
<i>doolli</i>	<i>jiir</i>	<i>jiir</i> ‘mouse’
<i>saxan</i>	<i>saxan</i>	<i>saxan, bileydh</i> ‘plate’
<i>mushaari, boorash</i>	<i>boorash, mushaari</i>	<i>boorash</i> ‘porridge’
<i>guduudan, gaduudan</i>	<i>guduudan, cas</i>	<i>cas</i> ‘red’
<i>xarig</i>	<i>xarig</i>	<i>xadhig</i> ‘rope’
<i>cusbo</i>	<i>cusbo, milix</i>	<i>milix</i> ‘salt’
<i>iskool, iskuul</i>	<i>iskuul, iskool</i>	<i>iskuul</i> ‘school’
<i>shaati, shaar</i>	<i>shaati</i>	<i>shaadh</i> ‘shirt’
<i>toddoba</i>	<i>toddoba, toddobo</i>	<i>toddoba</i> ‘seven’
<i>abaayo</i>	<i>walaal, baayo</i>	<i>walaal</i> ‘sister’

MOGADISHU	BOSASO	HARGEISA
<i>fariiso, fadhiiso</i>	<i>fariiso, fadhiiso</i>	<i>fadhiiso</i> ‘sit down’
<i>oon</i>	<i>harraad</i>	<i>harraad</i> ‘thirst’
<i>Talaado</i>	<i>Talaado, Salaasa</i>	<i>Salaasa</i> ‘Tuesday’
<i>labaatan iyo shan</i>	<i>shan iyo labaaatan, labaaatan iyo shan</i>	<i>shan iyo labaaatan</i> ‘25’
<i>labo</i>	<i>labo, laba</i>	<i>laba</i> ‘two’
<i>qare</i>	<i>qare</i>	<i>xabxab</i> ‘watermelon’
<i>Arbaco</i>	<i>Arbaco, Arbaca</i>	<i>Arbaca</i> ‘Wednesday’
<i>dariishad</i>	<i>daaqad, dariishad</i>	<i>daaqad</i> ‘window’
<i>naag</i>	<i>naag</i>	<i>gabadh, naag</i> ‘woman’
<i>jaalle</i>	<i>jaalle</i>	<i>huruud</i> ‘yellow’

## 5 Somali dialects

Talking about dialects in an everyday context, people tend to think about varieties of a language that diverge noticeably from the standard language and are spoken by people who have been living in a certain area for a long time.

Within the Somali speaking area the variation between dialects is surprisingly small taken into account the size of the area. The geographic area where Somali is spoken is almost as big as France, Germany, Switzerland, Belgium and the Netherlands together. The most likely explanation is that the area is rather flat and that the Somali speakers have been and to a large extent still are nomads who move back and forth over enormous distances. This has had a neutralising impact on the dialectal differentiation.

For Somali there is a dominating group of very similar dialects that are spoken in the major part of the Somali speaking area. In European languages this dialect group is often referred to as NORTHERN SOMALI. This label is unfortunately somewhat misleading as the dialects in the far south also belong to this group.

Actually, it is only in the coastal areas approximately 200 km to the north and 200 km to the south of Mogadishu and the areas around and between the two large rivers Shabeelle and Jubba that exhibit dialects that diverge more severely from the rest, i.e. from Northern Somali. Best known are the two dialect groups called BANAADIR and MAAY. See illustration 4 (from Lamberti 1986: 29) and illustration 5 (Lamberti’s map in an adapted version by Kzl55 (Wikimedia)).

The reason for the label NORTHERN SOMALI, comprising dialects in Kenya, Ethiopia and Djibouti, northern Somalia (Somaliland and Puntland)

Illustration 1: The distribution of the words **kalluun** / **mallaay** *fish* based on crowd-sourcing in Oct. 2019

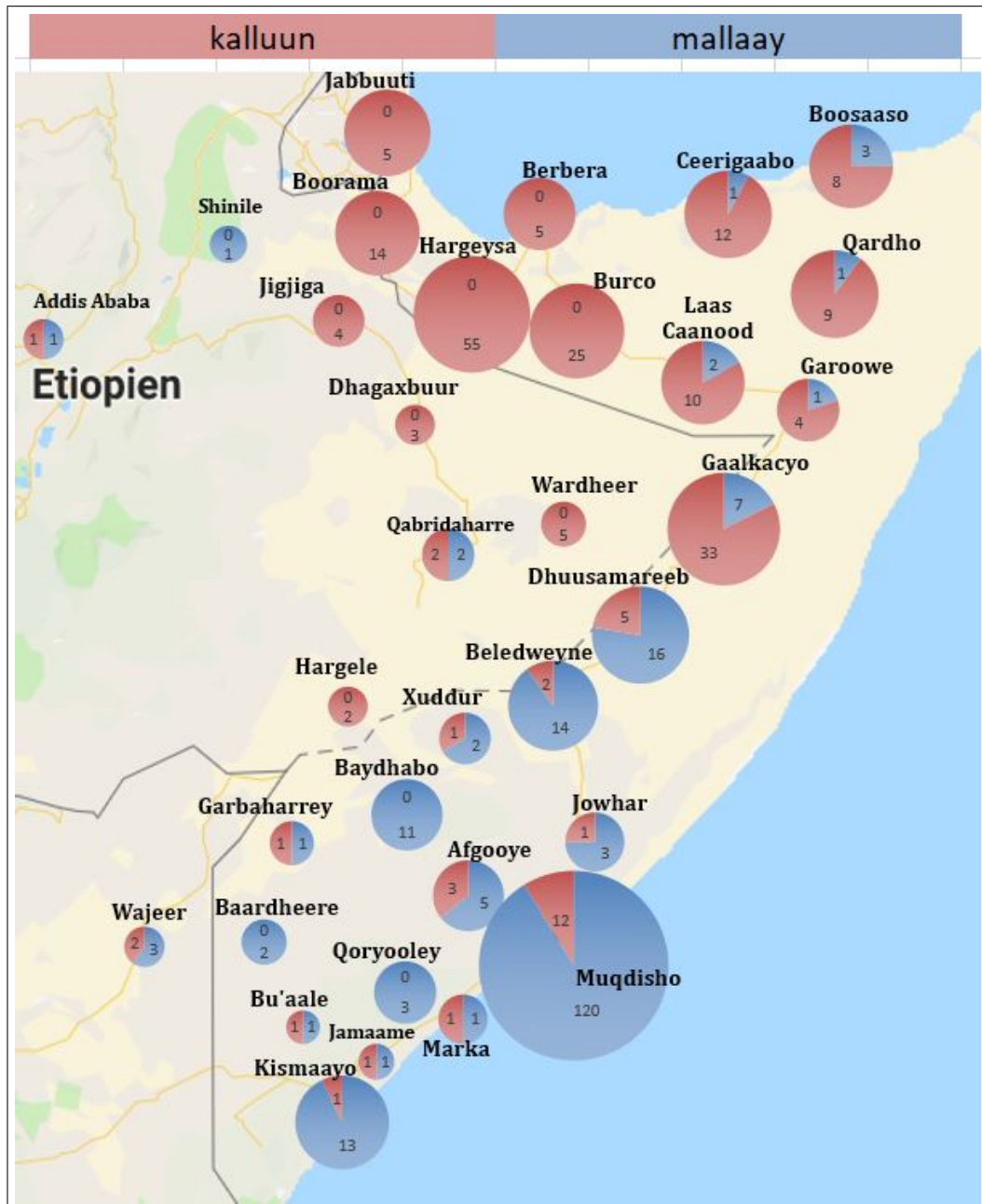


Illustration 2: The distribution of the words **ukun** / **beed** eggs based on crowd-sourcing in Oct. 2019

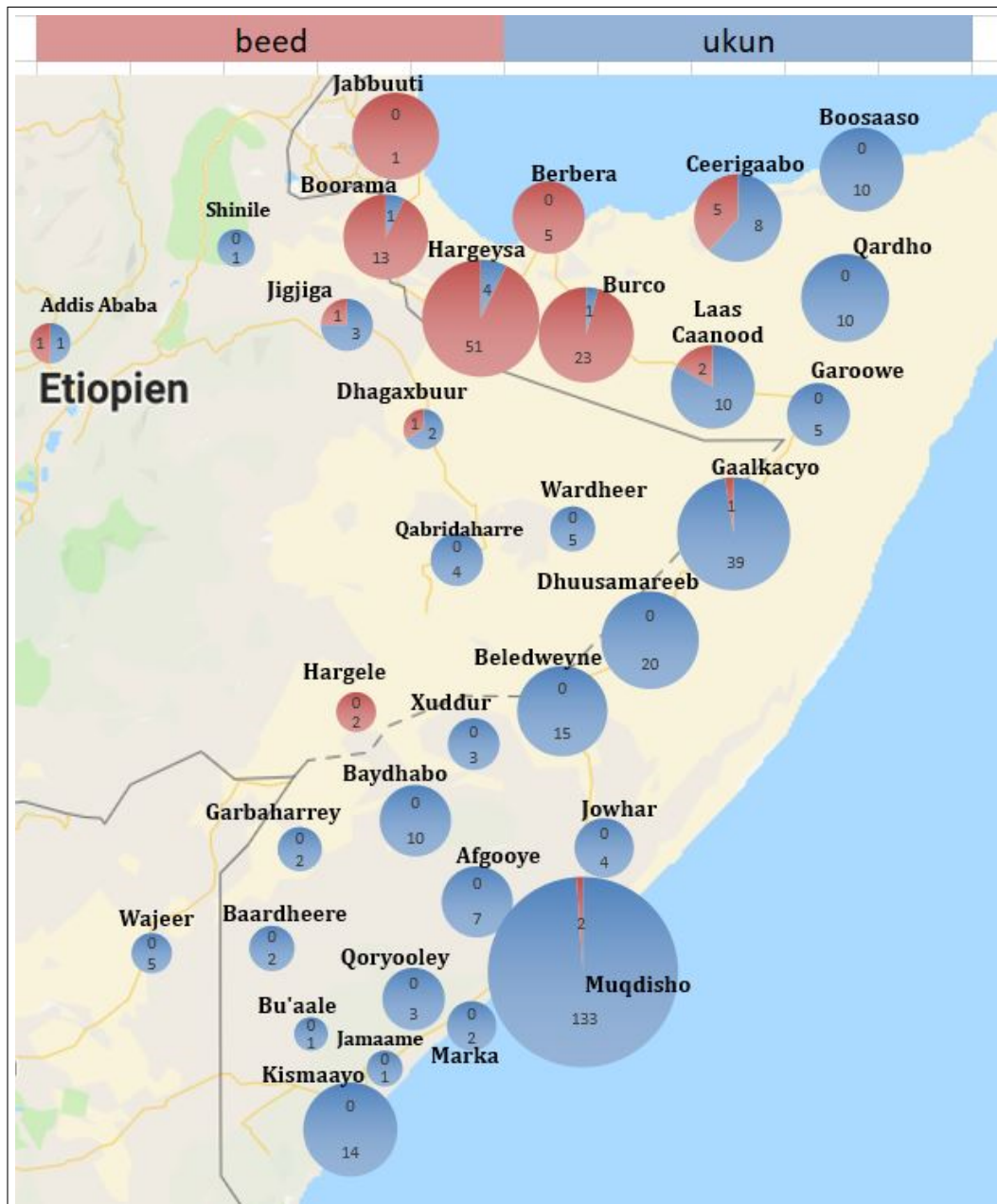


Illustration 3: The distribution of the words **kubbad** / **banooni ball** based on crowd-sourcing in Oct. 2019

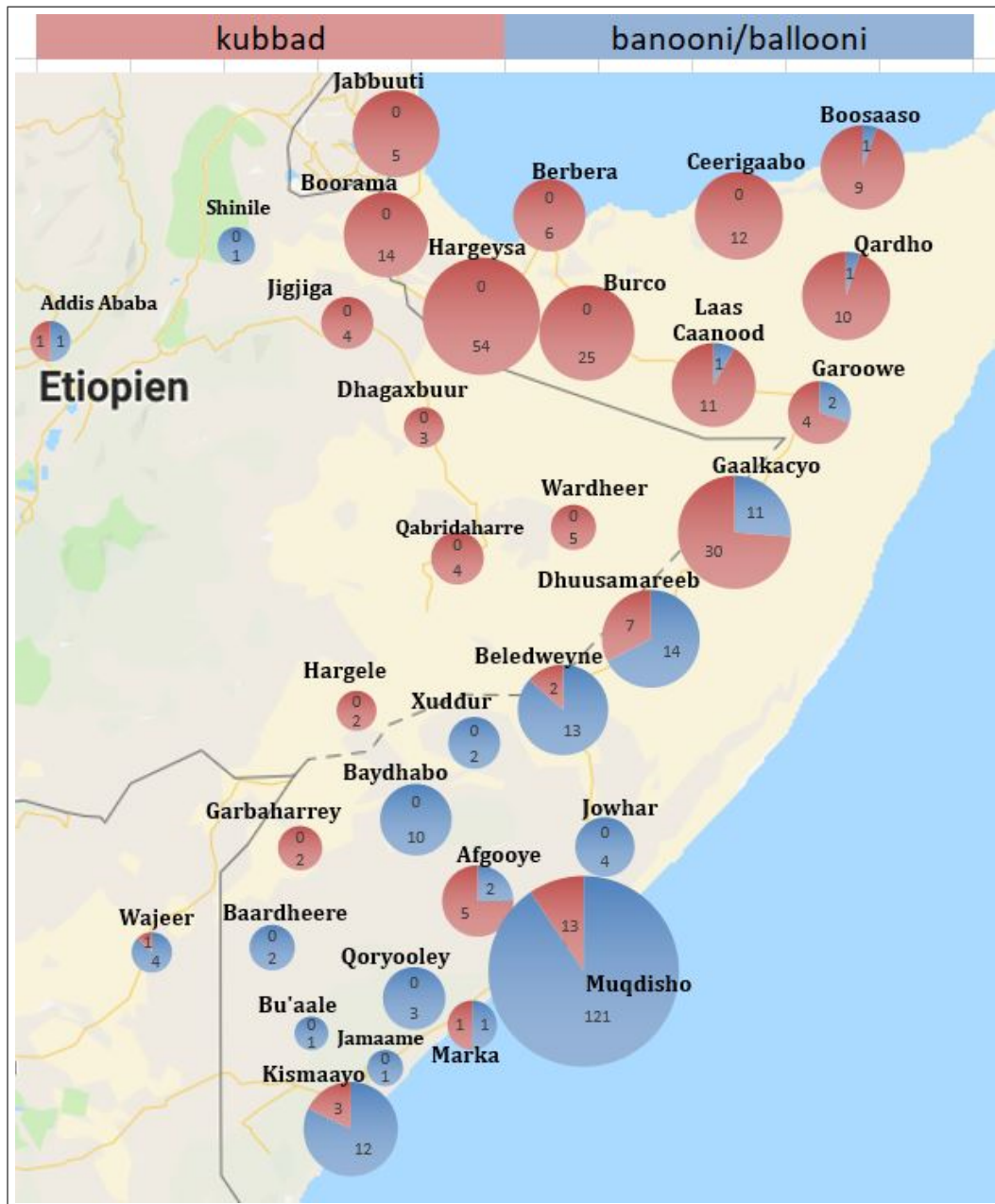




Illustration 4: The Somali dialect groups (Lamberti 1986: 29)

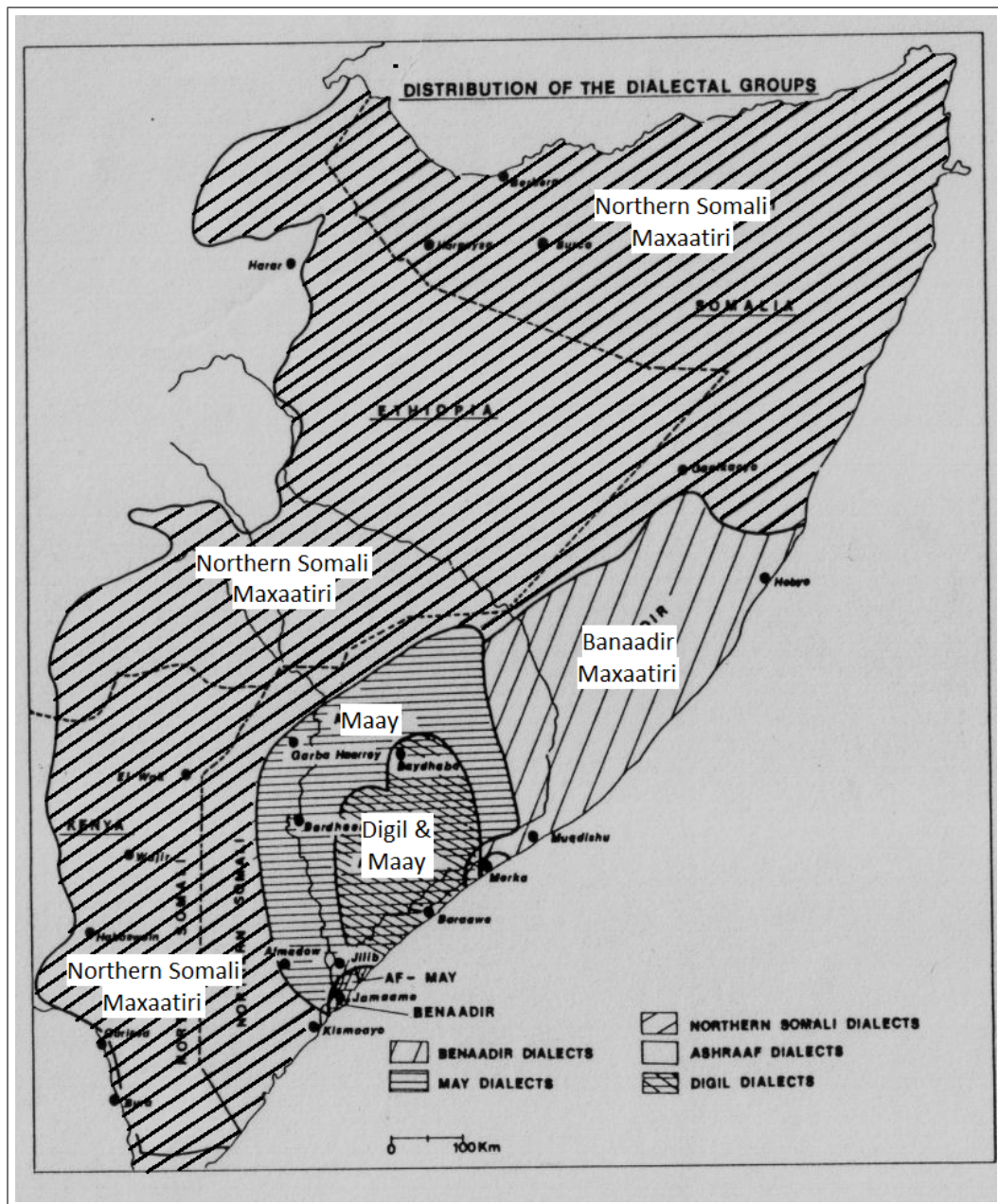
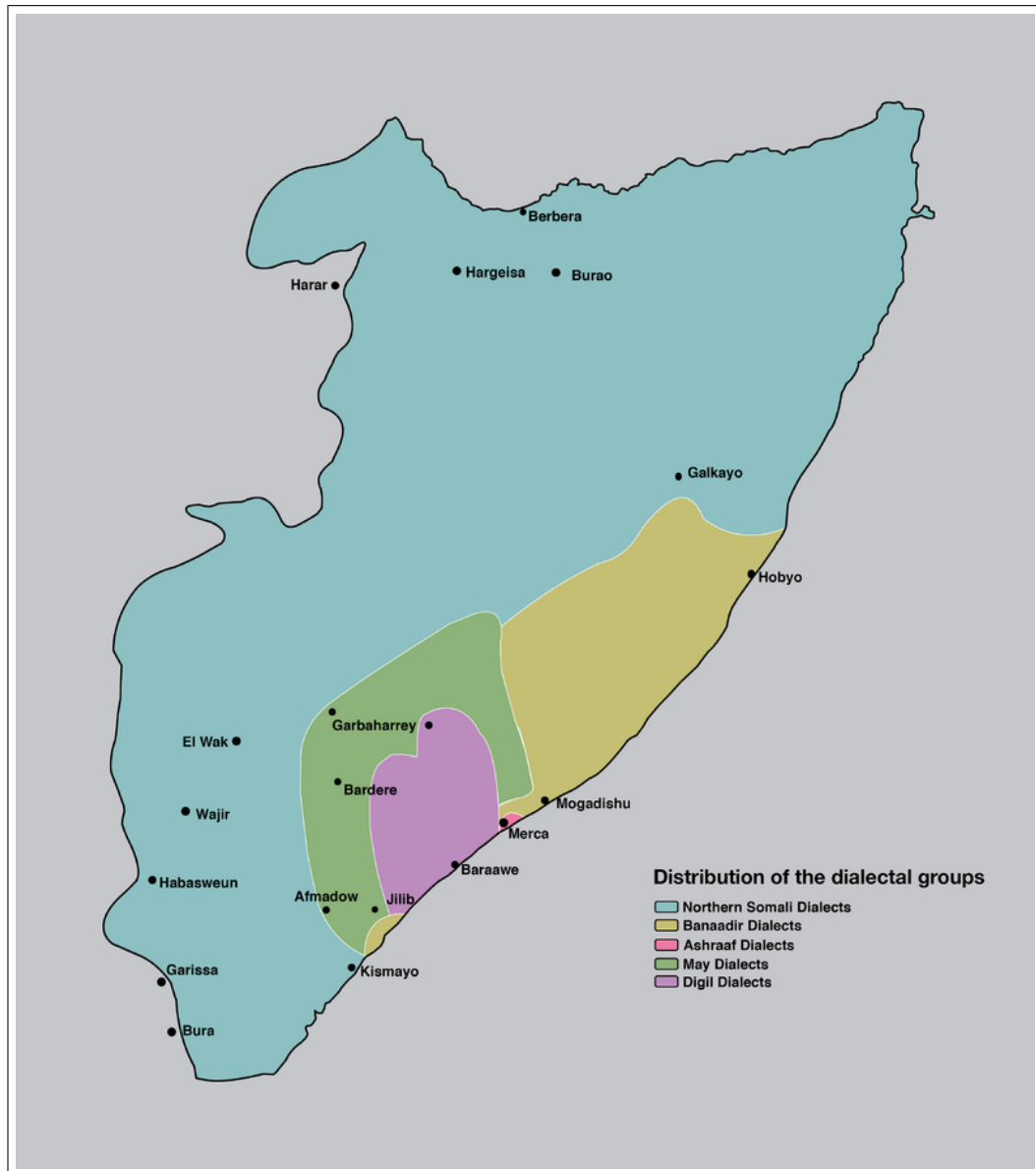


Illustration 5: The Somali dialect groups (Wikipedia, user: Kzl55, adaptated from Lamberti 1986: 29)





the western parts of middle Somalia as well as its southern parts, is due to the assumption that the people speaking these dialects are supposed to have migrated from the north to the south so that the historical origins of this dialect group is to be found in the north. In Somali this large group of dialects is instead generally referred to as MAXAATIRI, with the difference that it is common practice to include in *maxaatiri* also the *Banaadir* dialects. *Maxaatiri* is usually contrasted with *Maay*. In the Constitution (2012: art. 5) of the Federal Republic of Somalia it is stated that its official language “is Somali (Maay and Maxaa-tiri), and Arabic is the second language.”

The group of Northern Somali dialects is usually divided into three subgroups that are characterised by certain smaller differences:

- a dialect group in the NORTHWEST,
- a dialect group in the EAST AND WEST,
- a dialect group in the SOUTH.

This division is shown by illustration 6 (from Lamberti 1986: 33) and illustration 7, (Lamberti’s map adapted by Kzl55 (Wikimedia)).

The Somali dialect situation can be summarised as follows:

- The MAXAATIRI dialects do not differ very much from each other. They are spoken by the majority of the Somali population. They are divided into two main subgroups:
  - NORTHERN SOMALI dialects that are spoken over the major part of the territory, i.e. the northern, central, western and southern parts of the Somali speaking area. The Northern Somali dialects are subdivided into:
    - \* a NORTHWESTERN type spoken approximately in Somaliland, Djibouti and the northern parts of the Somali Region of Ethiopia,
    - \* an EASTERN AND WESTERN type that is spoken approximately in Puntland, the rest of the Somali Region of Ethiopia and northeastern Kenya,
    - \* a SOUTHERN type spoken approximately in Somalia to the west and south of the large rivers and in southeastern Kenya,
  - BANAADIR dialects spoken in an area reaching approximately 200 km to the north and 300 km to the northeast of Mogadishu.

Illustration 6: The Somali dialect groups (Lamberti 1986: 33)

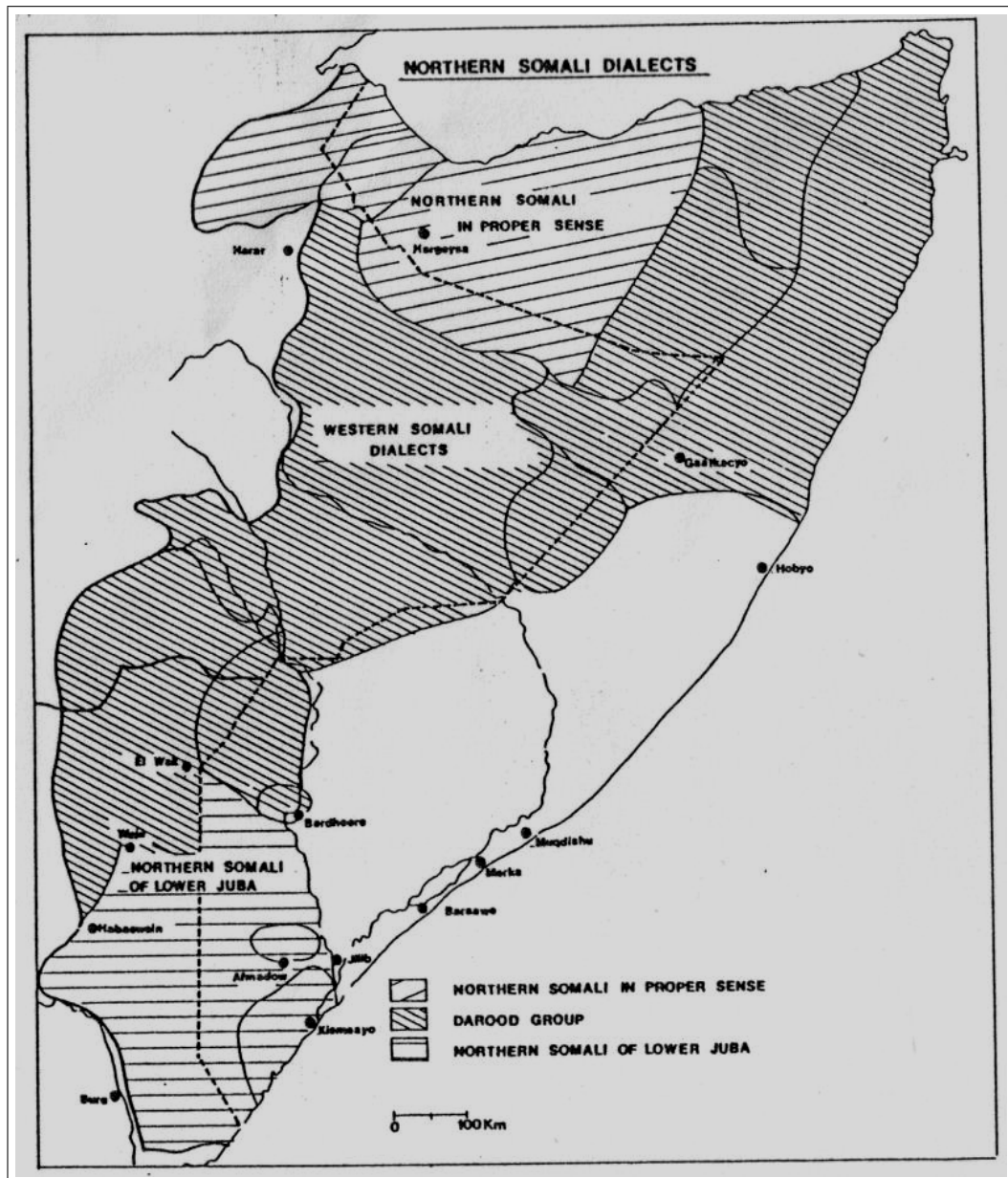
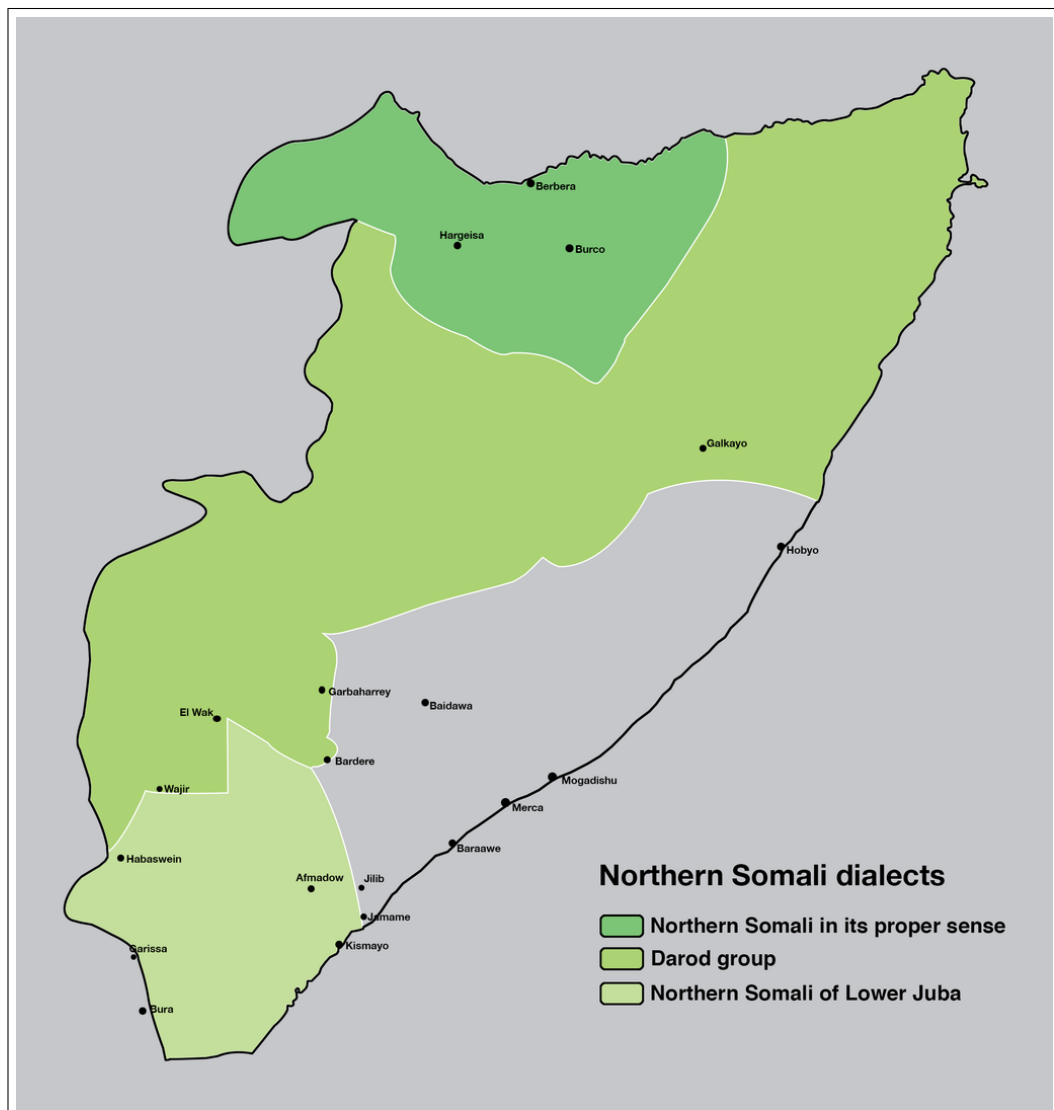


Illustration 7: The Somali dialect groups (Wikimedia: Klz55, adapted from Lamberti 1986: 33)



- MAAY dialects spoken in an area around and between the two large rivers, reaching approximately 200 km to the northwest, west and southwest of Mogadishu.
- the ASHRAAF dialect spoken in parts of Mogadishu and Marka.
- the DIGIL dialects spoken in smaller parts within the Maay area.

## 6 Typical traits in different dialects

According to Lamberti (1984) a characteristic trait for the *maxaatiri* dialects in the northwest, approximately spoken in Somaliland, Djibouti and the northern parts of the Somali Region of Ethiopia, is that the sound /dh/ can occur in all positions in a word. In the remaining parts of the Somali linguistic area /dh/ may only occur word initially and after a consonant in the middle of a word. After a vowel it has been replaced /r/ with the exception of just a few words where the /dh/ was originally long. Båda spellings and pronunciations have equal status in today's Standard Somali.

Northwest	<b>yidhi</b>	<i>sa</i>	<b>gabadh</b>	<i>girl</i>
All other	<b>yiri</b>		<b>gabar</b>	

In the dialects in the East and the West it is characteristic to pronounce the phoneme /j/ as a voiceless [tʃ], while other dialects pronounce a voiced [dʒ]. Hence, **Jubba** is pronounced as Choubba in the East and the West, whereas it is elsewhere rather pronounced as Djoubba. A modern trend however seems to be that the voiceless pronunciation is spreading towards the Northwest.

East-West	<b>Jubba</b>	[tʃuba]	voiceless /j/
All other	<b>Jubba</b>	[dʒuba]	voiced /j/

In the north a more systematic difference is made between /q/ and /kh/, whereas these sound occur in free variation further south, especially in the Banaadir dialects.

The Northwestern dialects are also characterised by the consistent distinction between inclusive **innaga** *we* (including the person(s) spoken to) and exclusive **annaga** *we* (excluding the person(s) spoken to). This distinction is rarely maintained in other parts of the Somali speaking area.

When it comes to lexical differences, it is for example worth noticing that **naag** *woman* is used differently in the Northwest compared to the rest of the territory. In the Northwest it is only used by a man about his wife. It is not used referring to other women, and if used it has a negative

connotations. Instead **dumar** or **haween** are used. Further south, however, **naag** is a neutral word, just like **dumar** and **haween**.

So far these dialectal differences coincide with traits that are generally perceived as regional variation within the standard language. But of course this regional variation within the standard has its roots in the traditional dialects which in these ways have left some traces in the standard language.

Many other dialectal traits have however developed being perceived as departing from the standard language. Some examples of common non-standard dialectal traits are the following:

A striking difference is that the diphthong /ey/ is monophthongised in many areas of the south, giving e.g. **ween** and **aheed** instead of Standard Somali **weyn** *big* and **ahayd** *you were, she was*.

In most areas of the south the subject of a clause is not marked with the ending **-u**, **-i**, **-aa**.

For the *Banaadir* dialects as well as the dialects of the South, it is typical after negation to use the ending **-i** in the 1st person singular instead of **-o**.

Standard	<b>ma cuno</b>	<i>I don't eat</i>
South/Banaadir	<b>ma cuni</b>	

Also, the *Banaadir* dialects as well as the dialects of the South, it is typical to use the subjunctive instead of the reduced forms of verbs when the subject is focused.

Standard	<b>anigaa keena</b>	<i>det var jag som hade med mig det</i>
South/Banaadir	<b>anigaa keeno</b>	

The *Banaadir* dialects contract the progressive forms, giving **-aa**, **-ee**. The main difference between the aspects therefore lies in the position of the high tone. Also, subject pronouns are less frequent.

Standard	<b>waan keénayaa</b>	<b>waad keénaysaa</b>
Banaadir	<b>waa keénaa</b>	<b>waa keénee</b>

In *Banaadir*, therefore, the main difference between the aspects lies in the position of the high tone.

Standard	<b>wáan keenaa</b>	<b>waan keénayaa</b>
Banaadir	<b>wáa keenaa</b>	<b>waa keénaa</b>

If the verb stem ends in a vowel the progressive endings are preceded by an **-h-** instead of an **-n-** in the *Banaadir* dialects.

Standard	<b>jebinayaa</b>	<b>imaanayaa</b>
Banaadir	<b>jebihaa</b>	<b>imaahaa</b>

The *Banaadir* dialects also exhibit a variety of differing plural endings, such as (**-yaal**, **-oshing**, **-oying**, **-nyo...**).

Standard **san** *nose* pl. **sanan**  
 Banaadir **san** pl. **sanyaal**

The subject pronoun in the masculine 3rd person singular in the Banaadir dialects occurs in forms like **aas**, **aaw**, **oow** *han*.

Standard **biyaha ayaa uu dhamey** *he finished the water*  
 Banaadir **biyahaas dhamey**

The 2nd person plural object pronoun is **ni** *er* in the Banaadir dialects.

Standard **waan idin arkey** *I saw you*  
 Banaadir **waa ni arkey**

In Banaadir dialects, verb with a stem ending in a vowel do not add any ending in the infinitive.

Standard **jebin, imaan**  
 Banaadir **jebi, imaa**

Some typical traits of the Ashraaf dialect are the following:

– /l/+/t/ does not become /sh/

Standard **walaashay** *my sister*  
 Ashraaf **walaaltay**

– the plural of nouns is form with the ending **-aay**.

Standard **naago** *women*  
 Ashraaf **naagaay**

– all plural nouns take the definite article **-ta**, irrespective of gender.

Standard **naagaha** *the women*  
 Ashraaf **naagaayta**

– there are 3rd person objekt pronouns, **su** *him*, **sa** *her*.

Standard **dil**  
 Ashraaf **sa/su dil** *kill her/him*

– there are no focus particles and hence no reduced verb forms with focused subjekts.

Finally just a few examples of the even larger differences between *Max-aatiri* and *Maay*. The question is whether *Maay* should be regarded a dialect of Somali or a separate language.

MAXAATIRI	MAAY
<b>gaal</b> <i>icke-muslim</i>	<b>gaal</b> <i>kamel</i>
<b>wan</b> <i>bagge</i>	<b>wang</b> <i>mjölk</i>
1 <b>kow</b>	<b>kow</b>
2 <b>laba</b>	<b>lama</b>
3 <b>saddex</b>	<b>siddə</b>
4 <b>afar</b>	<b>afar</b>
5 <b>shan</b>	<b>shang</b>
6 <b>lix</b>	<b>li</b>
7 <b>toddoba</b>	<b>todobə</b>
8 <b>siddeed</b>	<b>siyeed</b>
9 <b>sagaal</b>	<b>sagaal</b>
10 <b>toban</b>	<b>tomu</b>
11 <b>kow iyo toban</b>	<b>tomi iyə kow</b>

For those interested, you can find much more information about the Somali dialects in my other course material *Cilmiga lahjadaha afka Soomaaliga*. You will also find many reference to other works in that text.

## 7 Study questions

1. What is meant by ‘traditional dialect’?
2. What is meant by ‘regional dialect’ or ‘regiolect’?
3. What is the name of the group of Somali dialects that are very similar to each other and are spoken over the larger part of the Somali linguistic area?
4. In which geographical area do we find the Somali dialects that differ the most from the standard variety of Somali?
5. In which larger dialect groups is the Somali linguistic area usually divided?
6. In which regions is each of the two pronunciations [yidhi] and [yiri] dominating?
7. Is this primarily a dialect difference or an instance of regional variation within standard Somali? Why do you think so?
8. Try to read this story in Maay from *Somali Stories 8* (2010) and try to ‘translate’ it into standard Somali.

### **Gepertoo ii sedy meghel**

Gee iyaa wey jarreey sedy meghel. Koo suurutha lahaayi, kang lamaad wey haayey lang walgorod eh oo karty bathing, kang sedehaad hooly bathing iyaa lahaayi.

Maduung sediithii lang wey is ly fatheenaa gepertoo eed ing suurud bathing oo le erraayi lishow.

lishow wey oghaatey inii sedy meghel iyee guur ky fathaayang. Maduung shuruudii iyee ky shal biyi lahaayti iyaa dejhiithi. Sediithii lang ku kasty mathalaa goony ing ky hirti. Sediithii lang marby mithaa lishow ing looyey, reed guur ky ly haasowi.

Madii kowaad, kii suurudy lahaayi iyaa ing kooyi lishow. Wey erreey ”Ariirey surudey dey. Ariycoghey aathiyo nagheto fathee? Hooby athy i guursety wey dhalaasee owlaad hanuung suurud bathing.”

Langkii lamaad iyaa ky higheey, usuuny wey erreey ”Alingtii aathey, moorathey arag, nolol aduuyey illy wathaagto fathee? Hooby any i guursety athii ariicyooghaa nolol fayllee ku noolathaasang.”



Langkii sedehaad oo ing ky dambooyi iyaa kooyey, wey erreey ”Oorathey nagheto fathee? Any lang suurud bathing ii hooly bathing le my ihi. Laakiing wey aha lang qalqaaly bathing oo walgorod eh. Lang eed ing karty bathing iyaa aha qalqaalathey ii kartithey dey.”

## 8 Suggested solutions

1. ‘Traditional dialect’ refers to a variety of a language that evidently differs from the standard variety of that language and is used within a smaller geographical area. Many dialects can be somewhat difficult to understand for persons from other parts of the greater linguistic area of the same language.
2. ‘Regiolect’ refers to a variety of a language that does not differ as much from the standard variety of that language as the traditional dialects usually do. A regiolect is used by many speakers over a larger geographical area than a traditional dialect. A regiolect is quite easy to understand for speakers from other parts of the linguistic area of the same language.
3. The majority of the Somali dialects don’t differ very much from each other. Those dialects are usually referred to as *Maxaatiri*. Using an English terminology, it is common to refer to them as *Northern Somali* (in Swedish *nordsomaliska*). The *Banaadir*-dialects are usually included in *Maxaatiri*, but not in *Northern Somali*.
4. The Somali dialects that differ the most from the standard variety are spoken within an area that stretches approximately from Mogadishu to Kismayo, around and between the two large rivers Shabeelle and Jubba. Also *Banaadir*, which is spoken in an area stretching from Mogadishu and about 200 km to the north, differs a bit more from the standard variety than the other varieties within the *Maxaatiri* group.
5. Somali is mainly divided into Maxaatiri, Ashraaf, Maay and Digil.  
Maxaatiri is subdivided into Northern Somali and Banaadir.  
Northern Somali is further subdivided into Northwestern dialects, East-West dialects and Southern dialects.
6. Traditionally, the pronunciation [yidhi] is used in the Northwestern dialects, mainly in Somaliland, Djibouti and the northern parts of the Somali Regional State in Ethiopia, while [yiri] is used in the remaining parts of the Somali linguistic area.

However, in today’s society this division doesn’t seem to be as definite as it used to be. In modern time, people have moved in larger numbers and under different circumstances than before, and some groups may have brought their pronunciation to new places and kept it even if it

differs from the pronunciation in the local, traditional variety in the place that they have come to live in.

7. The difference in pronunciation between [dh] and [r] is rather a regional than a dialectal issue, since both ways of pronouncing have equal status in the standard language and both spellings are considered correct in standard written Somali.
8. Original text in Maay and translation into standard Somali (will be added shortly).

# Unit 5

Orthography

## Unit 5. Orthography

---

The orthography are the principles and rules that regulate the use of letters and other signs in a language, e.g. how double letters should be used, when upper case letters should be used, what combinations should be written together as one word, and what should be written separately as two words, when to use a hyphen, a full stop, a comma, a question mark or other signs of interpunction.

All the recommendations and rules in the unit on orthography are based on the principles presented in the dominating part of the existing handbooks and dictionaries for Somali as well as the actual use that is applied in those handbooks, but also the use applied in other carefully written texts of various kinds. Of special importance are the many textbooks that have been prepared and published by different authorities for use in Somali schools since the beginning of the 1970s up until recent years.

### Spelling based on pronunciation

---

The Somali orthography is closer to the sound system and pronunciation than in most other languages. The correlation between a letter and a sound is almost perfect. Basically each letter represents only one specific sound and each sound is only written with one specific letter. The only exceptions are the three sounds that are written with two letters: **sh**, **dh**, **kh**. With a linguistic term, this kind of combinations are called **DIGRAPHS**.

This means that the word **waa** contains two sounds or phonemes, while **shan** *five* contains three phonemes and **dhalo** *bottle*, *jar* contains four.

### The Somali alphabet

---

Notice the order of the letters in the traditional Somali alphabet. It coincides with the order in the Arabic alphabet.

'	B	T	J	X	KH	D	R	S	SH	DH
C	G	F	Q	K	L	M	N	W	H	Y
A	E	I	O	U						

This is considered to be the official order of the letters in the Somali alphabet. However, this order is not systematically applied. It is almost only used when reciting the alphabet and when numbering a list of items with letters. Dictionaries and other kinds of sorted lists and indexes are normally sorted according to the same order as in English and other languages that use the Latin script.

## Double vowels

---

Double vowels are used in order to express a pronunciation that lasts for a longer time than a single vowel. There are often two different words with different meaning that only differ with respect to the vowel length.

<b>u</b> <i>to</i>	<b>uu</b> <i>he</i>
<b>bur</b> <i>flour</i>	<b>buur</b> <i>mountain</i>
<b>inan</b> <i>boy, girl</i>	<b>inaan</b> <i>that I</i>
<b>san</b> <i>nose</i>	<b>saan</b> <i>hide, skin</i>
<b>i</b> <i>me</i>	<b>ii</b> <i>to me, for me</i>
<b>afka</b> <i>the language</i>	<b>afkaa, afkaas</b> <i>that language</i>

In most cases it is not very difficult to hear if a vowel should be written as double or single. The only difficulties arise in instances where there are regional or dialectal differences in the pronunciation and only one spelling has been established for the written standard language.

In a few words there exist two generally accepted spellings based on different pronunciations, e.g. **ey** / **eey** *dog*, **halkan** / **halkaan** *here*. Both spellings are common, but the one with a short vowel is more often recommended in the handbooks.

## Double consonants

---

According to the standard spelling rules, only seven consonants may be doubled in writing: **bb**, **dd**, **gg**, **ll**, **mm**, **nn**, **rr**. Double consonants express a pronunciation with a little more energy, hence both slightly stronger and longer.

**Carab** *Arabs*

**waran** *spear*

**keli** *single*

**carrab** *tongue*

**warran** *tell, give a report*

**kelli** *kidney*

Between vowels **-bb-**, **-dd-** and **-gg-** sound more energetic since the air flow is completely stopped for a brief moment, while single **-b-**, **-d-** and **-g-** between vowels are lighter. Usually the airflow is only hindered and almost stopped, but not completely.

**buugaag** *books*

**laba** *two*

**lugo** *leg*

**badan** *much, a lot*

**buuggaas** *that book*

**labbis** *clothes*

**kubbad** *ball*

**deggan** *living*

**baddan** *this sea*

Depending on the double consonants we often get different grammatical forms of similar words, but with completely different meanings, e.g.

**boqorro** *kings*

**boqorrada** *the kings*

**boqorad** *queen*

**boqoradda** *the queens*

Even if some people are able to hear other long or strong consonants, such sounds are never spelled with double letters, e.g. **dhdh**, **ff**, **ss**, **yy**, **qq** etc. Regardless of the pronunciation one should always write **dh**, e.g. in the form **gabadha** the girl, even though it is made up of the stem **gabadh** followed by the definite article **-dha**.

Also certain individual words have a traditional spelling with a single consonant even though most speakers agree that a long or strong **b**, **d**, **g**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **r** can be heard, e.g. **Jabuuti** (snarare än **Jabbuuti**).

Between two vowels, you can never write more than two consonants, so even if some speaker might think that they can hear something like [cabbtaa], [cambbe], it must be spelled **cabtaa** *drinks*, **cambe** *mango*.

It is also the case that consonants are usually not doubled after the diphthongs **ay/ey**, **aw/ow**, **oy**, even if the linguistic handbook very often recommend double consonants in certain such words, e.g. **weydiin** is far more common than **weyddiin**, also in very carefully written texts. In this particular instance the traditional usage evidently diverges from the traditional recommendations, and both spellings need to be considered correct, with **weyddiin** as a more old-fashion spelling.

## Diphthongs

---

In Somali there are three diphthongs: **ay/ey**, **aw/ow** och **oy**. There are no clear rules for when to write **ay** or **ey** and **aw** or **ow**, respectively. The only advice that can be given is that it looks better with a consequent spelling of words than with variation between two spellings of the same word in the same text.

In general **ay** is more common than **ey**. It has always been more common, even though **ey** was somewhat more common in the 1970s than it is today.

In a small number of specific words, however, **ey** is more common than **ay**, e.g. **weyn**, **weydiin**.

In a few words there is also a rather systematic difference between two meanings, most importantly between **ay** *she* and **ey** *dog*.

In the traditional standard spelling it is also not common practice to write diphthongs with long vowels (**aay**, **eey**, **aaw**, **oow**, **ooy**). Only in a few words that kind of spelling is common enough to be an equal option alongside the spelling with a short vowel, e.g. **ey/eey** *dog*.



However, when **w** or **y** are followed by a vowel, they are no longer considered part of a diphthong. Then the preceding vowel may very well be long.

diphthong + consonant

**samayn** / **sameyn**

**samaysaa** / **sameysaa**

**samaynayaa** / **sameynayaa**

long vowel + y + vowel

**sameeyaa**

**sameeyay** / **sameeyey**

For **kowaad** / **koowaad** both spellings are almost equally common, with a slight overweight for the latter in the corpora.

## Lexically double consonants

---

Often a double consonant is part of the words stem. In order to spell the word correctly, one simply needs to know the word quite well. It is usually possible to hear whether consonants are strong if you listen carefully and have a pronunciation that corresponds to the standard. It might sometimes be a good idea to check the spelling in the available monolingual dictionaries, except the one from Djibouti 2004. That dictionary doesn't follow the traditional standard, since it recommends doubling of other consonants than the traditional seven.

## Grammatical doubling

---

With respect to the doubling of consonants and vowels, there are also a number of important grammatical principles that govern the spelling. For those cases it might be a good idea to learn a few rules that will make it easier to feel more confident about the spelling of double letters, even if these instances also can be recognised by carefully listening to the pronunciation. If you know the grammatical rules, however, your spelling will become more automatic.

## The definite article

The articles **-ga** and **-da** will always result in a double consonant if the stem of the word ends in **-g** or **-d**, but never after *ofte* words.

<b>guri + ga</b>	<b>guriga</b>	<b>buug + ga</b>	<b>buugga</b>
<b>cunto + da</b>	<b>cuntada</b>	<b>bisad + da</b>	<b>bisadda</b>

## Other determiner endings

The different determiner endings that can be added to the definite article have a certain specific shape.

<b>-kii / -tii:</b>	<b>haddii, sidii</b>	always long <b>ii</b>
<b>-kan (-kaan)<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>halkan (halkaan)</b>	short <b>a</b> is nere neutral
<b>-kaas</b>	<b>halkaas</b>	always long <b>aa</b>

## Verb endings

The same principle as for the definite article can also be applied to the verb endings. Endings that contain a **-d-** (**-t-**) result in a double **-dd-** in verbs whose stem end in **-d**, e.g.

<b>waan</b>	<b>-aa</b>	<b>aadaa</b>	<b>dhacaa</b>	<b>cunaa</b>
<b>waad</b>	<b>-daa</b>	<b>aaddaa</b>	<b>dhacdaa</b>	<b>cuntaa</b>
<b>wuu</b>	<b>-aa</b>	<b>aadaa</b>	<b>dhacaa</b>	<b>cunaa</b>
<b>way</b>	<b>-daa</b>	<b>aaddaa</b>	<b>dhacdaa</b>	<b>cuntaa</b>
<b>waan</b>	<b>-naa</b>	<b>aadnaa</b>	<b>dhacnaa</b>	<b>cunnaa</b>
<b>waad</b>	<b>-daan</b>	<b>aaddaan</b>	<b>dhacdaan</b>	<b>cuntaan</b>
<b>way</b>	<b>-aan</b>	<b>aadaan</b>	<b>dhacaan</b>	<b>cunaan</b>

<sup>1</sup> Stavningen **-an** är vanligast i praktiken, men **-aan** brukar som regel anses vara en likvärdig variant i standardspråket.

If the stem of the verb ends in two consonants, there will also be an additional vowel inserted into the stem in order to avoid three consonants in a row, something that never occurs in Somali.

waan	or_d + aa	ordaa
waad	or_d + daa	oroddaa
wuu	or_d + aa	ordaa
way	or_d + daa	oroddaa
waan	or_d + naa	orodnaa
waad	or_d + daan	oroddaan
way	or_d + aan	ordaan

In the 1 person plural there is a quite different rule. You always write double **-nn-** between two vowels, e.g.

Group 1	aad!	waannu	aad + naa	aadnaa
	cun!	waannu	cun + naa	cunnaa
		but: wuu	cun + aa	cunaa
Group 2	samee!	waannu	samey + naa	sameyna
	kari!	waannu	kari + naa	karinnaa
Group 3	qaado!	waannu	qaada + naa	qaadanna
	guurso!	waannu	guursa + naa	guursanna

Double **-nn-** is not used after a diphthong, e.g. **cunaynaa**, **aadaynaa**, **guursanaynaa**, **sameyna**.

## Personal and possessive pronouns

Among the pronouns the 1 person plural deserves special attention. Double **-nn-** is always written between vowels, both in the personal and in the possessive pronouns and in the possessive endings. Spelling with a single **-n-** is used in completely different meanings.

**annaga** *we (excluding you)*

**innaga** *we (including you)*

**aannu** *we*

**inaga** *from us < \*ina+ka*

**aanu** *not he*

**–keenna****keena** *brings, bringing***–teenna****kuweenna** *our, ours*

Notice once again that single **–n–** dominates after a diphthong, hence **aynu** *we*, but in this very word the variation between **–n–** and **–nn–** seems to be growing in recent years.

Double **–nn–** is also written in the possessive pronouns and endings in the 2nd person plural. Again, spelling with a single **–n–** is used in a completely different meaning.

**kiienna, –kiienna** *your, yours***–kienna** *and that* < **kii+na****tienna, –tienna** *your, yours***–tienna** *and that* < **tii+na****kuwienna** *your, yours***kuwienna** *and those* < **kuwii+na**

## The plural of masculine nouns

Masculine nouns with a plural form that ends in **–o** (but not **–yo**) with at least two syllables in the stem will have a double consonant (**bb, dd, ll, mm, nn, rr**, but not **gg**) before the ending **–o**, e.g.

**aqallo, aqallada, baabuurro, baabuurrada, boqorro, boqorrada, qalimmo, qalimmada, saaxiibbo, saaxiibbada, xayawaanno, xayawaannada**

After **–g** and other consonants, **–yo** is used instead.

Masculine nouns with reduplication don't get a double consonant before the ending, e.g. **buugaag, lidad**

## Long or short vowel in the present tense endings

In the present tense there are two different types of endings, wither with a long **–aa** or with a short **–a**. The long vowel is used for the predicate verb when the subject of that verb is not the focused sentence constituent.

**Cali** waa uu **bukaa**.

The short vowel is used when the subject is focused, e.g.

**Cali** ayaa **buka**.

Waxaa **buka** **Cali**.

The short vowel also occurs in relative clauses.

**Dhakhtarku daawo haddii uu u qoro qofka < buka >, lacag la'aan baa lagu siiyaa.**

There is however an exception: When the verb is the last word in a relative clauses that says something about the non-focused subject of the main clause, then the long **-aa** is used in order to mark the end of the subject phrase.

**Wiilka gurigayga joogaa** waa **macallin**.

When a definite noun is the last word of the subject phrase, the subject ending **-u** is used instead.

**Wiilka jooga gurigaygu** waa **macallin**.

## Progressive form

The progressive forms contain the suffix **-ay-** which is always written with a short vowel, e.g.

**waan cunayaa, waan karinayaa**

## Hamsa – a forgotten consonant

Somali has 22 consonants and one of them is **HAMSA**. In Somali this is a **LETTER**, not a sign like, e.g., a full stop or a comma.

Hamsa is written in the same way as the English apostroph. On a Swedish keyboard you will find it to the right of the letter **ä**. It is important to write

hamsa so that it is situated along the top of the other letter, e.g. **lo'da** or **lo'da** or **lo'da**. The hamsa can have three different shapes, either a slanted line ( ' ), a small vertical line ( ' ) or something that looks like a smaller version of the digit 9 ( ' ).

It is a serious mistake to use a comma instead of a hamsa, e.g. **lo,da**, since the comma is situated much lower, and the comma sign is used in a totally different function. It is also incorrect to use an accent that is situated above the vowel, e.g. **lóda** or **lòda**.

In careful writing certain words should end with a hamsa, e.g. **gu', ri', go'**, but in some other words it has completely fallen out of use. E.g., in old texts you might sometimes see **si'**, but today that spelling would be very old-fashioned. Today everyone writes **si**.

In certain words the hamsa disappears when an ending is added, but in other words it remains, e.g. **ri' - rida, riyo; gu' - guga** but **go' - go'a**.

Hamsa is of course most commonly used in the middle of words between vowels, e.g. **go'aan, lo'aad, su'aal, le'eg**.

It is just as important to be precise in the use of hamsa as in the use of all the other letters of the alphabet.

## Consonant alternations

The consonants **k, t, m** and **j** can only occur right before a vowel in genuinely Somali words. They don't occur at the end of Somali words or before a consonant inside a word. In those positions **k, t, m** are replaced by **g, d, n**. This rule plays a very important role in the inflection of many Somali words, e.g.

before vowel

**ilko, ilkaha**

**bukaa, bukaan**

end of word   before consonant

**ilig**

**ili<sup>g</sup>ga**

**bugtaa, bugnaa, bugtaan**

duka**am**mo                      duka**a**n                      duka**a**nka, duka**a**nle  
 fah**ma**a, fah**ma**an                      fah**a**ntaa, fah**a**nnaa, fah**a**ntaan,

A small number of exceptions occur in foreign borrowings, e.g.

Isla**a**m, Musli**m**, kari**i**m, ixtira**a**m, Ibraah**i**m, ata**m**.

But most borrowed words tend to adjust to the Somali rules, e.g.

buskud	< En. <i>biscuit</i>
Atlaanti <b>g</b>	< <i>Atlantic</i>
macalli <b>n</b>	< Ar. <i>mucallim</i>
qali <b>n</b>	< Ar. <i>qalam</i>
fil <b>i</b> n	< <i>film</i>
Aada <b>n</b>	< <i>Adam</i>

An important and very systematic exception exists in present day Somali spelling standard, in full correspondence with the pronunciation. In the vast majority of words, **-mb-** is written rather than **-nb-**, e.g.

samb**a**b, dam**b**e.

Most of these words may also be written with **-nb-**, but today that spelling is less common. At the end of the 1960s and the beginning of the 1970s the spelling with **-nb-** was dominating, maybe because Arabic spelling rules require **-nb-**, not **-mb-**.

Today spelling with **-nb-** is only dominating in a small number of words, e.g.

bara**n**baro, balan**a**alis.

Also in contractions of two words **-nb-** should be used, just like in the independent word. That makes it easier to recognise the words. It would have been much better to write korta**a**n**a** in this citation from a textbook:

Marka aad kortaamba waxa aad jidhkiinna ku arki doontaan isbeddel ku dhacaya iyo dareen hor leh. (Af-Soomaali, Fasalka 6aad, 2001)

## Vowel alternations

Also among the vowels there are some important regular alternations in different forms of the same word.

One important principle is that a long vowel is not used in diphthong that is in turn followed by a consonant. But a long vowel may be followed by **-y-** or **-w-** if there is a vowel after the **-y-** or **-w-**.

wuu sameeyaa  
 way sameysaa / samaysaa  
 waan sameynaa / samaynaa

Many words end in **-o/-e**. When an ending is added, these vowels are replaced by an **-a-**.

bare      baraha      barayaal      hooyo      hooyada  
 fure      furaha      furayaal

The same kind of alternation may also occur when the first part of a compound ends in **-o/-e**, but in this kind of context, it is equally common to leave the original vowel.

biyadhac      biyodhac

If the determiner ending begins with **-h-**, then the vowels **-u-** and **-i-** are copied from the ending to the vowel before the **-h-** if the form without the suffix ended in **-e** or **-o**.

biyo      biyaha      biyuhu      biyihii

The vowels **-o-** and **-e-**, however, don't normally copy onto the vowel before the **-h-**.



**biyahooda   biyaheeda**

The same copying of the vowel in the ending may sometimes occur in certain masculine nouns that end in **-h, -x, -c** if the stem contains a short **-a-**, e.g. **wax, wixii, wuxuu**, and sometimes even **sac, sicii...**

The same principle is at work in the infinitive of some verb that take the ending **-i**, t.ex. **baxaa, bixi karaa...**

## Contractions

Somali exhibits a lot of written contractions of different words, mainly small grammatical words. Some contractions are obligatory while others are optional.

### Obligatory contractions

Before the verb, the following words should be written together as one unit:

- |                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1) subject pronoun | <b>la,</b>                       |
| 2) object pronoun  | <b>is, i, ku, na, ina, idin,</b> |
| 3) prepositions    | <b>u, ku, ka, la,</b>            |
| 4) negator         | <b>ma.</b>                       |

For example:

**kulama, ila, iska, kama, isula**

the alternation **k > g** occurs after a vowel

**lagu, laga, lagama, ugu,**

**a + u > oo**

**loo (<\*la+u), noo (<\*na+u), inoo (<\*ina+u)**

**i + u > ii**

**ii (<\*i+u), idiin (<\*idin+u)**

the alternation **i > y** occurs after a vowel

**layska**

In today's Somali the last alternation is usually avoided, and it has become more common to write **la i** and **la iska** than **lay** and **layska**.

The combination **la ii** is basically impossible to write together while keeping the vowel length.

The adverbial particles **soo**, **sii**, **wada**, **kala** are never written together with other words in the above list in front of a verb.

**Si dhaqso ah ayey bisad u soo gashay guriga.**

The short words in the above list should never be written together with the verb.

**I sii!**

Other subject pronouns (**aan**, **aad**, **uu**, **ay**, **aannu**, **aynu**, **aydin**) may instead be written together with a preceding sentence particle

These subject pronouns should however always be written together with the negative particle **aan**. The order of the two parts varies, but the second part always has a shortened vowel.

**aan** + negator → **aanan**

**aad** + negator → **aadan / aanad**

**uu** + negator → **uusan / aanu**

**ay** + negator → **aysan / aanay**

## Contractions with conjunctions and particles

The two conjunctions **-na** and **-se** are pronounced and written together with another preceding word. This is also true for the particle **-ba**.

**Wax yar ka dib waxa u yimi nin socoto ah, wuxuuna weydiiyey sabata ka oohisay.**

**Sawir madaxa Xasan, kuna muuji dheg, af, san, timo iyo il.**

## Adjectives with sound alternations

When a sound change occurs in an adjective, the adjective must be written together with the following verb, e.g.

**cusub > cusb-:**

Haa saaxiib laakin aniga fasalka waan ku **cusbahay** mana wada garananyo ardayda! (Soomaali 2'18 Mu)

**jecel > jecl-, jecesh-:**

waxaad jeceshahay..., waxaan jeclahay...

## Adjectives i plural

Adjectives with reduplication in the plural should be written as one word.

**yaryar** (not **yar yar**, **yar-yar**),

**waaweyn** (not **waa weyn**).

One should however write **waa weyn** as two words if **waa** is a sentence particle, e.g. **Maroodigu waa weyn yahay**.

## Optional contractions

Besides the obligatory contractions discussed above, there are also a large number of optional contractions. A written text with many such optional contractions may make a colloquial or everyday impression, so avoiding to make optional contractions is one way of making a text look more literary.

Sentence particles may always be written together with the subject pronouns (except **la**), e.g.

**waa aan / waan**

**waa aad / waad**

**waxa uu / wuxuu**

**waxa ay / waxay**

The same is true for the subordinator word **in**.

**in aad / inaad****in aanan / inaan**

The conjunction **oo** may be written together with a preceding pronoun, e.g.

**iyada oo / iyadoo**

In certain expressions it is quite common to write **oo** together with other words as well, especially in expressions that tie together two clause into a longer sentence, t.ex.

**in kasta oo / inkastoo****sababta oo ah / sababtoo ah**

## Important instances of separate writing

---

The particles **soo**, **sii**, **wada**, **kala** are never written together with other words in front of a verb.

**Sheeg da'da ilkaha caano nuug uga dhacaan caruurta iyo da'da ilkaha oo idil ku soo wada baxaan.**

The short verb form **ah** should be written as a full word, not as a final **-a** attached to the preceding word.

**ka mid ah** (inte **ka mida**)

There is however, one important exception where **-a** is used instead of **ah**.

**keliya (keli ah)** *bara, endast.*

One should however write **keli ah** when it means *singular*, e.g.

**magac keli ah** *a noun in the singular***magac keliya** *only a noun*

## Compound words

---

When it comes to the writing of compounds, there is very little systematic discussion of the topic in the language handbooks. It is therefore difficult to give any simple recommendations.

Compounds may be written in three ways: as one word, as two words or with a hyphen, e.g.

**libaax badeed,    libaax-badeed,    libaaxbadeed;**

**hor u marin,    hor-u-marin,    horumarin;**

**marti qaadaa,    marti-qaadaa,    martiqaadaa.**

Generally speaking, the solution with a hyphen is the least common, except for a small number of words that will be mentioned below. Therefore it is not recommendable to use the hyphen in the majority of compounds.

In today's written Somali it seems that for the majority of compounds, separate writing is more common than joint writing, but the differences are not big enough or systematic enough to motivate any clear recommendations of one or the other principle.

The only good advice that can be given is to be systematic and try to follow one principle as much as possible, and at least not write the same words in different ways in the same text.

### **More complicated instances**

In combination with the use of upper case initial letters, the spelling of compounds as one or two words may render a lot of different possibilities, t.ex.

**Afsoomaali, af Soomaali, af-Soomaali, Af-Soomaali...**

Since this is a compound, but the upper case letter is required by the second element, it can be a good idea to use the hyphen here **af-Soomaali**,

but separate spelling as **af Soomaali** is equally common in today's written texts.

Also in compounds where the first part ends in **-o** or **-e**, there are several possibilities to choose between, e.g.

**biyo dhac, biyo-dhac, biya-dhac, biyodhac, biyadhac**

When writing a compound as one word, there is also a possibility to write the initial consonant of the second element with a double letter if the first element ends with a vowel and the second element starts with a consonant that may be doubled, e.g.

**ka dib, kadib, kaddib**

To write a double consonant in this kind of compound words was common in the 1970s, but today it is not very common any longer.

When several variables are combined, a lot of variation is possible.

<b>jare barid</b>	<b>jare-barid</b>	<b>jarebarid</b>	<b>jarebbarid</b>
	<b>jara-barid</b>	<b>jarabarid</b>	<b>jarabbarid</b>

Also here, it is very difficult to give good advice, other than the general 'be systematic'.

If the second element starts with a vowel, there is also a possibility to insert a hamsa, but this is actually quite uncommon, e.g.

**magac u yaal, magac-u-yaal, magacuyaal, magac'uyaal**

The most common spelling is **magacuyaal**.

## Upper case initials

---

With respect to the use of capital letters at the beginning of words, there are a few clear principles for Somali. An upper case letter should be used at the beginning of

- sentences,
- names of people, places, days, months, languages, nationalities, goods, books, films, etc.

Notice that in Somali the names of the days of the week and the names of the months are always written with a upper case initial letter. The same is true for nouns and adjectives that denote **languages** and **nationalities**.

<b>Oktoobar</b>	<i>oktober</i>	<i>October</i>
<b>Sabti</b>	<i>lördag</i>	<i>Saturday</i>
<b>Soomaali</b>	<i>somalier</i>	<i>Somali</i>
<b>af Soomaali / af-Soomaali</b>	<i>somaliska (språket)</i>	<i>Somali</i>
<b>Soomaaliyeed</b>	<i>somalisk</i>	<i>Somali</i>

The rules for the use of upper case initials are basically the same in Somali as in English. It is also quite common to write the names of the seasons and the cardinal directions with a capital initial letter in Somali, e.g. **Jiilaal**, **Bari**, but it is equally common to use lower case, e.g. **jiilaal**, **bari**, and both need to be considered equally correct. Again, the important thing is to be systematic throughout a text.

In Somali there are three digraphs (two letters that together represent one sound) **dh**, **kh**, **sh**. When they occur at the beginning of a name or a sentence, only the first of the two letters should be upper case, e.g. **Shire**.

Like in many other languages, upper case may also be used in titles in order to express respect, t.ex. **Marwo Xaawo**.

In headlines and headings, it is common to use a capital letter at the beginning of every word, e.g.

**Wasiir Jamaal Maxamed Xasan Oo Noqday Xildhibaan Ka Tirsan Golaha Shacabka**

## Hyphenisation

---

Words should never be divided between two letters that together represent one sound, i.e. **dh, kh, sh, aa, oo, uu, ii, ee**, t.ex.

inappropriate

**faa'i-**  
**idooyin**  
  
**dhaqd-**  
**haqaaq**

recommended

**faa'ii-**  
**dooyin**  
  
**dhaq-**  
**dhaqaaq**

Words are usually divided between syllables. If there are two consonants, then the most appropriate division is between the two consonants.

bisad-  
dayda

If there is only one consonant, one should divide before that consonant and let the consonant go with the following vowel.

bi-  
saddayda

It is however also possible to divide words between morphemes, which is often the preferred way to divide compound words.

bewteen syllabels  
less appropriate

**ho-**  
**rumarin**

between morphemes  
recommended

**hor-**  
**umarin**

## Numbers

---



When numbers are written as digits, it is often more natural to leave out the conjunction **oo**, but when reading it must of course be pronounced, e.g.

**7.000 litir**      or    **7.000 oo litir**      **toddoba kun oo litir**

When digits are followed by an abbreviation there is no need to write **oo**. Abbreviations are used in order to save space, and adding the **oo** would have the opposite effect.

**7.000 km**      **toddoba kun oo kiilomitir**

Ordinal numbers are normally written with the digit immediately followed by the ending **-aad**, without any space or hyphen in between, e.g.

**2aad, 3aad**    **labaad, saddexaad**

Years, dates, hours and similar phrases are normally written with the digit immediately followed by one of the suffixes **ka, ta, kii, tii** etc., without any space or hyphen in between, e.g.

**1972kii, maalinta Khamiista 3da Julay, 5ta galabnimo**

## Punctuation marks

---

There is normally a space after most punctuation marks, but not before them:

**abc. abc, abc? abc! abc; abc: abc, abc, abc.**

The opposite is true for the first of the two marks that enclose parenthetical text and cited text. The first parenthesis mark and the first citation mark are preceded by a space, but they are not followed by a space, e.g.

abcde (eray) bedese cermag "eray" bidimar

## Comma

---

There are no clearly defined principles for the use of the comma in Somali. The use varies between authors.

One good principle is to use the comma in order to facilitate for the reader to understand the structure of long sentences. You can do that by dividing long sentences into smaller units. It is often helpful to divide the sentence into the clauses that it consists of, or to put a comma in places where it is suitable to make a short pause when reading the sentence. To mark pauses is basically the main principle for the use of commas in Swedish.

## Enumeration

One specific case where there is practically no disagreement at all about the use of the comma is in enumerations or listings, t.ex.

Sawir **dheg, af, san, timo** iyo il.

In Somali, you normally put commas between all the words, but not immediately before the conjunction **iyo**.

## -na

When clauses are connected into sentences with the conjunction **-na** it may often be helpful for the reader to have a comma before the beginning of the second clause.

Wax yar ka dib waxa u yimi nin socoto **ah, wuxuuna** weydiiyey sabata ka oohisay.

Sawir madaxa Xasan, **kuna** muuji dheg, af, san, timo iyo il.

But if the whole sentence is short it is not really necessary.

## Direct speech report

Speech reports consist of two parts: the reporting clause and the reported clause. The reporting clause includes a verb such as *say, tell, ask, reply, shout*, and the reported clause includes what the original speaker said.

## With speech dash

Each person's direct speech starts on a new line, introduced by a long dash. The same punctuation is used as in any ordinary text. The end of the direct speech is not marked in any specific way.

Waa hooyo.

– Haloow hooyo!

– Waar hooyo xaggeed tagtay?

– Waan soo tukanayaa hooyo, maxaa dhacayaa?

– Hoo adeerkaa la hadal, adeerkaa ayaa ku doonayee.

Ma isaga la ii soo diray? (Ismaaciil C. Ubax 2015: 98)

If there is a reporting clause before the reported direct speech, that reporting clause ends with a colon. The direct speech starts on the following line.

– Saaxiibkayga koowaad ayaad tahay.

Si ay u fahamto ayaan ka daba **geeyey**:

– **Rag** iyo dumarba, u my best friend. (Ismaaciil C. Ubax 2015: 95)

If the reporting clause follows after the direct speech, there should be a comma instead of the full stop after the direct speech, and the reporting clause after the comma should start with a lower case letter.

– Waar ka kac meesha waxba ku ma **filnide**, **ayuu** igu salaamay.

(Ismaaciil C. Ubax 2015: 19)

When a question mark or an exclamation mark is used at the end of the direct speech, a reporting clause that follows after it will also begin with a lower case letter.

– Waar xaggeed ku **ordaysaa?** **ayaan** weydiiyey.

(Ismaaciil C. Ubax 2015: 91)

## With speech marks (citation marks)

The same citation marks are generally used in Somali as in English. Notice that the initial citation mark is placed up-side-down compared to the final citation mark.

“Waar bal adigu iska warran oo wax ma kuu hagaageen **iminka?**”

“Aabbo waan wacanahay, Talyaanigii ayaan joogaa laakiin wiigga soo socda waan ka baxayaa oo Iswiidhan ayaan haddana ku **noqonyaa.**”

(Khadar C. Cabdillaahi: Gurrac, 2015)

In older texts it is common to find citation marks of the type «xxx».

Nimankii waxay yiraahdeen «**Waa run.**».

(Iftiinka Aqoonta 2, 1966)

If there is a reporting clause before the direct speech, some authors add a colon at the end of the reporting clause.

Ninkii inta qoslay buu ku **yiri:** «**Waxaad** dhimanaysaa goorta uu dameerkaagu uu aad u qayliyo, dabadana uu kor u taago».

(Af Soomaali 5, 1976: 30)

But it is also common not to have any punctuation mark at all at the end of the reporting clause before the direct speech.

Waxa ay ku **tidhi** "**Malyuun** (Dabeeco) waxa ay rabto lama yaqaan, adiga oo cuntadii kariyey ayaa laga yaabaa in ay ku tidhaahdo mid kale ii kari." Waxa kale oo ay ku **tidhi** "**Sagal** iyo Sooyaal iyagu ma dhib badna, waxa aad siisona way iska cunaan."

(Faarax Maxamuud: 2014)

Some writers use a comma.

Guhaad wuxuu **yiri**, «Xaggee, Shiikh Muxsin?».

(Shire Jaamac Axmed: Rooxaan, 1973)

### *Efterföljande anföringssats*

It the reporting clause follows after the direct speech there should not be a full stop at the end of the direct speech. The reporting clause starts with a lower case letter.

«Waad iga heli **doontaa» buu** si qabow u yiri  
(Maxamed D. Afrax 1993: 264)

“Wuu soo miiraabay. Diktoor waa ka indhaha kala qaaday” ayuu wiil dhalinyaro ahi diktoorka barbar taagan ku yidhi.  
(Khadar C. Cabdillaahi: Gurrac)

It is also possible to put a comma right before or after the final citation mark.

"Naa maxaad sidaas u leedahay, reerkaaga oo dhan iyadaa ka qurux **badane,**" saaxiibaddeed Xamdi Gaabo ayaa ku tidhi Cadar Duwane.  
(Faarax Maxamuud 2014: 102)

«Waa **runtaa,**» Ciisaa ku raacay.  
(Maxamed D. Afrax 1993: 267)

«Alla ubaxu qurux **badanaa,**» ayey balanbaalistii tiri.  
(Af Soomaali 2, 1976)

If there is a question mark och exclamation mark at the end of the direct speech, then a comma is unnecessary.

«Abboowe maxaa kugu **dhacay?» bay** tiri iyadoo madaxdiisii laanta saarnaa soo toosinaysa.  
(Maxamed D. Afrax 1993: 308)

There are quite many different ways of marking direct speech in different languages. No single method can be claimed to be typically Somali. It seems that the English system has influenced Somali writers quite a lot. The most important recommendation is to use one system consistently.

## 5. Exercises

---

1. What is orthography?
2. When and how did Somali get its present orthography?
3. What person is the most important creator of today's Somali orthography?
4. Where can we find rules for Somali orthography?
5. Find the most evident mistakes based on traditional standard spelling. Don't comment on the choice of words or the word-order. Only comment the orthography.

5.1

**Layli 12. Farbarasho.** Tus fasalka sida loo qoro y. dheh "Barta uu ka bilaabmo. Hoos. Kor. Hoos. Xoodan.

5.2

Waa xayawaan duur- jooga  
oo xoog weyn.



5.3

**Layli 18.** U sheeg carruurta in ay u fiirsadaan sawirrada. Ka weydii weydiimo. Tusaale "Sakaaradu ma ka weyn tahay maroodiga?" Dhageyso si aad u hubisid in ay si fiicanisbar-bar dhig u samayn karaan.

5.4

1. Xaguu u labisanayaa cali?
2. Maxay xaawo huwanaysaa?
3. Muxuu cali xidhanayaa?

5.5

dumar. Dharka ragga waxaa ka mida shaadh, surwaal, garan, koodh iyo macawis.

5.6

2. Cali wuxu wadhayaa \_\_\_\_\_ iyo \_\_\_\_\_ .
-

5.7

Cali Sabtida wuxuu ciyaaraa  
kubadda cagta. Xaawana waxay ku ciyaartaa xadhig.



5.8

2. Maxay xaawo iyo cali qabtaan maalinta sabtida ah?

5.9

Markay yimaadeen ragii ay ka cabsi qabtay inay ninkeeda

5.10

Carruurta yar yar laga filimaayo in ay lacag soo xoojiyaan balse waxa  
ay xaq u leeyihiin in ay waxbarasho helaan sida ay u dhan yihiin.

5.11

**Fiiri oo akhri xarfaha yar-yar iyo kuwa waa weyn.**

5.12

biyahana ka gaadhaan. Xilli roobaadka toggu  
waa uu soo rogmadaa biyo badana waa laga  
hela. Marka Hargeysa biyuhu ka yaraadaana

5.13

Waxaa ku nool dad badan. Waxa ay  
leedahay dugsiyo Qur'aan, masjid iy  
dukaamo waan jeclahay tuuladayda.



5.14

1. Maxaan aan bisadu guryaha ugu haysanaa?
2. Maxaa aad siisaa bisadiinna?

5.15

Dhirta waxa aynnu ka helaa cuntada sida hadhuudhka, bariiska, arabikhi iwm.

5.16

Guryaha ayaa aynnu ku dhisanaa qaar ka mid ah.



5.17

10. Si taxaddir leh ugu fiirso sawirkan. wax ka qor yaxaaska.

5.18

Maalin kasta waxa u dugsiga ku tagaa lug.

6.1

## Farbarasho

Waxaan far qurxoon ku qorayaa weer taan shan jeer

6.2

Faadumo waxa ay markii ugu horreysay soo aragtay, geri, aar, gool, yeey nool oo ku jira xero silig ah, waxaa kale oo ay soo aragtay daanyeero ku boodboodaaya geedaha beerta korkooda.



6.3

Shimibiruhu waa xayawaan inta badan duula. Inta badana waxa ay ku noolyihiin dhirta dushooda.

6.4

Shimbiruhu waxa ay leeyihiin baalal iyo midabo qurux badan oo Alle (SWT) siiyey.

6.5

Intooda badan waxa ay dhistaan hooy looyaqaan " Buul"

6.6

Waxaa ay ka mid yihiin xawaannada lafdhabarleyda ah.

6.7

Gorayadu waa shimbir wayn!  
Maduusho sida haada kale.  
Qoor-dheer ayey leedahay.

6.8



Cali: subax wanaagsan - walaal.

Saciid: subax wanaagsan - walaal.

6.9

### Waxqabadka 1aad

Erayadaan hoos ku qoran meelaha ka banaan geli xarafka (b) dabadeedna akhri:

6.10

### Waxqabadka 2aad

Erayadan soo socda weero kooban ka same:

6.11

Farbarasho

Waxa aan farqurxoon ku qorayaa weertaan shan jeer:

6.12

### Waxqabadka 1aad

Waxa aan uga jawaabayaa weydiimahaan afka:

1. Cali muxaa uu ahaa?

6.13

Markii aan daalno oo aan kuleyl dareeno waxa aan harsanaa hooska dhirta.

6.14

## Waxqabadka 4aad

Farbarasho

Waxa aan farquroon ku qorayaa weertaan shan jeer

6.15

Waxa aan dhageysanayaa sheekadaan, kana jawabayaa su'aalaha kadambeeya.

6.16

Waxaa la sheegay in uu eey helay laf, waxa uuna u soo qaatay gurigiisa asag oo afka ku sita, si uu nabad ugu ruugo. Gurigiisa waxa uu ku yaalay qoyska uu

6.17

Ka dib markii uu ka gudbayey tugga ayaa aygii hoos eegay waxa uu arkay harkiisii oo aay soo celiyeen biyo ka hooseeya. Hase ahaatee waxa uu u maleynayey eey

6.18

5. Haddi aad weynaatid oo Allaah (sw) wax ku siiyo maxaa aad ku samay laheed hantidaada?

6.19

## Waxqabadka 3aad

Waxa aan buuggayga ku guurinayaa erayaddan iyo lidkooda:

6.20

Tusaalayaal:

- a. Labo dibi ayaa is eryoodey.
- b. Ninkii iyo libaaxi wey is arkeen.
- 1. Cali iyo Jaamac maxaa ay \_\_\_\_\_ yiraahdeen?
- 2. Ma \_\_\_\_\_ aragteen walaalkaa Xassan?

6.21

Geedi: Aniga ayaa ku wada barayo

Ciise: Waa yahay ee inakeen. Halkaan waa beerta nabadda. Waxaa wada jooga ardaydii dugsiga iyo qaar ka mid ah Macallimiinta.

6.22

Geedi: Ciise aan ku baro qaar ka mid ah ardayda fasalkeenna. Muuse iyo Caasho, Isaga iyo Iyada waxa ay ka mid yihiin ardayda fasalka 2aad.

## Övning 5.2b

---



1. Asal ahaan waxa aan ahay Soomaali waxaan se haystaa dhalashada Sweden.
2. Waxaan kunoolahay magaaladaan tan iyo markii aan ka imi Soomaaliya
3. Waxa aan ku dhashay kuna soo barbaaray magaalada Muqdishu ee wadanka Soomaaliya.
4. Waxa aan ka shaqaynayey shaqaddan aan hadda ka shaqeeyo muddo afar sano ah.
5. Waxan ku dhashay Soomaaliya, gaar ahaan meel Hargaysa duleedkeeda ah una jirtay 10 km dhanka waqooyi-galbeed. Hadda waa xaafadaha Hargaysa qayb ka mida.
6. ... waxay rabtay in uu noqdo mid bluug ah laakiin marada bluuga aheed kuma filnayn, ...
7. Wadankan intaannan imman, waxaan wax ku soo bartay wadankii hooyo ee Soomaaliya.
8. Neefta kaarboon laba ogsaydhku waxay ka timaadaa unugyada jidhkeena, waxayna ku soo ururtaa sanbabada, ... (Saynis 5, Itoobiya 2014)

**From various schoolbooks:**

9.

Af sawaaxili ayay kula hadlayeen. ]

10.



5. Fasalkaaga malaga helaa seddex xagal?

11.

4. Jaamac waxa uu soo iibsaday 236 digaagadood waxa ka baqtiyay 64 digaag. Immisa ayaa jaamac u soo haray?

12.

2. Warshad ayaa waxaa ka shaqeeya 475 shaqaale. Haddii ay 26 ka mid ahi ay yihiin dumar. Immisa ayaa rag ah?

13.

Koox Koox u shaqeeya.

14.

**Tufaaxu;** waxa uu leeyahay dhadhan macaan, tufaaxa waxaa la inooga soo dhoofiyaa dalalka carabta iyo Africa. Tufaaxa midabkiisu waa\_\_\_\_\_.

15.

Jaamac caruutiisa oo seddex ah ayaa uu si isle'eg ugu qayybiyey 18 xabbo oo nactac ah. Mid kastaa immisa ayuu helayaa?

## Övning 5.3

Från: Cilmiga bulshada 2, Muqdisho 2018

1.

Waxa aan u sheegayaa fasalka turrada qoyskeenna.

2.

Waxa aan Ku qorayaa calaamadda (✓) ama (x) weerahaan hortooda:

Cabdi Qoyskoodu waxa uu ka kooban yahay:

3.

Tani waa eeddadey Safiya.

waa aabbahey walaashii.

4.

Tirada qoyskeenu waa siddeed qof.

5.

Isagu Waa dhakhtar.

6.

Shaqada aabbahay waa:

b- Macallin.

t- Arday.

j- Dhakhtar.

x- Waxkale.

7.

Koox koox ayaannu uga doodaynaa:

- Kaallinta aabbaha ee goyskeenna.
- Faa'iidada Shaqada.

8.

Walaalahey waxa ay ixtirraamaan waallidkeenna.

9.

Waxa ay kaalmeeyaan walaalaheena waa weyn.

10.

Waxa ay u naxariistaan walaaleheena yar yar.



11.

5. Waxa aannu laba labo uga doodi doonaa qodobada soo socda:

12.

## Casharka 1aad: Muhiimada guriga

13.

### Aqal Soomaalli

14.

Gidaarada gurigani waxa ay ka samaysan yihiin dhoobo iyo dhigo, udbo iyo caws.

15.

Waxa aannu dhiganaa fasalka 2aad, kubbaddana waannu wada ciyaarnaa.

16.

Koox koox ayaannu uga doodaynaa:  
- Waxa aannu wada qabano aniga iyo saaxiibbaday.

17.

## Casharka 3aad: Daryeelka carruurta

18.

Carruurta yar yar ee qoyskeena iyo deriskeenu waxa ay inooga baahan yihiin kaalmo.

19.

Dugsigeennu waxa uu leeyahay dhismeyaal badan.

20

Maamuluhu waxa uu leeyahay xafiis. Qolka macalimiintu fariistaan waxa loo yaqaan qolka macalimiinta.

21.

Waxaa jira waxyaalo badan oo aynnu dugsigeenna ku qabano.

22.

**Casharka 3<sup>aad</sup>: Ciyaaraha aynnu dugsiga ku Ciyaarno.**

## Övning 5.4

Från: *Cilmiga bulshada 2, Hargeysa 2016*

1.

**1.3. Calaamadaha kuyaal jidka dugsiga loo maro**

2.

Qor shan weedhood oo aad ku sharxayso sida aad dugsiga ku tegto. Magacaw calaamado dhuleedka aad marto.



3.

Subax kasta waxa ay cadceeddu ka soo baxdaa Bari  
Galab kastana cadceedu waxay ka dhacdaa galbeed

4.

Eeg sawirka. Waxa uu inna tusayaa sawirka Geedi iyo walaashii  
Maryan oo ku socda dugsiga. Iyagu waxa ay socdaan waddada. waxa  
ay ka taxadirayaan baabuurta.

5.

U bax dibedda. Macallimkiina ayaa idin tusi doona sida waddada looga  
gudbo adiga oo nabad ah.

6.

Dad badan baa caawiya dugsigeenna. Dadkan qaar waa gudida  
waalidiinta. Qaar waa maamulka qaarna waa macalimiinta kale. Qaar

7.

Magacow qaar ka mid ah dadka dugsigiina ka shaqeeya?

8.

## **B) Guddidda Waalidiinta dugsiga**

9.

badan. Waxa ay inna baraan aqoonta.  
Waxa ay ina baraan sidii aan u noqon lahayn arday fiican.

10.

Magacii macallimkiina dhiga carabiga?

11.

Xeerarku waxa ay innagu caawiyaan in aynnu nabad ku wada noolaanno. Iyo in aan ilaashano dugsigeena.

12.

Waxbarashada waxa Ina bara macallimiinteena isla markaa inakana waxa la inooga baahanyahay in aynu dadaalno.

## Övning 5.5

Från: *Cilmi Deegaan 2, Jigjiga 2014*

1.

Xanuunka AIDS-ka, waa xanuun laga qaado dhiig ku shubidda, irbadaha, mindiyaha, manqasyada I.W.M oo uu isticmaalay qof u buka cudurkaas.

2.

Jaantuska hoose waxuu muujinayaa dhaqtar baadhaya ama dhiig ka qaadaya qof buka si uu u hubiyo caafimaadkiisa.

3.

Haddii saaxiibkaa oo kubbad kula ciyaaraya shil-kudhaco, kadibna uu dhiig ka soo daato, faraha halagalin dhiigga,

4.

Markaa, cutubkan waxuu kahadlayaa qeybaha bulshada,

5.

Marka uu saa ula qabsado ardaygu wuu baran qeybaha xilliyada iyo hawlaha kala duwan ee xilli walba la qabanayo.

6.

Cutubka saddexaad waxaa lagu soo qaadi doonaa dhacdooyinka dabiiciga ah, khayraadka dabiiciga ah, dhirta inagu xeeran iyo xayawaannada inagu xeeran. waa cutub aad ubalaadhan oo qiimo gaar ah u leh ardayda heerkani ah. Sobobta oo ah, waxuu wax weyn ka tusayaa degaankooda ay ku nool yihiin iyo waxyaabaha laga helo.

7.

Walxahaas waxaa la isu raacinkaraa sida ay kala yihiin astaamohooda

8.

\*Waxaad sheegtaa ugu yaraan saddex walxood oo abla-ablaynta aad soobaratay astaamahaaga ah ?

9.

Maadaama, xayawaanku uu faa'iido badan leeyahay waxaa waajib ah in la xanaaneeyo.

10.

Waa in laga daaweeyo cudurada kala duwan ee ku dhaca xoolaha.

## 5. Suggested solutions

1. Orthography are the principles and rules for spelling and the use of punctuational marks

2. The foundation for today's standard Somali orthography was laid down during the 1960s and the beginning of the 1970s. This was accomplished through systematic work on the journal *Iftiinka Aqoonta*, the Somali-Russian dictionary, schoolbooks in Somali for Somali schools, the first monolingual dictionary from 1976 and the first grammar description from 1971 and 1973.

3. In the journal *Iftiinka Aqoonta*, which was published by Shire Jaamac Axmed, the foundation was laid for the orthography that since then has been



used in an almost unchanged form which was then applied by the language commission in the early 1970s.

4. It is difficult to find a comprehensive collection of spelling rules and rules for punctuation. The rules are spread over many different schoolbooks and monolingual dictionaries and grammars.

#### 5.1

**Layli 12. Farbarasho.** Tus fasalka sida loo qoro y. dheh "Barta uu ka bilaabmo. Hoos. Kor. Hoos. Xoodan.

dheh → Dheh

Beginning of sentence → upper case.

#### 5.2

Waa xayawaan duur- jooga  
oo xoog weyn.



**duur- jooga → duur-joog ah**

No space after a hyphen.

The verb **ah** is a separate word connecting the two nouns:

**xayawaan duur-joog ah.**

#### 5.3

**Layli 18.** U sheeg carruurta in ay u fiirsadaan sawirrada. Ka weydii weydiimo. Tusaale "Sakaaradu ma ka weyn tahay maroodiga?" Dhageyso si aad u hubisid in ay si fiicanisbar-bar dhig u samayn karaan.

**si fiicanisbar-bar dhig → si fiican isbarbardhig**

The word **isbarbardhig** is a compound noun.

#### 5.4

1. Xaguu u labisanayaa cali?
2. Maxay xaawo huwanaysaa?
3. Muxuu cali xidhanayaa?

**xaguu → xagguu**

**xag** + definite article **-ga** + pronoun **uu**

**labisanayaa -> labbisanayaa**

The word **labbis** needs a double "b".

**cali, xaawo -> Cali, Xaawo**

Names need an upper case initial letter.

5.5

dumar. Dharka ragga waxaa ka mida shaadh, surwaal, garan, koodh iyo macawis.

**ka mida -> ka mid ah**

The verb **ah** is a separate word.

5.6

2. Cali wuxu wadhayaa \_\_\_\_\_ iyo \_\_\_\_\_ .

---

**wuxu -> wuxuu**

The pronoun **uu** has a long vowel, also when joining the particle **waxa**.

5.7

Cali Sabtida wuxuu ciyaaraa kubadda cagta. Xaawana waxay ku ciyaartaa xadhig.



kubadda -> kubbadda

The word **kubbad** needs a double "b".

5.8

2. Maxay xaawo iyo cali qabtaan maalinta sabtida ah?

**xaawo, cali, sabtida -> Xaawo, Cali, Sabtida**

Names need an upper case initial letter.

In Somali and English the days of the weeks are considered to be names.

5.9

Markay yimaadeen ragii ay ka cabsi qabtay inay ninkeeda

**ragii -> raggii**

There is one "g" in the word **rag** and one more in the determiner "gii"

5.10

Carruurta yar yar laga filimaayo in ay lacag soo xoojiyaan balse waxa ay xaq u leeyihiin in ay waxbarasho helaan sida ay u dhan yihiin.

**yar yar -> yaryar**

The plural form of the adjective **yar** is one word, not two, just like **dheer, dhaadheer**.

5.11

**Fiiri oo akhri xarfaha yar-yar iyo kuwa waa weyn.**

**yar-yar -> yaryar**

**waa weyn -> waaweyn**

Plural forms of adjectives. Hyphen is less suitable as this is not a compound.

5.12

**biyahana ka gaadhaan. Xilli roobaadka toggu waa uu soo rogmadaa biyo badana waa laga helaa. Marka Hargeysa biyuhu ka yaraadaana**

**badana -> badanna**

The adjective "badan" is followed by the conjunctionen "na".

It might also be helpful to add a comma

**waa uu soo rogmadaa, biyo badanna waa laga helaa.**

5.13

**Waxaa ku nool dad badan. Waxa ay leedahay dugsiyo Qur'aan, masjid iy dukaamo waan jeclahay tuuladayda.**

**iy -> iyo**

**dukaamo -> dukaammo**

Masculine nouns double "bb, dd, ll, mm, nn, rr" before the plural -o.

**dukaamo waan -> dukaammo. Waan**



These are two sentences since there is a sentence particle in each sentence: **Waxa** and **waa(n)**. The first sentence needs to end with a full stop and the second sentence has to start with a capital letter.

5.14

1. Maxaan aan bisadu guryaha ugu haysanaa?
2. Maxaa aad siisaa bisadiinna?

**Maxaan aan** -> **Maxaan** or **Maxaa aan**

The pronoun **aan** can be contracted with **maxaa** or be written separately, but not both at the same time.

**bisadu** -> **bisado**

**haysanaa** -> **haysannaa**

Verb forms in the 1st person plural (annaga, innaga) should always be written with a double "nn" after a vowel.

**bisadiinna** -> **bisad**di**inna**

The word **bisad** ends with a "d". The possessive ending begins with a "t" which changes to "d": bisad + tiinna -> bisad-diinna.

5.15

Dhirta waxa aynnu ka helaa cuntada sida hadhuudhka, bariiska, arabikhi iwm.

**aynnu** -> **aynu**

In the 1960s and early 1970s the spelling **aynnu** was used by some writers, but it later disappeared almost completely. During almost 40 years the form in use has been the one with a single "n". As a general rule today, consonants are not doubled after "y". But schoolbooks from Hargeysa (2010, 2016) seem to consciously have re-introduced the form "aynnu", but not consistently. Both **aynu** and **aynnu** are used in those books.

**helaa** -> **helnaa**

This form may be pronounced **hellaa** with a strong "ll", which is also found sometimes in writing, mainly in poetry. The best strategy is however to always write **-naa** in the 1st person plural.

5.16

Guryaha ayaa aynnu ku  
dhisanaa qaar ka mid ah.



**dhisanaa -> dhisannaa**

The ending **-naa** in the 1st person plural (we) should always be written with a double "nn" after a vowel.

5.17

10. Si taxaddir leh ugu fiirso sawirkan.  
wax ka qor yaxaaska.

**wax -> Wax**

This is the beginning of a new sentence.

5.18

Maalin kasta waxa u dugsiga ku tagaa lug.

**u -> uu**

This is the pronoun **uu** *he*, not the preposition **u** *to, for*.

**Farbarasho**

6.1 Waxaan far qurxoon ku qorayaa weer taan shan jeer

**weer taan --> weertaan/weertan**

**jeer --> jeer.**

**weertaan** is one word. The demonstrative **-tan/-taan** is an ending that should always be written together with the preceding noun. The ending with a short vowel is more common and therefore more neutral.

A **full stop** is needed at the end of the sentence.

6.2 Faadumo waxa ay markii ugu horreysay soo aragtay, geri, aar, gool, yeey nool oo ku jira xero silig ah, waxaa kale oo ay soo aragtay daanyeeero ku boodboodaaya geedaha beerta korkooda.

**aragtay, geri --> aragtay geri**

**ah, waxaa --> ah. Waxaa**

**boodboodaaya --> boodboodaya**

There is no need for a comma after the verb **aragtay**: it is not part of the enumeration or listing.

There should be a full stop after **ah**, not a comma, since **Waxaa kale** (W is upper case!) starts a new sentence.

The progressive ending **-ay-** should be written with a short vowel, even if it is pronounced with a long vowel in certain regions.

6.3 Shimibiruhu waa xayawaan inta badan duula. Inta badana waxa ay ku noolyihiin dhirta dushooda.

**Shim9biruhu --> Shimibiruhu**

**badana --> badanna** < badan + -na

6.4 Shimibiruhu waxa ay leeyihiin baalal iyo midabo qurux badan oo Alle (SWT) siiyey.

**midabo --> midabbo**

Masculine nouns always double "b, d, r, l, m, n" before the plural -o

Intooda badan waxa ay dhistaan hooy looyaqaan

6.5 " Buul"

looyaqaan --> loo yaqaan

" Buul" --> "buul"

Pronoun + preposition (la + u > **loo**) should never be written together with a following verb (**yaqaan**).

\*\*\* The rest will be translated shortly

Inget mellanslag mellan citattecken och ordet som de markerar. Inte stor bokstav till et vanligt substantiv. Meningen behöver avslutas med punkt, dvs. "**buul**".

Waxaa ay ka mid yihiin xawaannada  
lafdhabarleyda ah.

6.6

slarvfel: xayawaannada

Gorayadu waa shimbir wayn!

Maduusho sida haada kale.

6.7 Qoor-dheer ayey leedahay.

**Ma duusho** är två ord. Negationen **ma** får inte skrivas ihop med verbet.

Ordet **haad** + bestämd artikel **-da** blir **haadda**.

**Qoor dheer** behöver inget bindestreck. Det är ju ett substantiv och ett adjektiv.



Cali: subax wanaagsan - walaal.

6.8 Saciid: subax wanaagsan - walaal.

**Subax** med stor bokstav efter kolon i början av den direkta anföringen.

Kommatecken mellan hälsningarna och tilltalsordet, inte ett streck:  
**Subax wanaagsan, walaal.**

### **Waxqabadka 1aad**

Erayadaan hoos ku qoran meelaha ka banaan geli  
6.9 xarafka (b) dabadeedna akhri:

**Waxqabadka**

**bannaan**

Det hade blivit lite tydligare med kommatecken före den andra satsen, dvs. ...(b), **dabadeedna**... Enklast kan man ta för vana att i de allra flesta fall sätta ett kommatecken när man använder konjunktionen **-na**.

### **Waxqabadka 2aad**

6.10 Erayadan soo socda weero kooban ka same:

Imperativ med lång vokal: **samee**.

Farbarasho

6.11 Waxa aan farqurxoon ku qorayaa weertaan shan jeer:

**far qurxoon** är två ord, ett substantiv och ett adjektiv.

### **Waxqabadka 1aad**

Waxa aan uga jawaabayaa weydiimahaan afka:

6.12 1. Cali muxaa uu ahaa?

Det fokuserade frågeordet ska ha formen **maxaa** när det inte är sammandraget med uu, men maxaa + uu > **muxuu**.



Markii aan daalno oo aan kuleyl dareeno waxa aan

6.13 harsanaa hooska dhirta.

Dubbelt -nn- i verb i första person plural (innaga/annaga) om ändelsen följer direkt efter en vokal, dvs. **dareenno**, **harsannaa**. I just det här fallet är det dessutom så att det finns ett -m- i verbets stam **dareemaa**, och detta -m- övergår till -n- före ändelsens -n-, dvs. dareem-no > **dareenno**.

### Waxqabadka 4aad

Farbarasho

6.14 Waxa aan farquroon ku qorayaa weertaan shan jeer

**far qurxoon** är två ord. Det saknas **punkt** efter meningen.

6.15 Waxa aan dhageysanayaa sheekadaan, kana jawabayaa su'aalaha kadambeeya.

Prepositioner får inte skrivas ihop med verb, dvs. **ka dambeeya**.

6.16 Waxaa la sheegay in uu eey helay laf, waxa uuna u soo qaatay gurigiisa asag oo afka ku sita, si uu nabad ugu ruugo. Gurigiisa waxa uu ku yaalay qoyska uu

Antingen sammanskrivet **asagoo** eller särskrivet **asaga oo**. Verbet yaallay brukar vanligtvis ha dubbelt **-ll-**.

6.17 Ka dib markii uu ka gudbayey tugga ayaa aygii hoos eegay waxa uu arkay harkiisii oo aay soo celiyeen biyo ka hooseeya. Hase ahaatee waxa uu u maleynayey eey

Troligen **togga**. Mycket ovanligt att skriva ay = hund, hellre **eygii**. Pronomenet **ay** skrivs inte med lång vokal.

6.18 5. Haddi aad weynaatid oo Allaah (sw) wax ku siiyo maxaa aad ku samay laheed hantidaada?

Infinitiv slutar med **-n**, dvs. samayn. Verbet **lahaa** böjs **lahayd (laheyd)**, samma som ahayd (aheyd).

## Waxqabadka 3aad

Waxa aan buuggayga ku guurinayaa erayaddan

iyo lidkooda:

6.19

Ordet består av erado + tan > **erayadan**, bara ett d (från tan) eftersom själva substantivet i plural inte slutar med -d.

**Tusaalayaal:**

a. Labo dibi ayaa is eryoodey.

b. Ninkii iyo libaaxi wey is arkeen.

1. Cali iyo Jaamac maxaa ay \_\_\_\_\_ yiraahdeen?

6.20 2. Ma \_\_\_\_\_ aragteen walaalkaa Xassan?

**Ninkii iyo libaaxii** med lång vokal -ii efter båda orden eftersom båda orden står i samma bestämda form. **Xasan** med ett -s- eftersom den konsonanten inte hör till de sju (b, d, g, l, m, n, r) som man kan dubbelteckna.

*Geedi: Aniga ayaa ku wada barayo*

*Ciise: Waa yahay ee inakeen. Halkaan waa beerta nabadda. Waxaa wada jooga ardaydii dugsiga iyo qaar ka mid ah Macallimiinta.*

6.21

**Geeddi**

**Punkt** efter mening.

**ina keen** är två ord, ett pronomen (ina) och ett verb (keen). Man skriver aldrig ihop pronomen och verb.

Det finns ingen anledning att använda stor bokstav i **macallimiinta**.

*Geedi: Ciise aan ku baro qaar ka mid ah ardayda fasalkeenna. Muuse iyo Caasho, Isaga iyo Iyada waxa ay ka mid yihiin ardayda fasalka 2aad.*

6.22

**Geeddi**

Helst kommatecken efter tilltalsordet, dvs. **Ciise, aan ku...**

Det finns ingen anledning att ha stor bokstav i **isaga iyo iyada**, dessutom borde väl subjekt anges med formen **iyadu**.

Uppgift 2.

Vilka grova avvikelser mot vedertaget språkbruk kan man hitta i de här exemplen?

nödvändiga ändringar

andra rekommenderade ändringar

1. Asal ahaan waxa aan ahay Soomaali waxaan se haystaa dhalashada Sweden.

1. Asal ahaan waxa aan ahay Soomaali, waxaanse haystaa dhalashada Iswiidhan.

2. Waxaan kunoolahay magaaladaan tan iyo markii aan ka imi Soomaaliya

2. Waxaan ku noolahay magaaladan, tan iyo markii aan ka imid Soomaaliya.

3. Waxa aan ku dhashay kuna soo barbaaray magaalada Muqdishu ee wadanka Soomaaliya.

3. Waxa aan ku dhashay, kuna soo barbaaray magaalada Muqdisho ee waddanka Soomaaliya.

4. Waxa aan ka shaqaynayey shaqaddan aan hadda ka shaqeeyo muddo afar sano ah.

4. Waxa aan ka shaqaynayey shaqadan aan hadda ka shaqeeyo muddo afar sano ah.



5. Waxan ku dhashay Soomaaliya, gaar ahaan meel Hargaysa duleedkeeda ah una jirtay 10 km dhanka waqooyi-galbeed. Hadda waa xaafadaha Hargaysa qayb ka mida.

5. Waxaan ku dhashay Soomaaliya, gaar ahaan meel Hargeysa duleedkeeda ah una jirtay 10 km dhanka waqooyi-galbeed. Hadda waa xaafadaha Hargeysa qayb ka mid ah.

6. ... waxay rabtay in uu noqdo mid bluug ah laakiin marada bluuga aheed kuma filnayn, ...

6. ... waxay rabtay in uu noqdo mid buluug ah laakiin marada buluuga ahayd kuma filnayn, ...

7. Wadankan intaannan imman, waxaan wax ku soo bartay wadankii hooyo ee Soomaaliya.

7. Waddankan intaanan iman, waxaan wax ku soo bartay waddankii hooyo ee Soomaaliya.

8. Neefta kaarboon laba ogsaydhku waxay ka timaadaa unugyada jidhkeena, waxayna ku soo ururtaa sanbabada, ... (Saynis 5, Itoobiya 2014)

8. Neefta kaarboon laba ogsaydhku waxay ka timaaddaa unugyada jidhkeenna, waxayna ku soo ururtaa sambabada, ... (Saynis 5, Itoobiya 2014)

### **Från olika skolböcker:**

9. Af sawaaxili ayay kula hadlayeen. ]

*Bör skrivas:* Af Sawaaxili

10.

5. Fasalkaaga malaga helaa seddex xagal?

*Bör skrivas:* ma laga saddex

Frågepartikeln **ma** skrivs inte ihop med pronomenet **la** och prepositionerna.

11.

4. Jaamac waxa uu soo iibsaday 236 digaagadood waxa ka baqtiyay 64 digaag. Immisa ayaa jaamac u soo haray?

*Bör skrivas:* digaagadood. Waxa Jaamac

Här finns två huvudsatser. Varje sats har en satspartikel **waxa** och då bör man avsluta varje sats med punkt.

12.

2. Warshad ayaa waxaa ka shaqeeya 475 shaqaale. Haddii ay 26 ka mid ahi ay yihiin dumar. Immisa ayaa rag ah?

*Bör skrivas:* dumar, immisa

Detta är en mening med en villkorsbisats och en huvudsats. Man sätter inte punkt efter en bisats, men man kan sätta komma.

13.

**Koox Koox u shaqeeya.**

*Bör skrivas:* Koox koox

14.

**Tufaaxu;** waxa uu leeyahay dhadhan macaan, tufaaxa waxaa la inooga soo dhoofiyaa dalalka carabta iyo Africa. Tufaaxa midabkiisu waa\_\_\_\_\_.

*Bör skrivas:* macaan. Tufaaxa                      Carabta iyo Afrika

15.

Jaamac caruutiisa oo seddex ah ayaa uu si isle'eg ugu qaybiyey 18 xabbo oo nacnac ah. Mid kastaa immisa ayuu helayaa?

*Bör skrivas:* carruurtiisa      saddex      qaybiyey

## Övning 5.3

---

Waxa aan u sheegayaa fasalka turrada qoyskeenna.

turrada

Waxa aan Ku qorayaa calaamadda (✓) ama (x) weerahaan hortooda:

Cabdi Qoyskoodu waxa uu ka kooban yahay:

aan ku

Cabdi qoyskoodu

Tani waa eeddadey Safiya.

waa aabbahey walaashii.

eeddaday är vanligare i korpusarna

Waa

Tirada qoyskeenu waa siddeed qof.

qoyskeenu

Isagu Waa dhakhtar.

Isagu waa

Shaqada aabbahay waa:

b- Macallin.

t- Arday.

j- Dhakhtar.

x- Waxkale.

Wax kale

Stor bokstav är onödig i listor. Det är vanligt på engelska, men används inte på svenska.

Koox koox ayaannu uga doodaynaa:

- Kaallinta aabbaha ee qoyskeenna.
- Faa'iidada Shaqada.

Faa'iidada shaqada

Kaalinta

Walaalahey waxa ay ixtirraamaan waallidkeenna.

ixтираamaan

waallidkeenna

Waxa ay kaalmeeyaan walaalaheena waa weyn.

walaalaheenna waaweyn

Waxa ay u naxariistaan walaaleheena yar yar.

walaalaheenna yaryar

5. Waxa aannu laba labo uga doodi doonaa qodobada soo socda:

doonaa (verb i **vi**-form, alltid -nn- mellan vokaler)

qodobbada (maskulint substantiv i plural)

### Casharka 1aad: Muhiimada guriga

Muhiimmadda

Aqal Soomaalli

Soomaali

Gidaarada gurigani waxa ay ka samaysan yihiin dhoobo iyo dhigo, udbo iyo caws.

Gidaarrada (maskulint substantiv i plural)

Waxa aannu dhiganaa fasalka 2aad, kubbaddana waannu wada ciyaarnaa.

dhigannaa (verb i **vi**-form, alltid -nn- mellan vokaler)

Koox koox ayaannu uga doodaynaa:

- Waxa aannu wada qabano aniga iyo saaxiibbaday.

qabanno (verb i **vi**-form, alltid -nn- mellan vokaler)

### Casharka 3aad: Daryeelka carruurta

3aad: Daryeelka (mellanslag efter skiljetecken)

Carruurta yar yar ee qoyskeena iyo deriskeenu waxa ay inooga baahan yihiin kaalmo.

yaryar

qoyskeenna

deriskeenu

Dugsigeenu waxa uu leeyahay dhismeyaal badan.

dhismeyaal (enligt alla grammatikböcker ska pluralformen sluta på -  
ayaal)

Maamuluhu waxa uu leeyahay xafiis. Qolka macalimiintu  
fariistaan waxa loo yaqaan qolka macalimiinta.

xafiis. Qolka (mellanslag efter skiljetecken)

macalimiintu

macalimiinta



Waxaa jira waxyaalo badan oo aynnu dugsigeenna ku qabano.

aynu är mycket vanligare

aynu är vanligare i ordböckerna, men aynnu finns också, även i många skolböcker

HaBiT: aynu 33.906 / aynnu 765

Casharka 3<sup>aad</sup>: Ciyaaraha aynnu dugsiga ku Ciyaarno.

3<sup>aad</sup>: (att höja upp bokstäverna är antagligen påverkat av engelskans 3<sup>rd</sup> och italienskans 3<sup>o</sup>, men i soamliskan är vanliga bokstäver mycket, mycket vanligare)

ku ciyaarno.

## Övning 5.4

### 1.3. Calaamadaha kuyaal jidka dugsiga loo maro

ku yaal (preposition + verb skrivs aldrig ihop)

Qor shan weedhood oo aad ku sharxayso sida aad dugsiga ku tegto.  
Magacaw calaamado dhuleedka aad marto.

Magacow är mycket vanligare

tagto

sharraxayso är vanligare (Habit 28 jämfört med 8)

Subax kasta waxa ay cadceeddu ka soo baxdaa Bari  
Galab kastana cadceedu waxay ka dhacdaa galbeed

baxdaa Bari, galab kastana

cadceeddu    cadceed+da

galbeed.

Bari & Galbeed ELLER bari & galbeed (väderstrecken kan skrivas med stor eller liten bokstav)

Eeg sawirka. Waxa uu inna tusayaa sawirka Geedi iyo walaashii Maryan oo ku socda dugsiga. Iyagu waxa ay socdaan waddada. waxa ay ka taxadirayaan baabuurta.

ina är den etablerade stavningen i alla grammatikböcker

Geeddi

waddada. Waxa

taxaddirayaan ELLER taxaddarayaan

Ordb. Nairobi 2008, Roma 2012: taxaddar, Djibouti 2004, Djibouti 2013: taxadder

Alla nya skolböcker från Hargeysa: taxaddir

U bax dibedda. Macallimkiina ayaa idin tusi doona sida waddada looga gudbo adiga oo nabad ah.

Macallinkiinna

Dad badan baa caawiya dugsigeenna. Dadkan qaar waa gudida waalidiinta. Qaar waa maamulka qaarna waa macalimiinta kale. Qaar

guddida

macalimiinta

Magacow qaar ka mid ah dadka dugsigiina ka shaqeeya?

dugsigiinna



## B) Guddidda Waalidiinta dugsiga

Guddida (guddi+da)

badan. Waxa ay inna baraan aqoonta.

Waxa ay ina baraan sidii aan u noqon lahayn arday fiican.

ina

Magacii macallimkiina dhiga carabiga?

macallimkiinna

Carabiga. (detta är inte någon fråga)

Xeerarku waxa ay innagu caawiyaan in aynnu nabad ku wada noolaanno. Iyo in aan ilaashano dugsigeena.

inagu (ina+ku)

aynu är vanligare

noolaanno iyo (inte punkt före denna konjunktion)

ilaashanno (-nn- mellan vokaler i **vi**-form av verb)

dugsigeenna

Waxbarashada waxa Ina bara macallimiinteena isla markaa inakana waxa la inooga baahanyahay in aynu dadaalno.

ina

macallimiinteenna

innagana (innaga+na)

## Övning 5.5

Xanuunka AIDS-ka, waa xanuun laga qaado dhiig ku shubidda, irbadaha, mindiyaha, manqasyada I.W.M oo uu isticmaalay qof u buka cudurkaas.

Xanuunka AIDS-ku waa (inget kommatecken efter subjektet i satsen)

manqasyada, vanligare: maqasyada, även arabiska: miqaṣṣ(un), men många ordböcker rekommenderar faktiskt manqas.

I.W.M > i.w.m. ama iwm.

Däremot är alla ordböcker och skolböcker överens om att **xanuun** är den etablerade stavningen.

Jaantuska hoose waxuu muujinayaa dhaqtar baadhaya ama dhiig ka qaadaya qof buka si uu u hubiyo caafimaadkiisa.

wuxuu / waxa uu

dhakhtar är mycket vanligare, men dhaqtar förekommer också i flera ordböcker.

Haddii saaxiibkaa oo kubbad kula ciyaaraya shil-kudhaco, kadibna uu dhiig ka soo daato, faraha halagalin dhiigga,

shil ku dhaco (substantiv + preposition + verb)

ha la gelin

Markaa, .. cutubkan waxuu kahadlayaa qeybaha bulshada,

Markaa cutubkan (inget kommatecken efter tidsadverbial, det är bara typiskt för engelskan)

wuxuu / waxa uu

ka hadlayaa

Marka uu saa ula qabsado ardaygu wuu baran qeybaha xilliyada iyo hawlaha kala duwan ee xilli walba la qabanayo.

saa > sidaa

Cutubka saddexaad waxaa lagu soo qaadi doonaa dhacdooyinka dabiiciga ah, khayraadka dabiiciga ah, dhirta inagu xeeran iyo xayawaannada inagu xeeran. waa cutub aad ubalaadhan oo qiimo gaar ah u leh ardayda heerkanta ah. Sobobta oo ah, waxuu wax weyn ka tusayaa degaankooda ay ku nool yihiin iyo waxyaabaha laga helo.

xeeran. Waa cutub aad u balladhan oo qiimo gaar ah u leh ardayda heerkanta ah, sababta oo ah wuxuu wax weyn ka tusayaa degaankooda ay ku nool yihiin iyo waxyaabaha laga helo.

Walxahaas waxaa la isu raacinkaraa sida ay kala yihiin astaamohooda

raacin karaa

astaamahooda

\*Waxaad sheegtaa ugu yaraan saddex walxood oo abla-ablaynta aad soobaratay astaamahooda ah ?

- Waxaad

soo baratay

astaamahooda

ah. (Inte frågetecken, utan punkt. Detta är ingen fråga. Inget mellanslag före ett frågetecken.)

Maadaama, xayawaanku uu faa'iido badan leeyahay waxaa waajib ah in la xanaaneeyo.

Maadaama xayawaanku  
(inget kommatecken behövs **efter** en konjunktion)

xanaaneeyo

Waa in laga daaweeyo cudurada kala duwan ee ku dhaca xoolaha.

cudurada

# Unit 6

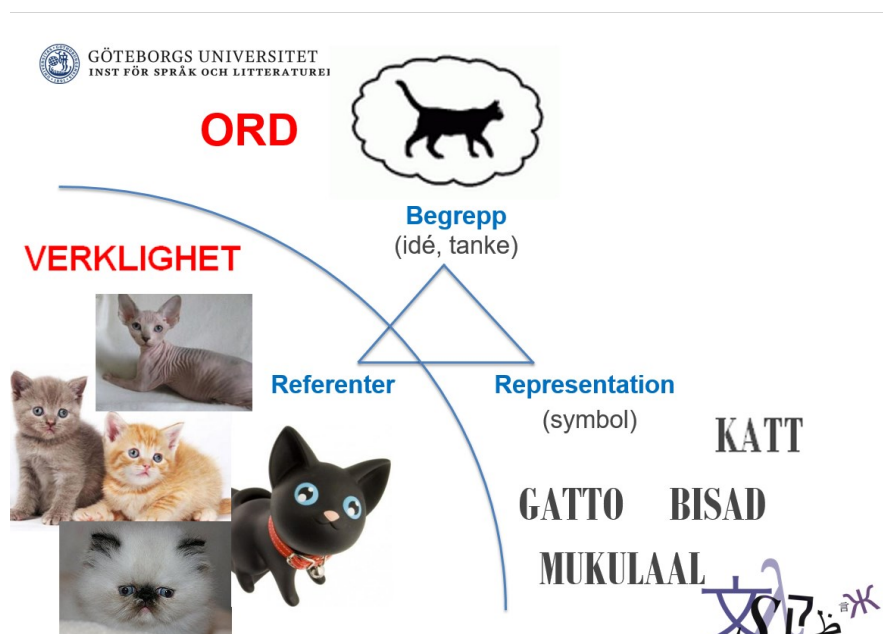
Vocabulary and semantics

## Unit 6. Vocabulary and semantics

The vocabulary of a language can be studied from many different perspectives. A general term for the study of the vocabulary is **LEXICOLOGY**. Within lexicology there are many different subfields that study e.g. the meaning of words (semantics), the formation of words (word formation), the inflection of words (morphology), the science of dictionary making (lexicography), the study of the origin of words (etymology), the study of word combinations (phraseology), etc.

To start with, it is important to give some thought to the basic question *What is a word?* A word can refer to something that is part of the reality, but it can also be a tool for thinking or talking about something in general. Without really making reference to a specific object in the real world.

The linguistic form of a word consists of two parts or components. There is a symbol that consists of a few sounds when we speak or a few letters when we write, but there is also a mental image of the notion, an abstract image in our brains. Our mental image does not always correspond to the real life occurrences in all details. For example, we usually image a cat as an animal with a fur, but all cats in the real world actually don't have a fur.



# Cilmimacneedka – Semantics

---

Semantics is the science that deals with the meaning that is expressed through language, and above all the meaning of words. A few basic notions from the field of semantics are good to know.

The words of a language are usually divided into content words and function words. **CONTENT WORDS** have a more tangible meaning, and to this category contains verbs, nouns, adjectives (including numerals) and interjections. A few examples of typical content words in Somali are **guri** *house*, **gaari** *car*, **afar** *four*, **weyn** *big* och **cunayaa** *eats*.

**FUNCTION WORDS** often don't have an equally tangible meaning. Instead they are used in order to refer back to other content words or to establish a relation between two content words. The word class pronouns has exactly this referring function, while prepositions and conjunctions are used to establish a relation between content words. Yet other function words may be used in order to express certain specific nuances that are added to the basic meaning of a word. Particles are of this third type.

Somali function words are found in the word class pronouns, e.g. the unstressed **aan** *I, we*, **aad** *you*, **uu** *he*, **ay** *she, they*. Among the particles there is e.g. **waa**, **waxa**, **baa** and **ayaa** that mark the focus on a specific word or phrase, while **ma** *not* expresses that the clause is either a question or a negative clause. Which meaning is intended depends on the form of the verb that the particle combines with. To the word class prepositions, usually only the four words **u** *to*, **ku** *in, on*, **ka** *from*, **la** *with* are counted. Among the conjunctions we find e.g. the very common **oo** and **ee** which can be used in many different ways with different possible translations, e.g. *and, that, when*, further examples are **iyo** *and*, **laakiin** *but*, **mise** *or*, **in** *that*.



## Sammi – Synonyms

When it comes to describing the relationships between words in a language, there are a couple of important terms. The term **SYNONYMS** is used about words that mean more or less the same thing. Usually they don't mean exactly the same thing, since there is almost always a tiny difference between synonyms in the very fine nuances: they might evoke different associations or mental images, or they might be used in different context or in different geographical areas (i.e. regional variation in the vocabulary). Examples of Swedish synonyms are e.g. the adjectives *vacker*, *snygg*, *fin*, *stilig*, the nouns *hus*, *kåk*, *villa*, *byggnad* or the verbs *äter*, *käkar*, *inmundigar*, *förtär*.

It is often the case that one synonym is more colloquial or used in more every-day contexts. Other synonyms may be more old-fashioned. Some might be felt to be more cultivated or elegant, whereas yet others may have a negative feel to them, and yet others are maybe only used within a certain geographical area.

Some examples of Somali synonyms are

*casaan*, *guduud*;  
*eeg*, *fiiri*;  
*haraad*, *oon*, *aqso*, *loof*;  
*gaajo*, *baahi*, *caq*, *hamuun*, *macaluul*, *mamac*, *qadoodi*, *qarraac*;  
*buuran*, *baruur*, *cayil*, *shilis*;  
*quruxsan*, *qurxoon*, *toolmoon*, *bilicsan*, *jalaqsan*, *fiican*, *wanaagsan*;  
*bisad*, *mukulaal*, *yaanyuur*, *yanyuuro*, *dinnad*, *dummad*, *basho*;  
*wadne*, *qalbi*;  
*gabar*, *inan*, *hablo*.



## Lidad – Antonyms

Antonyms are words with opposite meanings.

<i>yar</i>	–	<i>weyn</i>	<i>yimid</i>	–	<i>tagay</i>
<i>dheer</i>	–	<i>gaaban</i>	<i>macallin</i>	–	<i>arday</i>
<i>bad</i>	–	<i>berri</i>	<i>macallin</i>	–	<i>macallimad</i>
<i>buur</i>	–	<i>dooxo</i>			
<i>kulayl</i>	–	<i>qabow</i>	<i>hooyo</i>	–	<i>aabbe</i>
<i>jecel</i>	–	<i>neceb</i>	<i>hooyo</i>	–	<i>gabar</i>
<i>u</i>	–	<i>ka</i>	<i>dhakhtar</i>	–	<i>bukaan</i>

## Hyperonyms and hyponyms

Hyperonyms (from Greek *hyper* 'above' and *nym* 'name') and hyponyms (from Greek *hypo* 'under' and *nym* 'name') are two terms that are immediately related to each other.

Hyperonyms are superordinate notions that denote groups of objects. Hyponyms are subordinate notions that denote individual categorier of objects within the superordinate group, e.g.

hyperonym: *xayawaan*

hyponyms: *bisad, libaax, sac, dibi, daanyeer, ey, dameer...*

## The relation between form and meaning

Most words in a language have a quite random form. This is referred to in linguistics as the **ARBITRARY** form of words. There is nothing in the form of the word **san** *nose*, neither in Somali nor in English, that would make that specific comibnation of sounds more suitable for referring to that part of the face than any other combination of sounds.

However, languages also have a small group of words where there actually is a natural relation between the form of the word and what it denotes. For example, this is true for some words denoting objects and animals that produce specific sounds. Such words are referred to as **ONOMATOPOEIC** words, i.e. words that imitate, resemble or suggest a sound.

If the word imitates the sound, it is often a word that belongs to the word class of interjections. One example is **waaq** *croak* which is the sound produced by frogs (and certain birds). There is also e.g. **bash** *crash*, like when something breaks, especially glass or ceramics, **batalaq** *splash*, **jug** *boom, bang...*

It can also be a noun that denotes an object that emits a certain sound, and sometimes the interjections may also be used as nouns, e.g. **qaaq**, def. **qaaqa** *(the) cry*, **jug -ta** *(the) boom, thud*, **guuguule** *owl*, maybe also **gugac** *thunder* and possibly also **dhugdhugley** *motorbike*, but this word also exists in other languages, so it might be a borrowing.

There are of course also verbs that imitate sounds, e.g. **qaaqleeyaa** *cries, yells* and maybe **ooyaa** *cries, weeps*.

Many other words are much more uncertain, but it is of course not impossible that they are also onomatopoeic, e.g. **yaanyuur** *cat*. The question is whether this word sounds like something a cat would "say", or whether it has rather a different origin. And maybe **buufin** *balloon*?

## Homonyms

The term **HOMONYM** is used for two words that mean totally different things, but have the exact same form. Both in Swedish and in Somali there are a number of homonyms. Swedish *vad* corresponds to **maxay**; **kub** (qaybta dambe ee lugta); **sharad**. Swedish *får* corresponds to **lax**; **helaya**; **waa in...**; **karaa**; **oggolaansho u haysta in...** And the Somali word **gal** can be a noun with the meaning *envelope, duvet cover, pillow case* or a verb in

the imperative meaning *enter*. **Kab** can mean *shoe* or *mend*. **Guur** can mean *marriage* or *move*. It is quite common that a Somali root has two closely related meaning of which one is a noun and the other is a verb. A few other examples are **Magan** (male first name) or **magan** *shelter*, **aroor** *dawn; back, spine; lead cattle to drink water*, **feero** *ribs; iron; tuberculosis; comb*, **joog** *height; bucket, jar; stand, be present, stay*.

To be precise, two homonyms are two different words that are written and pronounced in exactly the same way.

**na** *and* (conjunction)      **na** *us* (pronoun)

In Somali there isn't a lot of full homonyms since the words are often just written in the same way, but pronounced differently. But in Swedish there is a lot of full homonyms, e.g. **fil**, **vad**, **såg**, **led**...

## Homographs

Homographs (from Greek *homo* 'same' and *graf* 'writing') is a term that denotes words that are written in the same way, but pronounced differently.

<b>ínán</b> <i>girl</i>	<b>ínan</b> <i>boy</i>
<b>béer</b> <i>liver</i>	<b>beér</b> <i>garden, field, plantation</i>
<b>tiri</b> <i>said</i>	<b>tíri</b> <i>count</i>
<b>cunto</b> <i>eats</i>	<b>cúnto</b> <i>food</i>
<b>lá</b> <i>with</i> (preposition)	<b>la</b> <i>one</i> (indefinite subject pronomen)
<b>kú</b> <i>in</i> (preposition)	<b>ku</b> <i>you</i> (object pronoun)

## Homophones

Homophones are pronounced in the exact same way, but written in different ways. The term is from Greek *homo* 'same' and *fon* 'sound'. This is very common in Swedish, but not in Somali.

<i>kål; kol</i>	<i>gjort; hjort</i>	<i>värd; värld</i>	<i>hann; han</i>	<i>tjärna; kärna</i>
<i>jul; hjul</i>	<i>jäst; gäst</i>	<i>män; men</i>	<i>so; zoo</i>	<i>kar; karl</i>

## Taariikh-ereyfeedka – Etymology

---

Etymology is the study of the historical background of words, their creation and origin, i.e. from where we have gotten all the words that we have today. Etymology can reveal how words have been borrowed from other languages or whether new words have developed through changes in words that are old to the language.

With respect to their origin, words are usually divided into three types: inherited words, borrowings and foreign words.

**INHERITED WORDS** have supposedly existed in the language already ‘from start’ – or at least for a very long period of time. Therefore, this kind of words usually exist in several different closely related languages.

Of course, to a large extent the Somali vocabulary consists of words that have been inherited from older stages of the language spoken in the area, and therefore largely belongs to the common lexicon of the Cushitic languages, i.e. typical inherited vocabulary, that can also be found and recognised in neighbouring languages, since for a very long time they have been part of the development into today’s languages.

Very basic words used in everyday life are usually inherited, e.g. **hooyo** *mother*, **aabbe** *father*, **cunaa** *eats*, **cabbaa** *drinks*. The origin of such words is therefore often quite uncertain. Other inherited Somali words are quite probably other basic words such as the numerals **kow** *one*, **laba** *two*, **saddex** *three*, etc., the pronouns **aniga** *I*, **adiga** *you*, etc., the adjectives **cad** *white, bright*, **madow** *black, dark*, or the nouns **geel** *camels*, **ari** *goats and sheep*, **lo’** *diary cattle*.

Based on the inherited words there is of course a possibility to create lots of new words. One example is **sadjibeke** *rectangular block* which quite evidently is derived from **saddexjibbaarane** *cube* with the addition of the adjective **eg** *similar* and the suffix **-e**.

**LOANWORDS** have been borrowed from other languages since hundreds of years, but it is often still possible to see the similarities with the words in the source languages. At the same time many words have been so well established in the borrowing language that they are already felt to be a natural part of the language. Pronunciation, spelling and inflection have usually been adapted to the principles of the borrowing language and people are usually not bothered by such well established borrowings.

Most loanwords are today felt to be a very natural part of the Somali lexicon. Many borrowings from Arabic belong to this group of words, but also many words from other places, such as Africa (mostly Swahili and Amharic), Europe (mostly English and Italian), Persian (Persian), or India (Urdu, Hindi etc.).

It is especially from Arabic that we find large amounts of borrowings in Somali, e.g. **beed** egg (Ar. bayḍ), **dacwad**, **dacwo** accusation, lawsuit (Ar. dacwa), **dastuur** constitution (Ar. dastuur), **dukaan** shop (Ar. dukaan), **faras** horse (Ar. faras), **laakiin** but (Ar. laakin), **maxkamad** court of justice (Ar. maxkama), **saacad** clock, hour (Ar. saaca), **sawir**, **masawir**, **taswiir** picture, **akhriyaa** reads, **askari** soldier, **jawaab** answer (Ar. jawaab), **kursi** chair, **moos/muus** banana (Ar. mawz), **sariir** bed (Ar. sariir), **su'aal** question (Ar. su'aal), **surwaal** trousers, **quraarad** bottle, **tahniyad** congratulation, ...

From English there is, e.g., **buug** book, **kabadh** cupboard, **xafiis** office, **baaskiil** bicycle, **bas** bus), **buskud** biscuit, **laydh** light (or electricity), **bareeg** break/brake ...

From Italian, e.g., **armaajo** cupboard (It. armadio [armaadyo]), **jallaato** ice-cream (It. gelato [jelaato]), **bumbeelmo** grapefruit (It. pompelmo), **samefalle** semaphore, traffic light ...

From Swahili, e.g., **yaambo** hoe (Sw. jambo), **moxog** cassava (Sw. muhogo), **beeso** money (Sw. pesa; It. peso)...

From Amharic, e.g., **bun** *coffee* (Am. buna), **baabuur** *car, vehicle* (Am. babur *train* from Ar. baabuur *steam engine, (steam) ship, locomotive* from French *vapeur steam*)...

From Persian, e.g., **baraf** *ice, snow* (Pe. barf *snow*), **bakhshiish** *tip* (Pe. bakhshesh *gift*), **doorbin** *binoculars* (Pe. durbin), **neyruus** *new year celebration* (Pe. noruz *new year*), **ranji** *colour* (Pe. rang *colour, adj. rangi*)

From languages of India, e.g., **rooti/roodhi** *bread*, **gaadhi/gaari** *car, cart, ...*

Of course there is also a small number of borrowings from other languages, e.g. **biririf** *break, paus* from Russian (pereryv [piriryf]).

Some words have similar forms in many languages, and it can therefore be difficult to define one particular source language, e.g., **dekreeto** *decree*, **mooto** *motorbike, moped*, **rikoodh/rikoor** *record, grammophone, tape recorder, cd-player*, **baasaboos** *passport*, **bangi** *bank*, **raadiyo / raadiyow** *radio, ...* but most of these are probably borrowed from English or (and) Italian.

Sometimes there are competing borrowings from different languages for the same notion, and sometimes there is even a competing purely Soamli word with the same meaning alongside the borrowing(s):

*digaag* (Ar. dijaaj, regionally [digaag]) = *dooro* (Amharic ዶሮ [doro]) 'chicken'

*tuwaal* (En. towel) = *shukumaan* (It. asciugamano) = *gacantir* (Somali)

*wiig* (En. week) = *usbuuc/asbuuc/isbuuc* (Ar. usbuuc) = *sitimaan* (It. settimana) = *toddobaad* (Somali)

*gidaar* (Ar.) = *derbi* (Somali) 'wall'

**FOREIGN WORDS** are words that have been borrowed lately and still felt to be foreign elements in the language. Often the spelling, pronunciation and inflection may vary between speakers and groups, and it is often the case that foreign words are questioned and discussed. There are quite often suggestions put forward to replace foreign words with words they have been created based on the inherited Somali vocabulary. But despite the

opposition, really many of the foreign words make their way into the borrowing language and in the long run they become generally accepted loanwords, the reason being that in everyday life many of the new foreign words are very practical and difficult to do without. To replace a foreign word which is already in use with a newly coined Somali word is rather difficult, and that kind of suggestions are usually not very successful.

There are often different alternative forms of foreign words in Somali, since the words have not had enough time to stabilise. There might also be competing Somali words with the same meaning, or competing borrowings from other languages. To this group of words belongs, e.g., **ambalaans** *ambulance*. It is difficult to determine from which language the word has been borrowed. The word has also received slightly Somalised version, **ambalaas**, where **-n-** has been dropped since Somali words in principle cannot end in more than one consonant. The word is also interesting since all speakers don't agree in the gender of it. The definite form occurs as both **ambalaa(n)ska** and **ambalaa(n)sta**. Furthermore, there are other alternative words for the same notion, the Somali **bukaanqaad** (*bukaan* 'patient' and *qaad* 'take, transport') or **dhooli** and the partially Arabic **gaadiidka caafimaadka**. (So. *gaadiid* 'vehicle' and Ar. *caafimaad* 'health'). Such variation is typical for words that are still partially felt to be a foreign element in the language.

### Proper nouns become common nouns

In many languages there are some common nouns whose origin can be found in various proper nouns such as personal names or product brands. A Swedish example is the word **friggebod** that denotes a small building of max. 15 m<sup>2</sup> that does not require a construction permit. This law was introduced when Birgit Friggebo was the responsible minister, and her name is the source for coining this new word in Swedish.

There is a type of screw drivers and screws that in English are called *Phillips* after the person who started mass production of this tool. *Pampers*



is used in many languages as a word for diapers. *Jeep* was originally a car brand, but today it is often used for a certain type of car without respect to the name of the manufacturer.

In Somali there is, e.g., **taydh** and **oomo** that have become common nouns meaning washing powder and **huufer** as a common noun denoting a vacuum cleaner. These words originate from the brands *Tide*, *Omo* and *Hoover*.





## Exercises

---

### 6.1

#### 1A. Give synonyms to the words:

wiil, ukun, rooti, naag

#### 1B. Give antonyms to the words:

haween, xeeb, fiican, madow

#### 1C. Write two different sentences where these homonyms are used in two completely different meanings.

tiri, baad, afartan, ayaan

#### 1D. Divide these words into their constituent parts (morphemes).

cimilogooreed, gabayaa, dhallinyaro, dhakhtarnimo

#### 1E. How many other words can you think of that are based on the word 'boqor'? Divide the words into their constituents parts (morphemes).

### 6.2

1. What is the scientific term for the *science dealing the vocabulary*?
2. What is the scientific term for the *science dealing with dictionaries*?
3. What is the scientific term for the *science dealing with the meaning of words*?
4. What is the scientific term for the *science dealing with the origin of words*?

5. Among the words under 6, find a pair of words that are

- a. synonyms
- b. antonyms
- c. homographs
- d. homonyms
- e. hyperonym and hyponym to each other

6. Which of the following are content words?

**aad du, aad mycket, aqal, bad, beer lever, beer trädgård, berri, bisad, carruur, culus, ey, fiican, fudud, gabadh, guri, hooyo, inan pojke, inan flicka, kalluun, ma frågeord, ma inte, mallay, maroodi, mukulaal, suubban, u, wanaagsan, weyn, wiil, xayawaan, yar.**

7. Which of the words in the above list are function words (or grammatical words)?

8. What is meant by inherited words, loanwords and foreign words?

9. Divide the following words into groups containing inherited words, loanwords and foreign words.

**ambalaans, aniga, afar, atam, aydiyaalism, baraf, bare, buug, faras, haa, heliyam, hooyo, jiko, Julay, kumbuyuutar, kursi, ma, miis, macallin, oo, ordaa, raadiyow, rooti, sariir, telefoon, wiig, wiil, yaambo.**

10. What is meant by saying that the form of most words is arbitrary?

11. What is meant by onomatopoeic words?

12. From what language are the following words probably borrowed?

**baraf, yaambo, armaajo, gaadhi, dukaan**

### 6.3

In the following text, find the required word. All words must occur in the text!

A pair of **synonyms**.

A pair of **antonyms**.

Two **hyponyms** that have a common hyperonym. (The hyperonym does not have to occur in the text,)

A **homonym or homograf** (It doesn't have to occur in the text in both meanings, only in one of the meanings.)

Typical **inherited words**.

Typical **loanwords**. Try to find words from as many different languages as possible.

Typical **content words**.

Typical **function words**.

## Caqli Badane

Xasan waxa uu ahaa wiil aad u jecel mooska. Subax kasta waxa uu iskoolka u qaadan jiray moos. Maalin maalmaha ka mid ah isaga oo u socda iskoolka, oo moos gacanta ku sita ayaa daanyeer ka hor yimid. Daanyeerkaa waxa uu damcay in uu mooska ka qaato Xasan. Markaas ayuu gadaal ka soo maray. Xasan waxa uu dareemay waxa gadaashiisa socda, waxa uuna fiiriyey gadaal. Daanyeerkaa ayaa ku soo boodey oo Xasan ka dafay mooskii. Xasan aad ayuu uga xumaaday.

Maalintii labaad Xasan mooskii waxa uu gashaday boorsada, si uu mooska uga qariyo daanyeerka, hase ahaatee daanyeerkaa waxa uu arkay mooskii oo ku jira boorsada, wuuna ku soo booday, waana ka dafay.

Xasan maallintii ku xigtay waxa uu ku fekerey sidii mooska uu uga ceshan lahaa daanyeerkaa.

Maallintii saddexaad Xasan mooskaa ayuu soo cunay, inta aanan guriga ka soo bixin, waxa uuna gacanta ku soo qaatay qobkaa mooska, waxa uuna ku fekerey in uu xal u helo dhibaataada haysata.

Daanyeerkaa waxa uu ka dafay Xasan qobkaa mooska, wuuna cunay. Xasan aad ayuu u xanaaqay markii uu arkay daanyeerkaa oo cunaya qobkaa mooska.

Maallintii afraad Xasan aad ayuu u fekerey, si uu u gaaro xal kama dambays ah. Subaxii dambe Xasan inta uusan guriga ka soo bixin ayuu mooskaa soo mariyey basbaas, wuuna soo qaatay. Daanyeerkaa ayaa dafay mooskaa basbaaska lahaa, wuuna ku gubtay. Xasan aad ayuu ugu qoslay markii uu arkay daanyeerkaa oo carabkiisu baannaanka yaallo oo boodboodaya, kana cararay mooskaa.

Subaxii dambe Xasan waxa uu ku soo qaatay gacanta moos, waxa uuna soo ag maray daanyeerkaa.

Daanyeerkaa kama uu dafin Xasan mooskaa maalin dambe.

## Weydiimo

1. Xasan maxaa uu aad u jeclaa?
2. Markii uu iskoolka u socdey ee daanyeerka ka daba yimid maxaa uu gacanta ku haystay?
3. Xasan maxaa laga dafay?
4. Maallintii labaad xaggee ayuu mooska ku qarsaday?
5. Xasan maxaa uu daanyeerka ku sameeyey ugu dambayntii?
6. Maxaa ay tahay dulucda sheekadu?

## Suggested solutions

---

### 6.1

#### 1A. synonyms

wiil - inan, kuray, igaar, gaban, barbaar

ukun - beed, ugxan (ugax) (sg.) / ugxammo, ugxaan (pl.), naalo, mayay

rooti/roodhi - furan/furin/furun,

naag - afo, bilcaan, gabadh, marwo, haweeney, xaawaley, islaan, bilis, oori, xaas

#### 1B. antonyms

haween - rag

xeeb - dhul, berri, bad, badweyn,

fiican - xun

madow - cad, caddaan

#### 1C. homonyms

tiri    Tiri!            Waxay tiri, in ....

baad (noun)        baa+aad

afartan            'these four' or 'fyrzio'

ayaan            Ayaan (name), ayaan (common noun), ayaa+aan

#### 1D. morphemes

cimilo-goor-eed          rot+rot+suffix/ändelse

gabay-aa          rot+ändelse

dhall-in-yar-o    (rot+ändelse)+rot+ändelse

dhakhtar-nimo    rot+ändelse

## **1E. word formation**

root+ending

boqor-ad

boqor-tooyo

boqor-nimo

boqor-tinnimo    m

boqor-le

sifooyin:

boqor-eed

boqor-aad

boqr-an

falal:

boqor-ayaa

boqr-ayaa

boqr-adaa

magac gaar:

Boqor-re

root+root

ina-boqor

wakiil-boqor

dhaxal-boqor

root+root+ending

boqor-tiir-she

## 6.2

1. LEXIKOLOGY.

2. LEXIKOGRAPHY.

3. SEMANTICS.

4. ETYMOLOGY.

5. a. Synonyms: **aqal + guri, bisad + mukulaal, fiican + suubban, wanaagsan, gabadh + inan, inan + wiil, kalluun + mallay.**

b. Antonyms: **bad – berri, fudud – culus, gabadh –wiil, hooyo – gabadh, hooyo – inan, weyn – yar.**

c. Homographs: **aad du + aad mycket, beer lever + beer trädgård, inan pojke + inan flicka.**

d. Homonyms: **ma frågeord + ma inte**

e. Hyperonym: **carruur** and hyponyms: **gabadh, inan, wiil.**

Hyperonym: **xayawaan** and hyponyms: **bisad, ey, kalluun, mallay, maroodi, mukulaal.**

**aad du, aad mycket, aqal, bad, beer lever, beer trädgård, berri, bisad, carruur, culus, ey, fiican, fudud, gabadh, guri, hooyo, inan pojke, inan**

*flicka*, **kalluun**, **ma** frågeord, **ma** *inte*, **mallay**, **maroodi**, **mukulaal**, **suubban**, **u**, **wanaagsan**, **weyn**, **wiil**, **xayawaan**, **yar**.

6. Content words **aad** *a lot*, **aqal**, **bad**, **beer**, **beer**, **berri**, **bisad**, **carruur**, **culus**, **ey**, **fiican**, **fudud**, **gabadh**, **guri**, **hooyo**, **inan**, **inan**, **kalluun**, **mallay**, **maroodi**, **mukulaal**, **suubban**, **wanaagsan**, **weyn**, **wiil**, **xayawaan**, **yar**.

7. Funktion words: **aad** *you*, **ma** question word, **ma** *not*, **u**.

8. Inherited words have been part of the language for hundreds of years and are usually shared with neighbouring, genetically closely related languages.

Loanwords have been borrowed into the language quite a long time ago and are not felt to be foreign any longer, spelling, pronunciation and inflection has adjusted to Somali.

Foreign words have not fully adjusted to the Somali system, and there is often quite some variation in spelling, pronunciation and inflection, and therefore the words are still felt to be foreign elements in the language.

9. Inherited words: **aniga**, **afar**, **bare**, **haa**, **hooyo**, **ma**, **oo**, **ordaa**, **wiil**.  
Loanwords: **baraf**, **buug**, **faras**, **jiko**, **kursi**, **miis**, **macallin**, **rooti**, **sariir**, **wiig**, **yaambo**, since most speakers don't think much about their origin..

Foreign words: **ambalaans**, **atam**, **aydiyaalism**, **heliyam**, **Julay**, **kumbuyuutar**, **raadiyow**, **telefoon** since some of the depart from the principles of Somali, e.g., word final -m, as well as variation in spelling, pronunciation and inflection.

10. The form of most words has no logical explanation, it is rather a result of coincidences, and the form of most words doesn't give us any clues at all about the meaning of the words.



2. Onomatopoeic words are quite few. They actually have a form that is somehow connected to the meaning. They are often similar to a sound that can be associate with the object that the word denotes.

3. baraf - Persian, yaambo - Swahili, armaajo - Italian, gaadhi - Hindi, dukaan - Arabic.

### 6.3 (2020)

#### synonyms

vacker, snygg

fiiriyey, arkay

dafay qaatay

qariyo, ishan

damcay fekeray

#### antonyms

lid, lidad    stor, liten

hor    gadaal

qoslay    xanaaqay

socdaa ? yimid

dhibbato, xal

#### hyponyms

subax, maalin (olika tider på dygnet)

moos, basbaas (olika typer av mat)

saddexaad, afraad (olika platser i en ordning)

hor, gadaal (olika positioner)

carrab, gacan (olika kroppsdelar)

socdaa, cararaa, boodaa, boodboodaa (olika sätt att förflytta sig/röra på sig)

### homonyms / homographs

somaliska: beer (= lever / trädgård)

dambeys (< dambe, < dambas)

aad (gå!, du, mycket)

moos (banan, dämna undan vatten)

Several homographs are due to pronunciation with heavy or light vowels

#### shaqal culus

xäl = lösning

düülaa attacks

dül (nostril)

#### shaqal fudud

xal = diska

duulaa flies

dul (surface)

#### noun

cunto (food)

maro (cloth)

#### verb

Sahra ma cunto kalluun

maro (passes by)

Homography due to careless spelling

qaaddo (sked)

qaado (ta!)

carrab (tongue)

Carab (Arabs)

### Inherited words .

afar, gacan, madax, il, dhiig, bood

Hindi: rooti

daanyeer

### loanwords

arabiska: moos, muus (< mawz), xal, fikir, subax, caqli, duluc

italienska: boorso, iskool

engelska: iskuul

### content words

skola, hoppar, sover, liten, kärlek

guri, subax, maalin, iskool, jecel, moos, wiil, qaadan, gadaal, maalmaha

### Funktion words

att, hon, jag

jiray, kasta, uu, oo, soo, sii, ka, la+ga, isaga, waxa, ayaa, baa

ordi doonaa

ordi karaa

ordi jiray

ordi waayey

ordi kari waayey

## 6.3 (2021)

cilmi-macn-eed-ka = semantik

root + root + ending + ending

### synonyms

wiil, inan, kuray, gaban

subax, aroor, waaberi

iskool/iskuul, dugsi

damcay, doonayay, rabay

### antonymer

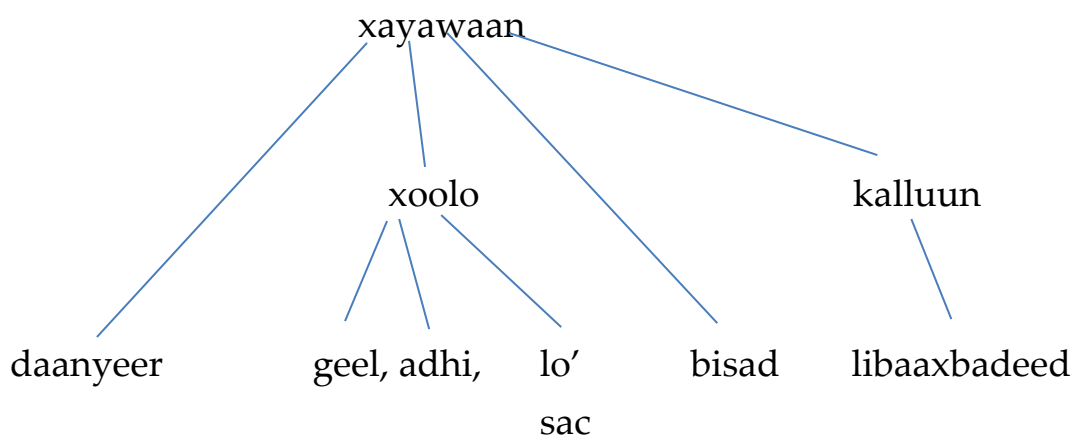
gadaal / daba - hor

subax - galab / fiid

maalin - habeen

wiil - gabadh

### hyponyms



### homonyms / homographs

wiil - pojke, pupill

moos - banan, däm!

ku - i/på (preposition), dig (pronomen)

Rather just **polysemy** (one word with many interrelated meanings)  
gal - pöl, damm, fodral, gå in

### **Polysemi -**

xumaadaa - blir ledsen, ruttnar

gubtay - bränner sig

qori - trä/pinne, gevär

### **inherited words**

wiil, jecel, wax, aad, u, kasta, daanyeer, mid, uu, ka, ah, isaga, oo

### **loanwords**

Arabiska: xal, subax, moos/muus, damcaa, caqli, fekeraa/fikiraa, Xasan

Engelska: iskuul (school)

Italienska: iskool (scuola), boorso

### **Content words**

Xasan, muus, wiil, subax, jecel

### **Funktion words** / grammatical words

waxa, uu, ahaa, (aad), u

# Unit 7

## Word Formation

## Tema 7 – Erayabuuridda

The study of the principles for how morphemes are put together to words is called word formation is usually divided into two parts:

- **inflection**: the study of the grammatical forms of words
- **word formation**: the study of how more complex words are created from simpler ones.

There are also two main types of word formation:

**Derivation**: when a suffix or prefix is added to an already existing base. In Somali mostly suffixes are used.

macallin	+	-ad	→	macallimad
bar	+	-e	→	bare
dukaan	+	-le	→	dukaanle
la-	+	taliye	→	lataliye

**Compounding**: when two roots are put together into one word. Often, there is also a suffix added, e.g.

ballan	+	qaad	→	ballanqaad (-ka)
libaax	+	bad	+ -eed	→ libaaxbadeed (-ka)
marti	+	qaad	+ -ay	→ martiqaaday

Exactly what is a compound and what is not a compound is not always easy to know in Somali, since compounds are often written separately, as two words. Just like in English there is quite a bit of variation between spelling as one word or as two words or with a hyphen, e.g.

Afsoomaali	af Soomaali	af-Soomaali
libaaxbadeed	libaax badeed	libaax-badeed
martiqaadaa	marti qaadaa	marti-qaadaa
xooladhaqato	xoolo dhaqato	xoola-dhaqato / xoolo-dhaqato
xoolamadax	xoolo madax	xoola-madax / xoolo-madax

There are a couple of tests that work quite well in order to decide what is a compound and what is not.

Test for nouns: *Where do we put the definite article?*

2 words	<b>bad weyn</b>	<b>badda weyn</b>	'the big sea'
compound	<b>badweyn</b>	<b>badweynta</b>	'the ocean'

Test for nouns: *Where do we put the plural ending?*

2 words	<b>bad weyn</b>	<b>bada weyn</b>	'big seas'
compound	<b>badweyn</b>	<b>badweyno</b>	'oceans'

Test for verbs: *Where do we put subject 'la', object pronouns and prepositions?*

If we have a noun + a verb, the small words (subject 'la', object pronouns and prepositions) go between the noun and the verb, e.g.

**Booliska Somaliland oo tababar ku qaatay dalka Ireland...**

If we have a noun root and a verb root that constitute a compound verb, then the small words go before the whole compound, e.g.

**Dabadeedna waxa uu nagu marti-qaadi doonaa gurigiisa...**

Therefore **martiqaadi** must be **one** word, more precisely a compound verb in the infinitive, since the object pronoun **na** and the preposition **ku** must immediately precede the verb in the predicate. You are not allowed to put a noun between a preposition and a verb. Therefore the root **marti** (which looks like a noun) must be part of a compound verb.

On the other hand, the expression **tababar qaatay** must be two words since the preposition **ku** goes between the two words.

## Derivation with suffixes

In Somali most derived words are formed using suffixes. Prefixes are much less common in Somali than in English.

### Formation of nouns

#### ROOT NOUNS

These nouns are not formed with any ending. The same root functions as both a noun and a verb in the imperative.

<b>qosol</b>	<i>laugh!</i> (verb, imperative)
<b>qosol</b>	<i>laughter</i> (noun, singular)



## VERBAL NOUNS

– correspond to English forms ending in **-ing**.

**-is/-id** if the imperative ends in a consonant

<b>qor</b>	<i>write!</i>	
<b>qoris</b> , -ta	<i>writing</i>	
<b>qorid</b> , -da	<i>writing</i>	and also: <b>qoraal</b> , -ka

**-n / -s** if the imperative ends in **-i**

<b>bixi</b>	<i>pay!</i>	
<b>bixin</b>	<i>paying, payment</i>	
<b>kari</b>	<i>cook!</i>	
<b>karin</b> , -ta	<i>cooking</i>	
<b>karis</b> , -ka	<i>cooking</i>	
<b>akhri</b>	<i>read!</i>	
<b>akhrin</b> , -ta	<i>reading</i>	
<b>akhris</b> , -ka	<i>reading</i>	
<b>samee</b>	<i>do, make</i>	
<b>sameyn</b> , -ta	<i>doing, making</i>	

**-asho** if the imperative ends in **-o**

<b>qaado</b>	<i>take!</i>	
<b>qaadasho</b>	<i>taking</i>	

Suffixes that are only used with certain verbs:

**-ad** may be added to many verbs show infinitive ends in **-o**

<b>guurso</b>	<i>get married!</i>	
<b>guursad</b>	<i>marriage</i>	

**-itaan**

<b>furaa</b>	<i>opens</i>	
<b>furitaan</b>	<i>opening (e.g. of an exhibition)</i>	
<b>baadhaa / baaraa</b>	<i>investigates, researches</i>	
<b>baadhitaan / baaritaan</b>	<i>investigation, research</i>	

**-niin**

<b>digaa</b>	<i>warns</i>	
<b>digniin</b>	<i>warning</i>	
<b>furaa</b>	<i>opens</i>	
<b>furniin</b>	<i>divorce</i>	

## AGENT NOUNS

Denote a person who carries out the action expressed by the verb.

**-e**

<b>baraa</b>	<i>teaches</i>
<b>bare</b>	<i>teacher</i>
<b>bixiyaa</b>	<i>pays</i>
<b>bixiye</b>	<i>payer</i>

but also certain instruments and tools

<b>furaa</b>	<i>opens</i>
<b>fure</b>	<i>key</i>

and some names

**Warsame**  
**Kuti Yare**

**-haye** contains the suffix **-e** and denotes a *person who has or takes care of something*.

<b>goolhaye</b>	goal keeper	
<b>afhaye</b>	spokesperson	also: <b>afhayeen</b>

**-le** denotes a person who has something or works with something

<b>dukaan</b>	<i>shop</i>	<b>dukaanle</b>	<i>shopkeeper</i>
<b>hiblib</b>	<i>meat</i>	<b>hiblible</b>	<i>butcher, meat monger</i>
<b>kalluun</b>	<i>fish</i>	<b>kalluunle</b>	<i>fish monger</i>
<b>tagsi</b>	<i>taxi</i>	<b>tagsiile</b>	<i>taxi driver</i>
<b>dambi</b>	<i>crime</i>	<b>dambiile</b>	<i>criminal</i>

but also a person who has a problem with something

<b>indho</b>	<i>eyes</i>	<b>indhoole</b>	<i>blind person</i>
<b>lugo</b>	<i>legs</i>	<b>lugoole</b>	<i>person without leg(s)</i>

**-ley** denotes a group of people that have something or work with something

**beeraley –da** *farmers*

but it is also used to form certain other nouns that denote something that contains or consists of something.

**buur** *mountain*  
**buuraley** *mountain area, mountain ridge*

**-aal** denotes a person who works with something

<b>tumaa</b>	<i>hammers, bangs</i>
<b>tumaal</b>	<i>blacksmith</i>

FEMININE persons

**-ad**

<b>boqor</b>	<i>king</i>	
<b>boqorad</b>	<i>queen</i>	
<b>saaxiib</b>	<i>male friend</i>	
<b>saaxiibad</b>	<i>female friend</i>	also: <b>saaxiib(-ta)</b>

**-to** when the corresponding maculine word ends in **-e**, e.g.

<b>horjooge</b>	<b>horjoogto</b>
-----------------	------------------

The same ending is used to denote a group of persons.

<b>ganacsade</b>	<b>ganacsato</b>	<i>businessmen</i>
<b>kalluumayste</b>	<b>kalluumaysato</b>	<i>fishermen</i>

**-so** when the corresponding maculine word ends in **-ye**, e.g.

<b>kariye</b>	<b>kariso</b>	<i>cook</i>
<b>kalkaaliye</b>	<b>kalkaaliso</b>	<i>nurse</i>

OTHER DERIVED NOUNS

**-aal** different kinds of concrete and abstract nouns

<b>qor, qoraa</b>	<b>qoraal</b>	<i>text</i>
<b>socod, socdaa</b>	<b>socdaal</b>	<i>travel, journey</i>

**-aan** abstract nouns, usually derived from adjectives and corresponding to English abstract nouns in *-ness*.

<b>cas</b>	<i>red</i>	<b>casaan</b>	<i>redness, red colour</i>
<b>oomaa</b>	<i>becomes thirsty</i>	verb	
<b>oomman</b>	<i>thirsty</i>	adjective/participle	
<b>oommaan</b>	<i>thirst</i>	noun	

**-la'-aan** formed with the adjective **la'** *lacking* + the above suffix

<b>shaqo</b>	<i>work</i>
<b>shaqola'aan</b>	<i>unemployment</i>

**-aad** various meanings

**hanjabaa** *threatens*

**hanjabaad** *threat*

**-darro** synonymous with **-la'aan**

**edeb** *good manners*

**edebdarro** *bad manners, lack of good manners*

**awood** *ability, strength*

**awooddarro** *inability, lack of strength*

**dhiig** *blood*

**dhiigdarro** *anemia*

**-i** abstract concepts

**firfircoon** *active*

**firfircooni** *activity*

**-mo (-me)** denotes the result of an action (derived from verb in **-maa**)

**xirmaa** *becomes united, connected*

**xirmo** *pack, bunch*

**dhisaa** *builds*

**dhismo / dhisme** *building, construction*

**dhugtaa** *looks, watches*

**dhugmo** *look, attention, intelligence*

**-(n)nimo / -tin-nimo** often corresponding to English nouns in *-ship*

**saaxiib** *friend*

**saaxiib(tin)nimo** *friendship*

**-to**

**qaad** *take*

**qaaddo** *spoon*

**-tooyo**

**Boqor** *king* **boqortooyo** *kingdom*

**gacal** *close, loved person* **gacaltooyo** *affection, love*

## Compound nouns

noun + adjective (root)

**badweyn, afweyn**

noun + adjective + -eed (-aad, -ood)

**libaaxbadeed**

noun + noun (head + modifier)

**afguri, birdanab**

noun + noun (modifier + head)

**beeraqoon, beeryaqaan**

noun + verb (modifier + head)

**adhijir, badmar**

noun + verb (subject + predicate)

**biyadhac**

root + root + root

**warxungee**

root + root + suffix

**codweyneeye**

## Formation of adjectives

**-an** is added to many verbs and some nouns

<b>guduud</b>	<i>red (brown) colour</i>	<b>guduudan</b>	<i>red / brun</i>
<b>cagaar</b>	<i>greenery, green grass</i>	<b>cagaaran</b>	<i>green</i>

När sådana adjektiv bildas av verb brukar de kallas PARTICIP:

<b>laabaa</b>	<i>folds</i>	<b>laaban</b>	<i>folded</i>
<b>bararaa</b>	<i>swells</i>	<b>bararan</b>	<i>swollen</i>
<b>engegaa</b>	<i>dries</i>	<b>engegan</b>	<i>dry, dried</i>

**-san** is added to many verbs and some nouns

<b>qurux</b>	<i>beauty</i>	<b>quruxsan</b>	<i>beautiful</i>
--------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------

When such adjectives are formed from verbs they are often called PARTICIPLES:

<b>kariyaa</b>	<i>cooks, boils</i>	<b>karsan</b>	<i>cooked, boiled</i>
<b>nadiifiyaa</b>	<i>cleans</i>	<b>nadiifsan</b>	<i>cleaned</i>
<b>sameeyaa</b>	<i>makes</i>	<b>sameysan</b>	<i>made</i>
<b>afeeyaa</b>	<i>sharpens</i>	<b>safeysan</b>	<i>sharpened</i>

**-eed** is added to certain nouns

<b>Soomaali</b>	<i>Somali (noun)</i>
<b>Soomaaliyeed</b>	<i>Somali (adjective)</i>

**-aad**

<b>boqor</b>	<i>king</i>
<b>boqoraad</b>	<i>royal</i>

**-oon**

<b>qurux</b>	<i>beauty</i>	<b>qurxoon</b>	<i>beautiful</i>
<b>nabad</b>	<i>peace, quietness</i>	<b>nabdoon</b>	<i>peaceful, secure</i>

**-e**

**kale**  
**hore**  
**hoose**  
**sare**  
**dhexe**

Many Swedish adjectives correspond to Somali multi-word expressions consisting of a noun followed by the reduced relative verb form **ah** *which is* or any of the adjectival words **leh** *with, which has*, **la'** *without, which lacks*, **daran** *without, which lacks* or **badan** *many*.

<b>buluug</b>	<i>blue colour</i>
<b>buluug ah</b>	<i>blue (lit. which is a blue thing)</i>
<b>hadh</b>	<i>shadow</i>
<b>hadh leh</b>	<i>shady (lit. which has shadow)</i>
<b>af</b>	<i>sharp edge</i>
<b>af leh</b>	<i>sharp</i>
<b>af la'</b>	<i>dull (knife)</i>
<b>qurux</b>	<i>beauty</i>
<b>qurux badan</b>	<i>beautiful</i>

## Formation of verbs

Many basic verbs and nouns consist of the same root.

verb	<b>beddel, beddel-aa</b>	<i>change!, changes</i>
subst.	<b>beddel, beddel-ka</b>	<i>change, the change</i>
verb	<b>farax, farx-aa, farax-daa</b>	<i>be happy!, is happy (m.), is happy (f.)</i>
subst.	<b>farax, farax-a</b>	<i>happiness, the happiness</i>

It is then difficult to say that the basic root would be a noun or a verb. It is common to say that such roots are verb roots and noun roots at the same time.

Many verbs are formed with other words as their base. Most commonly they are formed from a noun base, but sometimes also from an adjective base. Quite seldom are they formed from other kinds of words.

Sometimes there are more than one verb formed in different ways from the same noun or adjective base, e.g.

<b>calal</b>	<i>rag, piece of used cloth</i>	
<b>-i-:</b>	<b>calaliyaa</b>	<i>chews</i>
<b>-sad-:</b>	<b>calalsadaa</b>	<i>chews (for one's own benefit)</i>
<b>-ee-:</b>	<b>calaleeyaa</b>	<i>wears out (clothes)</i>
<b>-oob-:</b>	<b>calaloobaa</b>	<i>(clothes) get worn out</i>

## Derivation of transitive / causative verbs

In languages in general it is common to make a division between two kinds of verbs

- **TRANSITIVE** verbs that are accompanied by an object,
- **INTRANSITIVE** verbs that are **not** accompanied by any object.

The suffix **-i-** is added to an INTRANSITIVE verb (that doesn't take an object) in order to create a TRANSITIVE verb (that is accompanied by an object). At the same time the suffix **-i-** usually has a **CAUSATIVE** meaning, which means that the subject of the new verb is affecting the object so that the object carries out the action denoted by the original verb without **-i-**.

imperative	present tense
------------	---------------

<b>jab</b>	<b>jabaa</b>	<i>something breaks</i> (intransitive)
<b>jebi</b>	<b>jebiyaa</b>	<i>someone breaks something</i> (transitive), <i>someone makes something break</i>
<b>kar</b>	<b>karaa</b>	<i>something boils</i> (intransitive)
<b>kari</b>	<b>kariyaa</b>	<i>someone boils something</i> (transitive) , <i>someone makes something boil</i>
<b>toos</b>	<b>toosaa</b>	<i>someone wakes up</i> (intransitive)
<b>toosi</b>	<b>toosiyaa</b>	<i>someone wakes somebody up</i> (transitive) , <i>someone makes somebody wake up</i>
<b>duul</b>	<b>duulaa</b>	<i>something flies</i> (intransitive)
<b>duuli</b>	<b>duuliyaa</b>	<i>someone flies something</i> (transitive), <i>someone makes something fly</i>

If the stem ends in **-g, -q, -l** that consonant changes into **-j-**, e.g.

<b>joog</b>	<b>joogaa</b>	<i>something is standing</i> (intransitive)
<b>jooji</b>	<b>joojiyaa</b>	<i>someone stops something</i> (transitive), <i>someone makes something stand still</i>
<b>daaq</b>	<b>daaqaa</b>	<i>(animals) graze</i> (intransitive)
<b>daaji</b>	<b>daajiyaa</b>	<i>someone pastures animals</i> (transitive), <i>someone makes animals graze</i>
	(ka) <b>muuqdaa</b>	<i>something shows, is visible</i> (intransitive)
	<b>muujiyaa</b>	<i>someone shows something</i> (transitive), <i>someone makes something visible</i>
	<b>qallalaa</b>	<i>something dries</i> (intransitive)
	<b>qallajiyaa</b>	<i>someone dries something</i> (transitive)

## Derivation of causative verbs with **-siiyaa**

By adding **-siiyaa** to a simpler verb or to a noun, a causative verb is formed. It expresses that a person helps, encourages or causes another person to carry out the action, e.g.

<b>cun-aa</b> <i>eats</i>	<b>cun-siiyaa</b> <i>someone gives food to somebody, makes sb eat</i>
<b>dabaal</b> <i>swimming</i>	<b>dabaal-siiyaa</b> <i>someone makes/teaches somebody (to) swim</i>
<b>qaad-aa</b> <i>takes</i>	<b>qaad-siiyaa</b> <i>someone makes sb take or get or hold sth</i>



## Derivation of autobenefactive verbs

The suffixes **-t-** and **-st-** express a so called **AUTOBENEFACTIVE** action, i.e. an action that is carried out so that it brings some benefit to the person carrying out the action.

The suffix often also takes the forms **-d-**, **-sat-** or **-sad-**.

In the imperative these verbs end in **-o**, **-so** and in the infinitive in **-an**, **-san**.

<b>beer !</b>	<b>beeraa</b>	<i>plants, grows</i>
<b>beero!</b>	<b>beerta</b>	<i>plants, grows (for oneself)</i>
<b>fur!</b>	<b>furaa</b>	<i>opens</i>
<b>furo!</b>	<b>furtaa</b>	<i>opens (for oneself)</i>
<b>iibi!</b>	<b>iibiyaa</b>	<i>trades (usually sells, but sometimes buys)</i>
<b>iibso!</b>	<b>iibsad</b>	<i>trades for oneself (usually buys, sometimes sells)</i>
<b>qaad!</b>	<b>qaadaa</b>	<i>he takes</i>
	<b>qaaddaa</b>	<i>she takes</i>
<b>qaado!</b>	<b>qaataa</b>	<i>he takes (for himself)</i>
	<b>qaadataa</b>	<i>she takes (for herself)</i>

With a few verbs, the same suffix **-t-** or **-st-** expresses a reflexive actions, which means that the same person is both the subject and the object of the actions. Sometimes the actions is to the advantage of the person, but sometimes it is actually to the person's disadvantage, and sometimes there is neither a positive nor a negative effect.

<b>gub!</b>	<b>gubaa</b>	<i>someone burns something</i>
<b>gubo!</b>	<b>gubtaa</b>	<i>someone burns him/herself</i>

Again with a few verbs, the same suffix **-t-** or **-st-** produces a verb with intransitive meaning, which means that the object of the basic verb becomes the subject of the longer, derived verb, and it is as if the change that occurs to the object happens by itself, without anyone causing it.

<b>waal!</b>	<b>waalaa</b>	<i>someone makes somebody else crazy</i>
<b>waalo!</b>	<b>waashaa</b>	<i>he becomes crazy (obs: <b>l+t &gt; sh</b>)</i>
	<b>waalataa</b>	<i>she becomes crazy</i>

## Derivation of anticausative verbs

The suffix **-m-** gives verbs with an anticausative meaning, which means that the action is not caused by any person, but it occurs as if by itself.

In the feminine, the **-m-** changes to **-n-** and a vowel is inserted in order to avoid a group of three consonants.

<b>dhaawac-aa</b> <i>injures</i>	<b>dhaawac-m-aa</b> <i>he is/becomes injured</i>
	<b>dhaawac-an-taa</b> <i>she is/becomes injured</i>
<b>fur-aa</b> <i>opens</i>	<b>fur-m-aa</b> <i>it is opened, it opens</i>
	<b>fur-an-taa</b>

## Groups of verbs

Sometimes there are groups of three verbs: one intransitive, one transitive and one autobenefactive, e.g.

<b>buux!</b>	<b>buuxaa</b>	<i>something is full</i>
<b>buux-i!</b>	<b>buux-i-yaa</b>	<i>somebody fills something</i>
<b>buux-so!</b>	<b>buux-sad-aa</b>	<i>somebody fills something (for oneself)</i>

In other groups there is one intransitive, one transitive and one reflexive verb, e.g.

<b>joog!</b>	<b>joogaa</b>	<i>someone stands, dwells, is</i>
<b>joog-i!</b>	<b>joog-i-yaa</b>	<i>someone stops somebody</i>
<b>joog-so!</b>	<b>joog-sad-aa</b>	<i>someone stops (oneself), stands still</i>

## Derivation of verbs from adjectives and nouns

Adding the suffix **-ee-** to an adjective gives a new TRANSITIVE verb. The verb is followed by an object and it expresses that someone does something so that the object gains that quality.

<b>kulul</b> <i>warm</i>	<b>kululeeyaa</b> <i>someone warms something</i>
<b>fudud</b> <i>light, easy</i>	<b>fududeeyaa</b> <i>someone makes something easy, facilitates something</i>

Adding the suffix **-aad-** to an adjective gives a new INTRANSITIVE verb. The verb expresses that the subject gains that quality.

<b>kulul</b> <i>warm</i>	<b>kululaadaa</b> <i>becomes warm</i>
<b>xun</b> <i>bad</i>	<b>xumaadaa</b> <i>becomes bad</i>

Adding the suffix **-oob-** to a noun gives a new INTRANSITIVE verb. The verb expresses that the subject gains that quality.

<b>biyo</b> <i>water</i>	<b>biyoobaa</b> <i>something melts (to water)</i>
<b>baraf</b> <i>ice, snow</i>	<b>barafoobaa</b> <i>something freezes (to ice)</i>

Adding the suffix **-ood-** to a noun gives a new INTRANSITIVE verb. The verb expresses that the subject experiences that sensation.

<b>gaajo</b> <i>hunger</i>	<b>gaajoodaa</b> <i>är, blir hungrig</i>
<b>riyo</b> <i>dröm</i>	<b>riyoodaa</b> <i>drömmer, har en dröm</i>

## Compound verbs

A noun that was once the object of the verb has become part of the verb itself. The new verb may be intransitive, e.g.

**cagajiidaa** *drag one's feet*

or transitive, e.g.

**afduubaa** *kidnap somebody*

In some compound verbs the original subject has become part of the new verb, e.g.

**neefguraa** *flämtar*

**ruuxbaxaa** *dör*

## Derivation with prefixes

Somali has rather few prefixes. It is mostly the prepositionerna **u** *to*, **ku** *in*, **ka** *from*, **la** *with*, the reflexive pronoun **is** *oneself*, the negator **ma** *not* and the particles **kala** *apart*, **wada** *together*, **sii** *away*, **soo** *here* that frequently occur as prefixes.

<b>la</b>	<i>(together) with</i>	<b>taliye</b> <i>leader, commander</i>
		<b>lataliye</b> <i>advisor, mentor, councillor</i>
<b>is</b>	<i>oneself</i>	<b>dil</b> <i>killing</i>
		<b>isdil</b> <i>suicide</i>

It may sometimes be somewhat difficult to establish whether a morpheme functions as a prefix or not, since prefixes are quite often written separately from the following root morpheme, but there are two tests available:

Where do we hear a high tone?

Independent prepositions always have a high tone, but used as prefixes they don't.

Can any other word intervene?

Independent used particles, pronouns and negator may be separated from the following word by another particle or pronoun, but used as a prefix they may not.

## 7.1 General questions

1. Förklara vad som menas med termen "rot".
2. Förklara vad som menas med termen "prefix".
3. Förklara vad som menas med termen "sammansatt substantiv".
4. Förklara vad som menas med termen "ordbildning".
5. Förklara vad som menas med termen "avledning".
6. Förklara vad som menas med termen "sammansättning".
7. Översätt de ovan nämnda termerna till somaliska.
8. Hur kan man argumentera för att "libaaxbadeed" är ett sammansatt ord?

## 7.2 Analysera ord

1. Dela upp följande sammansättningar i de ingående morfemen? Vilka två rot-morfem ingår i sammansättningen? Finns även något avledningssuffix? Finns det kanske också något böjningssuffix?

Sammansatt ord	Rot 1	Rot 2	(avledn. suffix)	(böjnings suffix)
waxbarashada	wax	bar	asho	da
dabjoogta				
lafdhabarleyda				
sannaddugsiyeed				
dembidhaafaa				
madaxweynaha				
libaaxbadeedyo				

afmaalnimada				
xeerilaaliye				
dareensiiyaa				
naasnuujiyaa				
dameer-dibadeedka				
dayaxgacmeedka				
dhiigyaraan				
wargeys				

2. Dela upp följande avledda ord i de ingående morfemen.

Enkelt ord ordklass	Rot	Avlednings- suffix	Böjnings- suffix	Avlett ord ordklass
kow(da) (m.)	kow	aad		kowaad (s.)
gal(aa) (f.) gal(ka) (m.)	gal	i	yaa	geliyaa (f.)
				hore
				bixiyaa
				wanaagsan
				nafley
				horreeyaa
				fure
				furitaanka
				macallimadda
				carruureed

				tumaal
				dembiile
				buuxiyaa
				guuldarro
				qorista
				ciyaartoy

3. Dela upp följande avledda ord i de ingående morfemen.

Enkelt ord ordklass	Prefix	Rot	Avlednings suffix	Avlett ord ordklass
nool (s.)	ma	nool	e	manoole (m.)
				isbeddelka
				lahaye
				soojeedka
				kuxige
				layeele

Läs denna korta text ur *Saynis, Fasalka 5aad* (1996: 97).

### **Sidee ayaa aynu wax u maqalnaa?**

**Marka gariirka jabaqda soo dhexmartay hawada ay soo gaaraan dhegta, waxa hirarka jabaqda soo ururiya qaybta dhegta ee masafka u eg, ka dibna waxa ay sii raacaan marinka maqalka ilaa ay gaaraan durbaanka.**

**Hirarka jabaqdu waxa ay sidaan tamar. Sidaa darteed waxa ay gariiriyaan durbaanka. Gariirka ku dhashay durbaanka dhegta waxa uu sii raaca saddexda lafood ee dhegta dhexe ilaa uu gaaro hoor ku jira qaybta hore ee dheg gudeedka oo laga helo dareen wadayaalka jabaqda. Hoorku isna waxa uu gariirka u gudbiyaa timo yar-yar oo ay ku xiran yihiin faraqyada dareen wadayaalka jabaqda. Dareen wadaha ayaa isna dareenkii u gudbiya maskaxda. Halkaas ayaan ka helnaa jawaabtii oo aan ogaanaa in aan wax maqalnay iyo wixii la xiriiray.**

4. Vilka ord i texten är sammansättningar? Vilka två rot-morfem ingår i sammansättningen? Finns även något avledningssuffix?

Sammansatt ord	Rot 1	Rot 2	(avledn. suffix)	(böjnings suffix)

5. Vilka ord i texten är avledningar av andra enklare ord?

Enkelt ord ordklass	Rot	Avlednings suffix	Avlett ord ordklass

## 7.3 Analysera ord (mml)

Fyll de tomma fälten i tabellerna.

### Magacyo ka samaysan magac kale

Magac saleed	dibkabe	Magac cusub
dukaan	-le	dukaanle
indho	-le	indhoole
	-le	
	-le	
	-le	
arday	-ad	ardayad
	-ad	
	-ad	
buuro	-ley	buuraley



	-ley	
daabac	-aad	daabacaad
	-aad	
dhiig	-darro	dhiigdarro
	-darro	
boqor	-tooyo	boqortooyo
	-tooyo	
xir	-mo	xirmo
	-mo	
duq	-nimo	duqnimo
	-nimo	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

### Magacyo ka samaysan fal

<b>Fal saleed</b>	<b>dibkabe</b>	<b>Magac cusub</b>
qor	-is	qoris -ta
	-is	
fur	-itaan	furitaan -ka
	-itaan	
fur	-e	fure -ha
	-e	
qor	-aa	qoraa -ga

	-aa	
qor	-aal	qoraal -ka
	-aal	
adeeg	-to	adeegto -da
kalkaali	-to	kalkaaliso -da
qaad	-to	qaaddo -da
	-to	
dig	-niin	digniin -ta
	-niin	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

### Magacyo ka samaysan sifo

Sifo saleed	dibkabe	Magac cusub
cas	-aan	casaan -ka
	-aan	
nool	-e	noole -ha
	-e	
firfircoon	-i	firfircooni -da
	-i	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Magacyo lammaane ah

Eray saleed 1	Eray saleed 2	dibkabe	Magac cusub
madax	weyn	-e	madaxweyne -ha
afar	gees	---	afargees -ka

## Sifooyin ka samaysan magac

Magac saleed	dibkabe	Sifo cusub
Soomaali	-eed	Soomaaliyeed
	-eed	
lo'	-aad	lo'aad
	-aad	
dugsi	-oon	dugsoon
	-oon	
cagaar	-an	cagaaran
	-an	
qurux	-san	quruxsan
	-san	

--	--	--

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

### Sifooyin ka samaysan fal

<b>Fal saleed</b>	<b>dibkabe</b>	<b>Sifo cusub</b>
samee	-san	samaysan
	-san	
daabac	-an	daabacan
	-an	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

### Falal ka samaysan magac

<b>Magac saleed</b>	<b>dibkabe</b>	<b>Fal cusub</b>
biyo	-oob	biyoobaa
	-oob	
riyo	-ood	riyoodaa
	-ood	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Falal ka samaysan sifo

Sifo saleed	dibkabe	Fal cusub
kulul	-ee	kululeeyaa
	-ee	
kulul	-aad	kululaadaa
	-aad	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Falal ka samaysan fal kale

Fal saleed	dibkabe	Fal cusub
kar, karaa	-i	kari, kariyaa
joog, joogaa	-i	jooji, joojiyaa
	-i	
	-i	
iib	-sad	iibsadaa
	-sad	
fur	-m	furmaa
	-m	
cun	-sii	cunsiiyaa
	-sii	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

### Falal lammaane ah

Eray saleed 1	Fal saleed	Fal cusub
marti	qaadaa	martiqaadaa

### Erayo horkabe leh

Eray saleed	horkabe	Eray cusub
noole	ma-	manoole
	ma-	
taliye	la-	lataliye
	la-	
dil	is-	isdil
	is-	

Använd gärna också helt andra prefix...

## 7.4 Sammansättningar och avledningar

1. Hitta alla **sammansatta** ord i följande text. Dela upp orden i morfem.
2. Hitta alla **avledda** ord i följande text. Dela upp orden i morfem.



*Från: Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 5aad, Muqdisho 2003*

2. Hitta helt andra exempel än de som finns i texten ovan.

2.1. Hitta 5 substantiv som är bildade genom avledning från andra, enklare ord. Ange det avledda ordet, det enklare ordet och avledningsändelsen, t.ex.

magac: **dhisme** < fal: **dhis**(-aa) + dibkabe: **-me**

2.2. Hitta 5 verb som är bildade genom avledning från andra, enklare ord. Ange det avledda ordet, det enklare ordet och avledningsändelsen.

2.3. Hitta 5 adjektiv som är bildade genom avledning från andra, enklare ord. Ange det avledda ordet, det enklare ordet och avledningsändelsen.



# Tema 7. Ordbildning

## 7.1 Allmänna frågor

---

### 1. Förklara vad som menas med termen "rot".

En rot är ett morfem som har en inneboende "lexikal" betydelse till skillnad från morfem som uttrycker en funktion. En rot fungerar som bas för ett eller flera ord, medan andra morfem läggs till roten för att på något sätt uttrycka vilken funktion ordet fyller.

### 2. Förklara vad som menas med termen "prefix".

Ett prefix är ett morfem som läggs till före en rot. Ett prefix har normalt en grammatisk eller en ordbildande funktion.

### 3. Förklara vad som menas med termen "suffix".

Ett suffix är ett morfem som läggs till efter en rot. Ett suffix, precis som ett prefix, har normalt en grammatisk eller en ordbildande funktion.

### 4. Förklara vad som menas med termen "ordbildning"?

Ordbildning innebär att man bildar nya mera komplexa ord genom att lägga till olika morfem till ett redan existerande, enklare ord.

### 5. Förklara vad som menas med termen "avledning"?

Avledning avser ordbildning som sker med hjälp av suffix och/eller prefix.

### 6. Förklara vad som menas med termen "sammansättning"?

Med sammansättning menas ord som är bildade genom att man har satt ihop två eller flera rot-morfem till ett nytt ord.

### 7. Översätt de ovan nämnda termerna till somaliska.

rot	sal
suffix	dibkabe (dibgale)
prefix	horkabe (horgale)

sammansatt substantiv	magac lammaanan
ordbildning	erayabuurid
avledning	farac / farcamid
sammansättning	lammaane (iskudhaf)

## 8. Hur kan man argumentera för att "libaaxbadeed" är ett sammansatt ord?

Man kan lägga till den bestämda artikeln. Den bestämda artikeln placeras i slutet av hela det ord som utgör ett substantiv.

**libaaxbadeed****ka** = artikelns placering visar att detta är ett enda ord, ett substantiv, eftersom man lägger bestämd artikel till substantiv.

Om det hade varit två ord (ett substantiv + ett adjektiv) så skulle den bestämda formen bli **libaaxa badeed** eftersom man alltid lägger bestämd artikel till substantiv, aldrig till adjektiv.

Man kan också göra samma test med hjälp av pluraländelsen, t.ex.

qurubweereed**yo** = detta är ett enda ord, ett substantiv,

qurub**yo** weereed = detta är två ord, ett substantiv + ett adjektiv.

I det här fallet lär båda varianterna förekomma. Olika personer har olika preferenser.

## 7.2 Analysera ord

1. Dela upp följande sammansättningar i de ingående morfemen? Vilka två rot-morfem ingår i sammansättningen? Finns även något avledningssuffix? Finns det kanske också något böjningssuffix?

Sammanfattat ord	Rot 1	Rot 2	(avledn. suffix)	(böjnings suffix)
waxbarashada	wax	bar	asho	da
dabjoogta	dab	joog		ta
lafdhabarleyda	laf	dhabar	ley	da
sannaddugsiyeed	sannad	dugsi	eed	
dembidhaafaa	dembi	dhaaf		aa

madaxweynaha	madax	weyn	e	ha
libaaxbadeedyo	libaax	bad	eed	yo
afmaalmimada	af	maal	nimo	da
xeerilaaliye	xeer	ilaal	i + e	
dareensiiyaa	dareen	sii		aa
naasnuujiyaa	naas	nuug	i	aa
dameer-dibadeedka	dameer	dibad	eed	ka
dayaxgacmeedka	dayax	gacm	eed	ka
dhiigyaraan	dhiig	yar	aan	
wargeys	war	gee	s	

2. Dela upp följande avledda ord i de ingående morfemen.

f. = fal, m. = magac, s. = sifo

Enkelt ord ordklass	Rot	Avlednings- suffix	Böjnings- suffix	Avlett ord ordklass
kow(da) (m.)	kow	aad		kowaad (s.)
gal(aa) (f.) gal(ka) (m.)	gal	i	aa	geliyaa (f.)
hor(ta) (m.)	hor	e		hore (s.)
bax(aa) (f.)	bax	i	aa	bixiyaa (f.)
wanaag(ga) (m.)	wanaag	san		wanaagsan (f.)
naf(ta) (m.)	naf	ley		nafley (m.)
hor(ta) (m.)	hor	ee	aa	horreeyaa (f.)
fur(aa) (f.)	fur	e		fure (m.)
fur(aa) (f.)	fur	itaan	ka	furitaanka (m.)
macallin (m.)	macallim	ad	da	macallimadda (m.)
caarruur (m.)	carruur	eed		carruureed (s.)
tum(aa) (f.)	tum	aal		tumaal (m.)
dembi (m.)	dembi	le		dembiile (m.)
buux(a) (m.) buux(aa) (f.)	buux	i	aa	buuxiyaa (f.)
guul(sha) (m.) guul(aa) (f.)	guul	darro		guuldarro (m.)
qor(aa) (f.)	qor	is	ta	qorista (m.)

ciyaar(ta) (m.) ciyaar(aa) (f.)	ciyaar	toy		ciyaartoy (m.)
------------------------------------	--------	-----	--	----------------

3. Dela upp följande avledda ord i de ingående morfemen.

Enkelt ord (ordklass)	Prefix	Rot	Avlednings suffix	Avlett ord (ordklass)
nool (s.)	ma	nool	e	manoole (m.)
beddel(aa) (f.)	is	beddel		isbeddelka (m.)
hay(aa) (f.)	la	hay	e	lahaye (m.)
jeed(aa) (f.)	soo	jeed		soojeedka (m.)
xig(aa) (f.)	ku	xig	e	kuxige (m.)
yeel(aa) (f.) yeel(ka) (m.)	la	yeel	e	layeele (m.)

4. Vilka ord i texten är sammansättningar? Vilka två rot-morfem ingår i sammansättningen? Finns även något avledningssuffix?

Sammanfatt ord	Rot 1	Rot 2	(avledn. suffix)	(böjnings suffix)
dhexmartay	dhex	mar		tay
dheg-gudeedka	dheg	gud	eed	ka
dareen-wadayaalka	dareen	wad	e	yaal-ka

5. Vilka ord i texten är avledningar av andra enklare ord?

Enkelt ord (ordklass)	Rot	Avlednings suffix	Avlett ord (ordklass)
urur(ka) (m.) urur(aa) (f.)	urur	i	ururiyaa (f.)
gariir(ka) (m.) gariir(aa) (f.)	gariir	i	gariiriyaa (f.)
dhex(da) (m.)	dhex	e	dhexe (s.)
hor(ta) (m.)	hor	e	hore (s.)
gudb(aa) (f.)	gudb	i	gudbiyaa (f.)

## 7.3 Analysera ord

1. Välj en sekreterare i varje grupp.
2. Sekreteraren delar sin skärm så att alla ser dokumentet.
3. Diskutera tabellerna. Fyll de tomma fälten. Sekreteraren antecknar för hela gruppen.

### Magacyo ka samaysan magac kale

Magac saleed	dibkabe	Magac cusub
dukaan	-le	dukaanle
indho	-le	indhoole
Dhago	-le	Dhagoole
Cago	-le	Cagoole
Been	-le	Beenale
arday	-ad	ardayad
Fariid	-ad	Fariidad
Macalim	-ad	Macalimad
buuro	-ley	buuraley
Beero	-ley	Beeraleey

daabac	-aad	daabacaad
Koow	-aad	Koowaad
dhiig	-darro	dhiigdarro
Nafaqo	-darro	Nafaqodarro
boqor	-tooyo	boqortooyo
Madax	-tooyo	Madaxtooyo
xir	-mo	xirmo
Dad	-mo	Dadnimo
duq	-nimo	duqnimo
Dhalinyaro	-nimo	Dhalinyaranimo
Hodan	-nimo	Hodantinimo
Gaari	-nimo	Gaarinimo

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Magacyo ka samaysan fal

<b>Fal saleed</b>	<b>dibkabe</b>	<b>Magac cusub</b>
-------------------	----------------	--------------------

qor	-is	qoris -ta
Tol	-is	Tolis-ta
fur	-itaan	furitaan -ka
Xir	-itaan	Xiritaan-ka
fur	-e	fure -ha
Qor	-e	Qora-ha
qor	-aa	qoraa -ga
Jil	-aa	Jilaa-ga
qor	-aal	qoraal -ka
Soco	-aal	Socdaal-ka
adeeg	-to	adeegto -da
kalkaali	-to	kalkaaliso -da
qaad	-to	qaaddo -da
	-to	
dig	-niin	digniin -ta
Fanan	-niin	Fanaaniin-ta


Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Magacyo ka samaysan sifo

<b>Sifo saleed</b>	<b>dibkabe</b>	<b>Magac cusub</b>
cas	-aan	casaan -ka
Cad	-aan	Caddaan-ka
nool	-e	noole -ha
Maqan	-e	Maqane-ha
firfircoon	-i	firfircooni -da
	-i	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Magacyo lammaane ah



Eray saleed 1	Eray saleed 2	dibkabe	Magac cusub
madax	weyn	-e	madaxweyne -ha
afar	gees	---	afargees -ka

## Sifooyin ka samaysan magac

Magac saleed	dibkabe	Sifo cusub
Soomaali	-eed	Soomaaliyeed
	-eed	
lo'	-aad	lo'aad
	-aad	

dugsi	-oon	dugsoon
	-oon	
cagaar	-an	cagaaran
	-an	
qurux	-san	quruxsan
	-san	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Sifooyin ka samaysan fal

<b>Fal saleed</b>	<b>dibkabe</b>	<b>Sifo cusub</b>
samee	-san	samaysan
	-san	
daabac	-an	daabacan
	-an	


Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Falal ka samaysan magac

<b>Magac saleed</b>	<b>dibkabe</b>	<b>Fal cusub</b>
biyo	-oob	biyoobaa
	-oob	
riyo	-ood	riyoodaa
	-ood	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Falal ka samaysan sifo

<b>Sifo saleed</b>	<b>dibkabe</b>	<b>Fal cusub</b>
--------------------	----------------	------------------

kulul	-ee	kululeeyaa
	-ee	
kulul	-aad	kululaadaa
	-aad	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Falal ka samaysan fal kale

<b>Fal saleed</b>	<b>dibkabe</b>	<b>Fal cusub</b>
kar, karaa	-i	kari, kariyaa
joog, joogaa	-i	jooji, joojiyaa
	-i	
	-i	
iib	-sad	iibsadaa
	-sad	

fur	-m	furmaa
	-m	
cun	-sii	cunsiiyaa
	-sii	

Använd gärna också helt andra suffix...

## Falal lammaane ah

Eray saleed 1	Fal saleed	Fal cusub
marti	qaadaa	martiqaadaa

## Erayo horkabe leh

Eray saleed	horkabe	Eray cusub
-------------	---------	------------

noole	ma-	manoole
	ma-	
taliye	la-	lataliye
	la-	
dil	is-	isdil
	is-	

## 7.4

### Sammansatta ord

Sammansatta ord ihåller två **rötter**, uttalas tillsammans som ett ord  
 Bestämd artikel kommer efter hela det sammansatta substantivet.  
 Prepositioner kommer direkt före hela det sammansatta verbet.

dhul-beereed-ka  
 nolol-maalmeed-ka  
 beer-falasha-da  
 u iib-geeyaan  
 caaro-nafaqeeya-ha

### Avledda ord

**Rot** + **ordbildningsändelse** + grammatisk böjningsändelse

dhul-beer-**eed**

beer-a-ley-da

muhiim-san

Soomaali-y-eed

nool-aad-aa-n

gal-ley-da

dalag-yo-da

cadd-aan-ka

iib-sad-aan

lacag-eed

nafaq-ee-y-e

caafi-m-aad-ka

## 2.1 substantiv som är bildade genom avledning

caafi-m-aad, duul-i-m-aad

qor-e < verbet qor-aa

toddob-aad < substantivet toddob-o

toddob-aad-le < substantivet toddob-aad

ganac-sad-e < verbet ganac-sad-aa

### Sammanställning:

fal-kaab, orod-yahan

### Sammanställning & Avledning:

hor-gal-e

dhall-in-yar-o

## 2.2. verb som är bildade genom avledning

guur-sad-aa < guur-aa

guur-i-y-aa < guur-aa

weyn-ee-y-aa < weyn

weyn-aad-aa < weyn

## 2.3. Adjektiv som är bildade genom avledning.

qor-an,

farax-san, qurux-san,

qurx-oon,

hoos-e, dhex-e, sar-e,

Soomaali-y-eed,

shan-aad, lo'-aad, kiimik-aad



# Unit 8

Lexical Aids

## Unit 8. Lexical aids

With respect to a language's vocabulary, there are many different kinds of handbooks and other aids. For Somali printed handbooks are still dominating. On the one hand, there are **MONOLINGUAL** dictionaries that explain the meaning of words in the same language, but there are also **BILINGUAL** dictionaries that translate words into other languages.

For Somali there are presently **six** different monolingual dictionaries. Two of them are available as pdf files in the database Arcadia in Rome:

Yaasiin C. Keenadiid (ed.). 1976. *Qaamuuska Af-Soomaaliga*. Muqdisho: Madbacadda Qaranka. Wasaaradda Hiddaha iyo Tacliinta Sare, Akademiya Dhaqanka, Guddiga Af-Soomaaliga. 498 pp.

<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/2021>

Saalax X. Carab (ed.). 2004. *Qaamuus. Ereykoobe*. Jabbuuti: Machadka Affafka ee Xarunta Cilmibbaadhista. 576 pp.

Khaalid Cali-Guul-Warsame. 2008. *Qaamuuska Af Soomaaliga. Koobaha Af Soomaaliga*. Nairobi & Dragør. 541 pp.

Annarita Puglielli & Cabdalla C. Mansuur (eds.). 2012. *Qaamuuska Af-Soomaaliga*. Roma: RomaTrE-Press. 947 pp. [2:a upplagan, 2017, Leicester, UK: Looh Press].

<https://romatrepress.uniroma3.it/wp-content/uploads/2019/05/qaam-cama.pdf>

Aadan X. Aadan (ed.). 2013. *Qaamuus Afsoomaali*. Jabuuti: Soo Maal. 1575 pp.

Cabdalla Cumar Mansuur & Annarita Puglielli (eds.). 2022. *Qaamuus dugsiyeedka af Soomaaliga (iyo naxwaha af Soomaaliga oo kooban)*. Roma: Edizioni Efestò. 552 pp.

With respect to larger biligual dictionaries, there are many more. Some of the latest are:

Badil & Hassan. 2010. *Lexin. Svensk-somaliskt lexikon*. Uppsala: Institutet för språk och folkminnen.

Zorc & Osman. 1993. *Somali-English dictionary with English index*. 3rd edition. Kensington: Dunwoody Press. 612 s.

Hashi. 1998. *Fiqi's Somali-English dictionary*. Jigjiga: Fiqi Educational Materials Publishers and Distributers.

Agostini & Puglielli & Siyaad (red.). 1985. *Dizionario somalo-italiano*. Roma: Gangemi.

Cabdulqani G. Faarax. 1999. *Dictionnaire somali-français. Qaamuus Af Soomaali-Faransiis*. Paris: L'Harmattan.

Barre (Shiine). 2015. *Qaamuus Soomaali-Carabi: قاموس عربي - صومالي*. Stockholm: Scansom Publishers.

Alejnikov. 2012. *Eraykoobka Soomaali-Ruush Ah*. Moskva.  
<http://book.iimes.su/wp-content/uploads/main/som2011a.pdf>

Besides the traditional **PRINTED** dictionaries, there are also some bilingual **ELECTRONIC** dictionaries:

Lexin: Svensk-somaliskt lexikon. Uppsala: Institutet för språk och folkminnen.  
[http://lexin.nada.kth.se/lexin/#searchinfo=both,swe\\_som](http://lexin.nada.kth.se/lexin/#searchinfo=both,swe_som),

Lexin på nett: Bokmål-somali-bokmål. Oslo: Utdanningsdirektoratet.  
<http://lexin.udir.no/?mode=main-page&sub-mode=search&dict=nbo-som-maxi&ui-lang=nbo>

Lexin på nett: Nynorsk-somali-nynorsk. Oslo: Utdanningsdirektoratet.  
<http://lexin.udir.no/?mode=main-page&sub-mode=search&dict=nny-som-maxi&ui-lang=nbo>

Suomi-somali-sanakirja. Helsinki: Kotimaisten kielten keskus.  
<http://kaino.kotus.fi/somali/>

To a large extent, dictionaries are probably used intuitively. You find the word that you are interested in and read the information about that word.

Some abbreviations and symbols may be difficult to interpret, but unfortunately it seems that people quite seldom read the preface and the instructions for how to use the dictionary and how to interpret all the information that it contains. That's a pity, because the introduction to a dictionary usually gives quite a lot of useful information about the dictionary and how it is organised.

## Different kinds of dictionaries

---

Besides the already mentioned divisions into **MONOLINGUAL** och **BILINGUAL** dictionaries as well as **PRINTED** and **ELECTRONIC** dictionaries, there are many other common distinctions that are made in order to assign a dictionary to a certain category. Below a few of the most common and most interesting types will be presented.

Besides ordinary dictionaries intended for adults, many languages also have special **CHILDREN'S DICTIONARIES** or **SCHOOL DICTIONARIES**. Such dictionaries are intended for younger users and they usually have a more restricted size. Children's dictionaries usually contain many illustrations, while school dictionaries contain the kind of words that frequently occur in the different school subjects. School dictionaries usually also have a spelling and inflection of the words.



**chess** A game for two people played with chessmen. शतरंज का खेल.



**chips** Small pieces of potato which are fried. आलू के तले हुए छोटे टुकड़े.



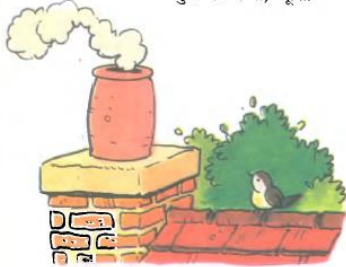
**chocolate** A brown sweet made from cocoa. कोका से बनी मिठाई.



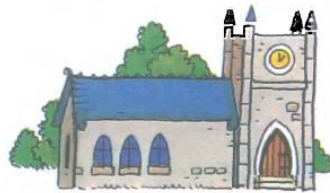
**choir** A group of people who sing together. गायकों की भजन मण्डली का समूह.



**chicken** (चिकन) A young hen. मुर्गी का बच्चा; चूजा.



**chimney** A pipe to let the smoke out of a house. It is on the roof. (चिमनी)



**church** A building where people go to sing hymns and pray. गिरजाघर; ईसाईयाँ का पूजा स्थल.



**claw** A sharp hard nail on the foot of an animal or bird. पक्षी एवं पशु का पंजा.



**cliff** A high steep rock usually near the sea. समुद्र किनारे की सीधी चट्टान.

**clock** (क्लॉक) A machine with hands and a face to tell you the time. घड़ी.



Sample from Arora's Children Picture Dictionary, English-Hindi.

### krydda 1

▷ något som sätter smak  
Salt och peppar är vanliga kryddor.  
kryddan, flera kryddor,  
alla kryddorna

### krydda 2

▷ smaksätta  
Han kryddade biffen med peppar.  
kryddar, kryddade,  
har kryddat

### krympa

▷ minska, dra ihop sig  
Tröjan har krympt i tvätten.  
krymper, krympte,  
har krympt

### kryp

▷ smådjur, insekt, pyre  
krypet, flera kryp, alla krypen

### krypa [krypa]

### kryssa [kryss'a]

▷ sätta kryss  
Han kryssade för det första alternativet.  
▷ segla mot vinden  
De kryssade hemåt.  
kryssar, kryssade, har kryssat

### kråka

▷ en fågel  
kråkan, flera kråkor,  
alla kråkorna

### [krål] stavas crawl

### [kråla] stavas crawl

### krångel

▷ besvär, bråk, trassel  
Det är en massa krångel med bilen.  
krånglet

### krångla

▷ bråka, trassla, konstra  
Sluta krångla nu!

### kräm

▷ en efterrätt  
▷ salva, pasta  
krämen, flera krämer,  
alla krämerna

### kränga

▷ luta, vingla, svänga,  
slänga  
Segelbåten krängde i den hårda vinden.  
kränger, krängde, har krängt

### kräsen

▷ kinkig, nogräknad  
Den kräsna katten äter inte rå fisk.  
kräset, kräsna, kräsnare än andra, kräsnast av alla

### kräva

▷ fordra, begära  
Jag kommer att kräva en förklaring.  
kräver, krävde, har krävt

Sample from a school dictionary: Allén. 2006. Libers lilla ordlista.

Dictionaries may also be divided into **DESCRIPTIVE** and **NORMATIVE** ones. The descriptive dictionaries try, as far as possible, to simply describe all words of the language and the ways in which they **really** are used. The normative dictionaries, on the other hand, have an evaluative perspective on language. Their aim is to promote a **GOOD** and **CORRECT** use. Some words are therefore not included, since they are considered to be too colloquial or even offensive. Recommendations about spelling and grammar are not necessarily based on the actual use in society, but instead on linguistic, political, religious, etc. assumptions about what should be considered to be good and correct use.

Many dictionaries are quite normative, especially the monolingual ones, and above all the school dictionaries. On the other hand, most bilingual dictionaries are not very precise about their normative or descriptive perspective, but in the end most dictionaries have a normative effect, since the users have a considerable amount of respect for what the dictionaries say.

Besides the **GENERAL** dictionaries, there are also many different **SPECIALISED** dictionaries. In general dictionaries all commonly used words are included. In specialised dictionaries, on the other hand, limits have been defined for the scope of the dictionary, so that only a certain kind of words are included, or information of a certain type.

Some common types of specialised dictionaries, containing only a certain kind of information, are the following categories.

A **THESAURUS** (dictionary of synonyms) does usually not give any explanations of the meaning of words or any information about grammar, such as inflection. The information that is given about a certain word is limited to a list of other words with more or less the same meaning. There are several electronic thesauruses for English

<https://www.thesaurus.com/>

<https://dictionary.cambridge.org/thesaurus/>

<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english-thesaurus>

<https://www.merriam-webster.com/thesaurus>

For Swedish, there is e.g.

<https://www.synonymer.se/>

Synonyms and antonyms of **wonderful** in English

# wonderful

f X

*Thesaurus > extremely pleasant, enjoyable, or likable > wonderful*

These are words and phrases related to **wonderful**. Click on any word or phrase to go to its thesaurus page. Or, [go to the definition of wonderful](#).

## EXTREMELY PLEASANT, ENJOYABLE, OR LIKABLE

- *Have a wonderful trip!*

### Synonyms and examples

**excellent***The food was excellent, thank you.***terrific***That's such terrific news, congratulations!***fabulous***I love her dress, it's fabulous.***great**

informal

*The film was great.***fantastic**

informal

*What a fantastic party.***awesome**

informal

*"We won the championship!" "Oh, awesome!"***brilliant**

UK informal

*Oh, brilliant - we'll meet up when you're in town.***tremendous***The screenplay is tremendous and should win an Academy Award.***amazing**

informal

*The concert was just amazing. I can't even describe how good it was.***sublime***The sunrise this morning was simply sublime.***splendid**

formal

*I thought the play was splendid.***magnificent***The views in the Alps are magnificent.***cool**

informal

*His new bike is so cool.***wicked**

informal

*He's got a wicked gaming system.***sick**

slang

*He did some totally sick tricks on the halfpipe.***super**

old-fashioned informal

*"How was your holiday?" "It was super, thanks."***grand**

old-fashioned informal

*What a grand time we had!***be the bee's knees**

old-fashioned informal

*Have you tried this new ice cream? It's the bee's knees!***capital**

UK old-fashioned

*You've reserved a car for the tour? Capital!*

### Antonym and example

**terrible***That's terrible news, I'm sorry.**A sample from the Cambridge English Thesaurus*



**DICTIONARIES OF ABBREVIATIONS** give information about how to spell out most common abbreviations. For Swedish there is, e.g., *Norstedts förkortningsordbok* by Ralf Svenblad (2003).

RD	=	se Referensdämpning
RD-AT/U	=	SSO för AT/CB, D1-familjen
RD-RK (KK)/RD-RKG	=	SSO för AT/CB, D1-familjen
RG	=	Ringsignal (generator)
RKS	=	se Riksknutstation i tvb bilaga
RL	=	se Radiolänk i tvb bilaga
RNO	=	se Riktnummerområde i tvb bilaga
RO	=	se Riksområde i tvb bilaga
RR-KK	=	SSO för LB-signalerings D1-familjen
RR-LB	=	SSO för LB-signalerings D1-familjen
RS	=	se Riksstation i tvb bilaga
RXS	=	se Riksändstation i tvb bilaga

*A sample from the abbreviation word list Försvarets telenät (1986).*

**ETYMOLOGICAL DICTIONARIES** give information about the historical background and origin of words, how they were formed, for how long they have existed in the language, and whether they are borrowings from another language. For Swedish there is an electronic edition of [\*Svensk etymologisk ordbok\*](#) by Elof Hellquist (1922).

Kåldolma, förr vanligast (såsom stundom ännu) *dolma*: C. Warg 1765, Björnståhl 1777: *Emin Effendi åt Dolma med handen*; av turk. *dolmá*, fyllning (även i namnet på den turkiske sultanens palats *Dolma-bagtje*). Ordet är obekant för andra språk o. synes ha kommit till Sverige direkt från Turkiet. Se SAOB.

*A sample from Hellquist (1922), Svensk etymologisk ordbok.*

For Somali there is still no etymological dictionary or wordlist, but an entry in a Somali etymological dictionary might give this kind of information (but of course in Somali):

**Baabuur** 'car, vehicle', possibly through Amharic ባቡር [babur] 'train', from Arabic *baabuur* 'steamship, locomotive, steam engine' which in turn was borrowed from French *vapeur* [vapör] 'steam'.

In Zorc & Osman's (1993) *Somali–English dictionary*, borrowings are quite systematically indicated with the language of origin, e.g.

**rootl** (-ga) n2a-m-mass bread, roll Cf: kimis  
~ kibis {Indian}  
**rootle** (/ha) n7-m baker; bread-seller Cf:  
khabbas  
**rooxo** (/da) n6-f-col climbing plant sp., with  
edible fruit  
**rorog** (rorogay) v1=tntr stand (up) Syn: istaag  
**rowle** (/ha) n7-m vagabond, hanger-on  
**rubac** (-a) num-m, n2a-m quarter, fourth  
Ex: Waa saddexdii iyo rubac. 'It's 3:15.'; Waa  
saddexdii o rubac la'. 'It's 2:45.'; Alt: ruboc ~ rubuc;  
Syn: rubi, waax {Arb}

*Sample from Zorc & Osman (1993), Somali–English dictionary.*

**ORTHOGRAPHIC** dictionaries mostly just contain a list of words, almost completely without and other type of information. The purpose is only to list the "correct" or generally established spelling of the words in the language. One such dictionary for Swedish is [Svenska akademins ordlista](#) which is available both as a printed and as an electronic dictionary. Also all the [previous editions](#) are available. Also one of the main purposes of school dictionaries is to serve as orthographic dictionaries, but at the same time the also give a certain amount of other types of information.

<b>containerfartyg</b> s.	<b>coulomb</b> [kolám'b] s. -en; pl. = • enhet för elektrisk laddning; <i>en c.</i>	<b>crawl</b> [krå'l] s. -en
<b>containerhamn</b> s.		<b>crawla</b> [krå'la] v. -de • simma crawl
<b>containerisera</b> [kåntejn-] v. -de • mest i perf. part.; börja använda con- tainerar vid transport osv.	<b>counteritenor</b> [ka <sup>o</sup> -, -o'r] s. • kontratenor	<b>crawlare</b> [krå'l-] s. -n; pl. =, best. pl. <i>crawlarna</i>
<b>containerisering</b> s.	<b>country</b> [kan'tri] s. -n • popmusik utvecklad ur amerikansk folkmusik	<b>crawlsim</b> s.
<b>containerterminal</b> s.	<b>countryartist</b> [kan'tri-] s.	<b>crazy</b> [krej'si] adj. oböjl. • tokig, befängd, förryckt
<b>containertrafik</b> s.	<b>countryband</b> s.	<b>crazyfars</b> s.
<b>contortaltall</b> [-tår't-] s. • snabbväxande tallart	<b>countrymusik</b> s. • stilriktning inom amerikansk populär- musik	<b>cred</b> [kred'] el. <b>redd</b> s. oböjl. • (vard.) trovärdighet; erkännande
<b>controller</b> [kåntrål'- el. -trå <sup>o</sup> l-] s. -n <i>controllrar</i> – Använd hellre <i>styr- ekonom.</i>	<b>countryplatta</b> s.	<b>credit</b> variantform till <sup>3</sup> <i>kredit</i>
<b>controllerbefattning</b> s.	<b>countrystjärna</b> s.	<b>credo</b> s. -t -n • fast tros- övertygelse
<b>cookie</b> [kok'i] s. -n; pl. -s • (data.) datamängd som används för att dela in- formation mellan server och klient ex. för identi-	<b>countrylång</b> s.	<b>crème de la crème</b> [krä'm dö la Krä'm] s. -n [-en] • högsta societeten, gräddan
	<b>countrylångare</b> s.	<b>crème fraiche</b> [krämfrä'f] s. -n [-en] • matlagningsgrädde
	<b>coupe</b> [kop'] s. -n [-en] -r [-er] • glassefterrätt serverad i skål på fot	
	<b>coupeglas</b> s.	

*A sample from the orthographic dictionary Svenska akademiens ordlista (2006).*

**FREQUENCY DICTIONARIES** contain information about how common a certain word is in the language. There are also lists with the most frequent words in a certain language. This kind of dictionary is nowadays quite rare in print. Instead it is common to have frequency lists connected to and based on electronic language corpora. Such frequency lists exist for Somali at the following web addresses:

Korp, March 2018, based on 5 million tokens:

<http://demo.spraakdata.gu.se/martin/somali2018.txt>

Korp, June 2019, based on 19 million tokens:

<http://demo.spraakdata.gu.se/martin/somali-190528.txt>

Somali WaC, February 2017, based on 79 million tokens:

[https://corpora.fi.muni.cz/habit/run.cgi/wordlist\\_form?corpname=sowac16](https://corpora.fi.muni.cz/habit/run.cgi/wordlist_form?corpname=sowac16)

Click on **Make word list**.

An Crúbadán, based on 24 million words:

<http://crubadan.org/files/so.zip>

*Exempels of frequency lists: the 20 most common Somali words.*

*Numbers indicate occurrences per one million tokens.*

Korp 2019:	Somali WaC:	An Crúbadán:
oo 26311	oo 26964	oo 39036
ka 20678	ka 22890	ka 29663
ku 17613	ay 18609	ku 24743
iyo 16176	ku 18300	iyo 24550
ay 15616	iyo 15799	ay 20215
u 13735	ee 15326	ee 19765
ee 13461	ah 13445	u 19109
ah 12613	u 13182	ah 18866
soo 10145	in 13132	in 15787
la 10115	ayaa 12468	uu 14155
uu 10061	uu 12037	soo 13682
in 9855	soo 10061	la 13672
waxa 6551	la 9119	ayaa 10995
ayaa 5644	lagu 5035	aan 7263
waa 4702	ugu 4622	waa 7160
aan 4601	waxa 4519	lagu 6641
kale 4104	kale 3851	ugu 5722
lagu 4089	aan 3684	aad 5422
mid 3952	waxaa 3487	waxa 5301
ugu 3900	mid 3476	loo 5065

A few common types of specialised dictionaries that only contain words of a certain kind are:

**NAME DICTIONARIES** usually give information about the origin of different names, their meaning and use. These dictionaries usually only contain personal names or geographical names. For Somali there are a few different dictionaries of personal names:

Mohammed Sh. Hassan. 2001. *Qaamuuska magacyada Soomaaliyeed: A dictionary of Somali names*. Stockholm: Scansom Publishers. 171 pp.

Jamila [Jamiilo] A. Hashi. 2006. *Xulashada magacyada carruurta: Baby names*. Toronto: Bd Printers. 102 pp.

C. C. Faarax 'Barwaaqo'. 2008. *Magac bilaash uma baxo: Ujeeddooyinka magacyada iyo naanaysaha Soomaaliyeed*. Calgary: Hal-Aqoon Publishers. 205 pp.

**Keenadiid<sup>1</sup>** : Wiilka dhasha tiyoo tolkii ama aabbi-hiiba diiddan yahay cadaadis ama quudhsi ayaa awgood loo bixiyaa magacan. Dulucdu waa kii diiday ama diiddana in keeno lagu xidho loona hoggaamiyo halkii lala doonayey ee sharaf-jabku ugu jirey.

*A sample from Barwaaqo (2008).*

**DIALECT DICTIONARIES** contain words that don't occur in the standard language or have a different meaning in dialects than in the standard language.

*English Dialect Dictionary Online*, originally published 1898-1905 by Joseph Wright, has a sophisticated interface that offers access to the rich contents of the most comprehensive English dialect dictionary ever published. It covers the main English-speaking countries worldwide from 1700 to 1903. <https://eddonline4-proj.uibk.ac.at/edd/>

**SLANG DICTIONARIES** contain words that are not considered part of the general standard language, but are mostly used in everyday situations by parts of the population, e.g., by young people.

*The Online Slang Dictionary*  
<http://onlineslangdictionary.com/>

*A Dictionary of English Slang & Colloquialisms*  
<http://www.peevish.co.uk/slang/>

**FACKORDBÖCKER** eller **TERMINOLOGISKA ORDBÖCKER** (**TERMORDBÖCKER**) innehåller ord som inte tillhör det allmänna ordförråd som används av hela befolkningen. Ordens användning är i stället i huvudsak begränsad till personer som arbetar inom olika yrkesområden eller vetenskaper eller elever och studenter som studerar dessa ämnen.

När det gäller somaliskan finns en hel rad kortare ordlistor och en större samling av desamma. Många av de äldre ordlistorna finns tillgängliga som pdf-filer.

[\*Barbaarinta Jirka Qaamuuska Ereybixinta\*](#). Muqdisho 1984.

[\*Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Juqraafi\*](#). Muqdisho 1987.

[\*Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Kimistari\*](#). Muqdisho 1987.

[\*Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Fisikis\*](#). Muqdisho 1987.

[\*Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Xisaab\*](#). Muqdisho 1987.

[\*Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Bayoolaji\*](#). Muqdisho 1987.

Siyaad. [\*Eraybixinta cilmi afeedka Soomaaliga\*](#). Muqdisho.

Nilsson. [\*Svensk-somalisk och somalisk-svensk ordlista över grammatisk terminologi\*](#). Göteborgs universitet 2015.

Cabdalla C. Mansuur (red.). 2014. *Diiwaanka Ereybixinta Af-Soomaaliga*. Roma. 687 s. [\*Qaybta 1aad\*](#), [\*Qaybta 2aad\*](#), [\*Qaybta 3aad\*](#).

Anwar M. Diiriye. 2011. *Medical Dictionary English- Somali and Somali-English*. 270 s.

Alisaid A. Hirsi & Ali A. Nuh. 2017. *Tubraac. Buugga Erey Bixinta Aqoonta Maaddada Xisaabta. English Somali*. Diyaarintii 2aad. 201 s.



Maxamed Xaashi. 2017. *Eraybixinta Caafimaadka Af Iswiidhish - Af Soomaali, Af Soomaali - Af Iswiidhish*. 213 s.

Suldaan N.X. Aadan. 2008. *Qaamuuska Ganacsiga*. Muqdisho: Nayrus Publishers. 155 s.

[Add Skolterminologi SO-NO-EN and others...]

[Add HAAN Publications: Companion...]

[Add illustration from one of the dictionaries]

Further English online dictionaries can be found at  
<https://guides.library.cornell.edu/onlinedictionaries>

## The structure of dictionaries

---

Most dictionaries are constructed according to rather generally acknowledged principles so that the text about each entry contains a certain amount of information according to a specific model that is applied throughout the whole dictionary. The most common constituent parts that are found in the text for each entry are:

**THE ENTRY HEADWORD** is the word that will be explained in the entry. The headword is given in the word's basic form. What is regarded as the basic form may differ between languages and even between dictionaries of the same language. Most Swedish dictionaries list verbs in the infinitive form, but e.g. Lexin lists verbs in their present tense form. Somali dictionaries usually list verbs in their imperative form, but some dictionaries list them in the progressive present tense ([Philibert 1976](#)) or as verbal nouns ([Keenadiid 1976](#)).

At the beginning of the entry there are often different kinds of **LABELS OR MARKERS**, very often as abbreviations. Most dictionaries indicate which word class the word belongs to. In Somali dictionaries it is also common to indicate which gender a noun belongs to. Sometimes other types of markers also occur, e.g. what stylistic value the word has (e.g. old-

fashioned, every-day, regional, dialectal, derogative or professional /scientific terminology).

For some headwords no information is given. Instead, there is a **HÄNVISNING**, meaning that the information can be found under another headword in the dictionary. In order not to repeat the same information in two or more places in a dictionary, the reader has to find the information in another place. This is often the case when there exist different spelling variants of the same word. The information is then (hopefully) given under the more frequent spelling variant, and there are references to that most common variant under the other spelling variants, e.g. **kambuyuutar** → **kombiyuutar**, which means that the information about this word can be found under the headword **kombiyuutar**.

For many languages it is important that dictionaries give information about **PRONUNCIATION** and **STRESS**. That is the case in English dictionaries. In Swedish dictionaries that need is smaller, but some words have partially unpredictable pronunciation and stress. In Somali, both pronunciation and stress is almost completely predictable. It is mainly the exact nuance of the vowels that cannot be derived from the spelling. Therefore a couple of dictionaries indicate words that are pronounced with so called heavy vowels (culus). In Keenadiid (1976) a small circle (°) is used, e.g. **durduro°**, and in Puglielli & Mansuur (2012) a small ‘tail’ is used under the first vowel of the word, e.g. **duul<sup>2</sup>**. Compare the two meanings duulid and duul in the following illustrations.

Keenadiid (1976)

**Duulid** (-da) — 1. Hawada dhexdeeda marid sida haadka iyo dayuuradaha; haadid; lalid; heehaabid. 2. (°) Col badani, inuu soo dagaallamo oo cid wax soo yeelo, u bixid; xarbi aadid.

Puglielli & Mansuur (2012)

**duul<sup>2</sup>** *f.mgl* (-uulay, -uushay) 1. Diyaarad, shimbir iwm hawada dhexdeeda marid. 2. Diyaarad iwm ku safrid.  
**duul<sup>2</sup>** *f.mgl* (-uulay, -uushay) Dad badan in ay dagaal qaadaan u bixid.

There is no modern Somali dictionary that indicates the stress (high tone).



With respect to information about the **GRAMMATICAL CHARACTERISTICS** of the words, most of all their inflectional forms and their syntactic construction patterns (which may be expressed in the form of examples or codes for syntactic constituents). It is practically just *Qaamuuska af Soomaaliga* (2012) by Puglielli and Mansuur that contains that kind of information. Among other things, that dictionary gives precise information about the plural forms of nouns and the inflection of verbs. There is also some information about what preposition to use with different verbs. In the example below, we can see that the verb **goo** is inflected **gooyay**, **gooyasay**, and that there are 11 different meanings of that verb. Meaning number 1, 2, and 3 are used without a preposition, whereas meaning number 4, 5, 6, and 7 occur with the preposition **ka**, number 8 and 9 occur with **ku**, and number 10 with **la** and finally number 11 with **u**. Furthermore, we can see that the noun **gommod** in its meaning number 2, which is a feminine noun (m.dh = magac dheddig) has two possible plural forms: **gommodo** and **gondo**.

oo lagu dagaallamo. *ld* golxad.  
**golyid** *m.f.dh eeg* goli.  
**gommod**<sup>1</sup> *m.l* Cudur raafafka ariga ku dhaca;  
 raafdillaac. *ld* golrod.  
**gommod**<sup>2</sup> *m.dh (-do/gondo, m.l)* Cagta geela;  
 cagaf.  
**gommod**<sup>3</sup> *f.mg1 (-day, -dday)* Cudur  
 gommodka ka qaadiid  
**gommodid** *m.f.dh eeg* gommod<sup>3</sup>.  
**gomosh** *m.l ld* gomoshaa.  
**gomoshaa** *m.l* Geedgaab caleemo balballaaran  
 leh iyo miro macaanoo la cuno. *ld* gomosh.  
**go'naan** *m.f.dh eeg* go'an. *ld* go'naansho.  
**go'naansho** *m.lldh ld* go'naan.  
**gondaddeg** *f.mg1 (-gay, -gtay)* U g.: arrin si  
 fiican uga baarandegid.  
**gondaddegid** *m.f.dh eeg* gondaddeg.  
**gondagal**<sup>1</sup> *m.l* Wax hoosta laga galo, si loo  
 dugsado ama dhibaato loogaga gaashaansho.

**goo** *f.g/mg2 (-ooyay, -oysay)* 1. (*f.g*) Wax jarid.  
 2. (*f.g*) Xaajo go'aan ka gaarid. 3. (*f.g*)  
 Qaraabo saaxiib iwm xiriir u jarid. 4. (*f.mg*)  
 Ka g.: tiro mid kale ka jarid (xisaab).  
 5. (*f.mg*) Ka g.: ilmo nuugmo ka joojin.  
 6. (*f.mg*) Ka g.: wax, wax kale ka leexin.  
 7. (*f.mg*) Ka g.: cid dambi ay gashay kajeebid.  
 8. (*f.mg*) Ku g.: meel wax ku xannibid.  
 9. (*f.mg*) Ku g.: hadal iwm xad gaar ah  
 kujoojin. 10. (*f.mg*) La g.: wax ka baxsasho.  
 11. (*f.mg*) U g.: cida ballan kaga bixid.  
**goob**<sup>1</sup> *m.l* 1. Si wadajir ah oo wax loo qabto  
 (beer). 2. Meesha badarka lagu ururiyo  
 marka beerta laga soo jaro.  
**goob**<sup>2</sup> *m.dh (-bo, m.l)* 1. Meel bannaan oo  
 lagu soo bandhigo ciyaaraha. 2. Wax qeyb  
 qeyb u yaalo middood. 3. Meesha ay herintu  
 degto marka ay oroobka tahay. 4. (*riw.*)  
 Meesha lagu sameeyo masraxi-yadda.

*Sample from Puglielli & Mansuur (2012).*

With respect to the entry's **MEANING** or **SEMANTICS** there are different ways in which that can be described. In monolingual dictionaries, the most common way is to give a definition or an explanation, to give one or more

synonyms, or to express the same meaning through a different phrase. In the following example there is first, for meaning 1, an explanation or definition, and then, for meaning 2, a synonym.

**gaari**<sup>1</sup> *m.l* (-iyo, *m.dh*) 1. (*gawaari, m.dh*)  
Gaadiid dhuleed matoor leh oo dadka iyo  
xamuulka lagu qaado. 2. Gaarigacan. ..  
*Sample from Puglielli & Mansuur (2012).*

In monolingual dictionaries it is also quite common to have illustrations. All the monolingual Somali dictionaries, except Puglielli & Mansur (2012) contain quite a few illustrations.

In bilingual dictionaries, on the other hand, the most common strategy is to give **EQUIVALENTS** in the other language. Only when the author cannot find a suitable equivalent, explanations are given instead, e.g.

**oval** [ov'a:l] LYSSNA adj.  
(oval, ovalt, ovala)  
avlångt rund, äggformad  
**wax leh muuqaalka ukunta** (wareegsan)

*Sample from Lexin (2010).*

For both monolingual and bilingual dictionaries it is rather uncommon to give detailed factual information, but sometimes it is necessary, e.g.

**friggebod** [²fr'ig:ebo:d] LYSSNA subst.  
(friggebod, friggeboden, friggebodar)  
litet hus som får byggas utan byggnadslov på tomt (mindre än 10  
kvadratmeter)  
**guri yar** ((guri yar oo dadka loo oggolyahay in ay dhistaan iyaga oo aan  
haysan fasax dhismeed (waana in ka yar 10 mitir oo labajibbaaran))

*Sample from Lexin (2010).*

In slightly larger dictionaries **EXAMPLES** are often offered in order to show how the entry head word may be used in a context. Such examples are usually chosen so that they show the syntactic characteristics of the head

word, e.g. what preposition is used with a certain verb, but they are also chosen so that they help clarify the meaning of the word.

**goo** -yey / goysay: (v) separate into parts; cut (*kat*); **u goo** -yey / goysay: (v) break off. *Ex: xiriirkii buu u gooyey; he broke off the relationship* --**kala goo** -yey / say: (v) separate or secede

*Sample from Hashi (1998) Fiqi's Somali-English Dictionary.*

Besides individual head words, slightly larger dictionaries often contain MWUs (multi word expressions) or **COLLOCATIONS**, which are combinations of words that are well established in the language and convey a specific meaning, e.g.

**gole** -ha: (n) 1. an enclosed space for meetings or social gatherings; hall (*hool*); chamber (*jeeym·ber*); 2. council (*kawn·sel*); cabinet (*kaaba·net*) —**goleha ammaanka** -amniga; (n) security council. —**goleha shacbiga**: (n) people's congress —**goleha wasiirrada**: (n) cabinet of ministers

*Sample from Hashi (1998) Fiqi's Somali-English Dictionary.*

Some dictionaries also list **SYNONYMS** of the entry head word, e.g.

**baabusiir** (-ka) *n2-m* hemorrhoids See: baawasiir {Arb}  
**baabuur**<sup>1</sup> (-ka Pl: baabuur (ta)) *n5-m, n2-m* car, automobile, truck Syn: fatuurad, gaari ~ gaadhi {Arb}  
**baabuur**<sup>2</sup> (-ka) *n2-m* tin cooking stove, steamer Syn: birjiko, girgire

*Sample from Zorc, Osman & Luling (1991) Somali-English Dictionary.*

Quite few dictionaries offer **ANTONYMS** or word with a meaning that is the opposite of the entry head word.

A few dictionaries also offer **ETYMOLOGICAL (HISTORICAL) INFORMATION**, such as {Arb} in the above example, which means that the word is a borrowing from Arabic.

## 8. Exercises

### 8.1 General questions

---

1. How many monolingual dictionaries are there for Somali?
- 2a. How many monolingual Somali dictionaries are there on the web as pdf files?
- 2b. What are the titles of those dictionaries?
- 2c. When were they published?
- 2d. Who are the authors?
- 3a. Which one is the largest Somali-Engelish dictionary?
- 3b. Who are the authors?
- 3c. When was it published?
4. Which one of the monolingual dictionaries is most similar to a school dictionary?
- 5a. What is a descriptive dictionary?
- 5b. What is a normative dictionary?
- 5c. Which of the two Somali dictionaries available as pdf files is the more descriptive one? Why?
- 5d. Which of the two Somali dictionaries available as pdf files is the more normative one? Why?
6. For Somali there is still no thesaurus (dictionary of synonyms), but one of the two dictionaries available as pdf files gives quite a few synonyms. Which one?

7. For Somali there still is no etymological dictionary, but one of the bilingual dictionaries marks loanwords quite systematically. Which one?
8. For Somali there is no frequency dictionary. What do we have instead?
9. Look closely at the sample below from Keenadiid's (1976) dictionary.

**Aabi** (-ga) — Arrin aan jid ahayn oo cid lagula kaco; gardarro; maag; daandaansi.

**Aabo** (-ha) — Tixgelis; danayn; aabayeel.

**Aad** — 1. (°) Dhab; si daran. 2. Adigu.

**-aad** — Tiraab lagu dabakaro tirada oo muujiya jagada tiradaasi ku abbaaran tahay (saddex-*aad* (3d.); shan-*aad* (5d.); sagaal-*aad* (9d.).

**Aadaan** (-ka) — Ereyo yar oo lagu dheeraysto oo dadka tukashada loogu yeero (ama « addin »).

**Aaladeyn** (-ta) — Aalad u yeelid; qalabayn; hubayn; qurxin.

**-aale** — Erey ulajeeddadiisu u dhowdahay « kasta » « walba » « alla » (sida « had iyo goor-*aale* », « wax alla ama *allaale* »).

**Aalkol**\*(-ka) — Biyabbiyood aan midab lahayn, oo ur sillan, oo daarmi og, oo baabbi'i og, oo siyaalo badan loo soo saaro, waxna loogu qabsado, (ama « aalkolo »).

**Aalo** (-da) — Qaalmaha yaryar oo lo'da.

9a. What does the little ring mean?

9b. What does the little star mean? Look it up in the dictionary's list of symbols and abbreviations.

10. Look closely at the sample below from Puglielli & Mansuur's (2012) dictionary. Find the dictionary's list of abbreviations and symbols.

**sufur**<sup>1</sup> *m.l* 1. Tiro xisaabeed marka ay keligeed tahay aan micno lahayn, laakiin marka ay midigta ka raacdo tiro kale ku dhufata toban; Eber. 2. Maar. 3. (-*rro*, *m.dh*) Koob macdan ka samaysan.

**sufur**<sup>2</sup> *m.dh* *ld* **suful** (1).

**sufuul** *m.dh* *ld* **suful**.

**sug** *f.g1* (-gay, -gtay) Wax imaatinkooda dhawrid.

**sug**<sup>1</sup> *m.l* Yaraan; guridambays; cirannuug.

**sug**<sup>2</sup> *f.g1* (-gay, -gtay) Wax xaqiiqdooda helid.

**sugaal** *m.l* Sugidda.

**sugan** *f.mg4* (-gnaa, -gnayd) Aan ku xidhnayn, kana xor ah dhammaan astaamaha ku xeeran.

aayar u tumasho. 3. Digir duban qob ka qaadasho. *ld* **shukulo**.

**sulbi** *f.g2* (-iyay, -isay) Hawl si dhaqso leh u deddejin.

**sulbin** *m.f.dh* *eeg* sulbi. *ld* **sulbis**.

**sulbis** *m.l* *ld* **sulbin**.

**suldaan** *m.l* (-*nno*, *m.dh*) Nin dhaxaltooyo ahaan dawlad ama qolo madax ugu ah, oo aan la dooran; boqor.

**suldaannimo** *m.dh* Suldaan ahaansho.

**suldanad** *m.dh* (*siyaa*) Meel uu xukumo, ama xukumi jirey suldaan. Waxaa aad looga isticmaalaa dhulka Islaamka. *ld* **saldanad**.

**sulfatar** *m.l* (-ro, *m.dh*) (*jool*) Dhul fulkaano oo aaney ka soo baxayn laarfa dhalaashan

10a. What do the following abbreviations mean? *m.l*, *f.mg4*, *f.g2*, *m.dh*, *siyaa*., *ld*, *jool*.

- 10b. What does the symbol **u** mean in the word **sug**?
- 10c. What does **(-nno)** mean after the head word **suldaan**?
- 11a. Which one is the only monolingual dictionary that systematically gives grammatical information about all nouns and verbs?
- 11b. What grammatical information is given about nouns?
- 11c. What grammatical information is given about verbs?
- 12. What does it mean that a dictionary contains collocations?
- 13. What is the purpose of a school dictionary?
- 14. What is the purpose of an orthographical dictionary?
- 15. What is the purpose of a thesaurus?
- 16. What is the purpose of an etymological dictionary?
- 17. What is the most common word in Somali?



## 8.2 Find information in dictionaries

---

**Find the following information.**

**Compare all the dictionaries that you have access to.**

How many / What meanings are given for the word **af**?

What is the spelling of the word **aynu** / **aynnu**?

What synonyms are given for the word **bisad**?

What is the spelling of the word **degaan** / **deegaan**?

What is the spelling of the word **deggan** / **deggen**?

What plural form is given for the word **dhagax**?

What meanings are given for the word **dhalo**?

What information is given about the pronunciation of the word **dul**?

What gender is indicated for the word **guddi**?

What is the spelling of the word **kayaga** / **kaayaga**?

What form serves as the head word for the verb **keenaa**?

What collocations are listed with the word **kubbad**?

What gender is indicated for the word **maalin**?

What plural form is given for the word **nooc**?

What plural form is given for the word **sac**?

What word class is indicated for the word **weyn**?



Vilken infinitivform anges för **baxaa**?

What meanings are given for the word **beer**?

## 8.3 Work with dictionaries

---

Find the requested information in the following three dictionaries:

Puglielli & Mansuur. 2012. *Qaamuuska af Soomaaliga*. Roma.

<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/bitstream/2307/720/1/QAAMUUSKA%20AF-SOOMAALIGA%5b1%5d.pdf>

Keenadiid. 1976. *Qaamuuska af-Soomaaliga*. Muqdisho.

<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/bitstream/2307/2021/1/Dizionario%20Yaasiin%20C.%20Keenadiid.pdf>

Aleynikof. 2012. *Eraykoobka soomaali-ruush ah*. Mosko.

<http://book.iimes.su/wp-content/uploads/main/som2011a.pdf>

Also check other dictionaries that you might have access to.

What spelling is recommended for:

**aqri**, or something else?

**biya-dhac**, or something else?

**danbe**, or something else?

**diyaarad**, or something else?

**taqtar**, or something else?

**taxaddir**, or something else?

**waydiin**, or something else?

What definite article do the dictionaries recommend for the words

**arrin**

**guddi**

**roodhi**

**shimbir**

What indefinite and what definite plural form do the dictionaries recommend for the nouns

**aabbe**

**abti**

**dhagax**

**nooc**

**tuug**

**wax**

What plural form do the dictionaries recommend for the adjectives

**dheer**

**wanaagsan**

What feminine verb form (*Waa ay...*) do the dictionaries recommend for the verbs

**akhri**

**bax**

What infinitive form (*Wuu ... doonaa*) do the dictionaries recommend for the verbs

**akhri**

**arag**

**bax**

What synonyms do the dictionaries suggest for the words

**albaab**

**ugax**

**nacas**

What different meanings do the dictionaries list for the words

**gacan**

**il**

**dheg**

Give a few examples of words which are marked as typical for a certain subject or scientific domain.

## 8. Suggested solutions

### 8.1

---

1. There are today **six** monolingual Somali dictionaries, but two of them are very similar, since both are edited by Mansuur & Puglielli (2012, 2022).

2a. There are **two** monolingual Somali dictionaries (1976, 2012) available on the internet as pdf files. The 2022 dictionary is also shared on request, but not publicly available to download.

2b. Both are called *Qaamuuska af-Soomaaliga*.

2c. 1976 and 2012

2d. Yaasiin C. Keenadiid (1976); Annarita Puglielli & Cabdalla C. Mansuur (2012).

3a. Somali–English dictionary with English index.

3b. R. David Zorc & Madina M.Osman.

3c. The 3rd and latest edition was published in 1993.

4. *Qaamuuska af-Soomaaliga* (1976).

5a. A descriptive dictionary describes the language as a whole as it is actually used. Words and expressions that are in use must be included. They cannot be excluded due to correctness considerations or because they might be offensive.

5b. The purpose of a normative dictionary is to guide the user towards the use of a neutral vocabulary suitable for a cultivated style with correct spelling and inflection.

5c. The 2012 dictionary is more descriptive than the rest, mostly because it often gives alternative spellings of the same word.

5d. The 1976 dictionary is the most normative, mostly because it only contains one spelling of each word.

6. The 2012 dictionary gives quite a few synonyms to the head word.

7. Zorc & Osman's (1993) *Somali–English dictionary with English index*.

8. On the internet there are three different Somali corpora that offer frequency lists of the words in those corpora.

9a. The small ring means that in this sense the word is pronounced with heavy vowels.

9b. The small star means that in 1976 the word was still very new in Somali, and the dictionary therefore considers it a foreign word, still not a generally accepted loanword.

10a. *m.l* = *magac lab*, *f.mg4* = *fal magudbe*, *isrogrogga 4aad*, *f.g2* = *fal gudbe*, *isrogrogga 2aad*, *m.dh* = *magac dheddig*, *siyaa.* = *siyaasad*, *ld* = *la-mid*, *jool.* = *jooloji*

10b. The symbol under the first vowel of a word means that the word is pronounced with heavy vowels. This symbol corresponds to the small ring in Keenadiid's (1976) dictionary.

10c. This type of information in parentheses indicates the plural form of nouns. One or two letters from the end of the head word are also included in the parentheses. **(-nno)** after the head word **suldaan** indicates that the plural form should be **suldaanno**.

11a. The only monolingual Somali dictionary with systematic grammatical information about nouns and verbs is Puglielli & Mansuur (2012).

11b. For nouns the gender and the plural form is indicated..

11c. For verbs the imperative form is used as head word of the entry. Then it is indicated whether the verb is transitive (f.g = *fal gudbe*) or intransitive

(f.mg = fal magudbe) as well as the conjugation to which it belongs. (Notice that all **adjectives** are marked as **f.mg4**, i.e. fal magudbe, isrogrogga 4aad.) Finally, the forms in the masculine and the feminine 3rd person singular, past tense are given.

12. It means that the dictionary also contains combinations of two or more words that together constitute an expression with a specific meaning.

13. The purpose of a school dictionary is to give younger children a simpler dictionary that focuses on spelling, important grammatical forms and a very accessible explanation of the meaning of words. It is also restricted to a smaller amount of more common words.

14. The purpose of an orthographic dictionary is to offer information about correct spelling. It therefore contains just a list of words, almost completely without explanations. Difficult inflectional forms are often included. That should be enough for writers who just feel insecure about the spelling.

15. The purpose of a thesaurus is to gather words with similar meanings. The synonyms make up groups of words in the dictionary. People who want to avoid repeating the same words too often may find a lot of inspiration in a thesaurus when pondering about a good word that as precisely as possible would express some thought.

16. The purpose of an etymological dictionary is to give the historical background to and development of words, both how some words were formed and how they developed over the years and from what languages other words were borrowed. An etymological dictionary is highly interesting for everyone who wants to know more about the historical background and older stages of a language.

17. The most common Somali word is **oo**. It is the most common word in all three available frequency lists.

## 8.2

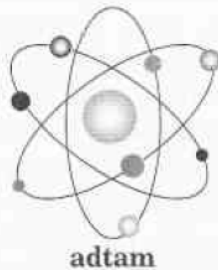
### af

1976:

**Af<sup>1</sup> (-ka)** — 1. Xubinta nafleydu cunnada ka cunto oo bushimaha iyo carrabka iyo ilkuhu ku yaallin. 2. Ereyada iyo ulajeeddooyinkooda; hadal dhan oo tol isku garto oo ku wada hadlo, oo wax ku qabsado. 3. Dhinaca birtu wax ka gooyso.

2004:

**af<sup>1</sup> -ka:** (m) xubinta nafleydu cunnada ku cunto oo bushimaha iyo carrabka iyo ilkuhu ku yaallin.



**af<sup>2</sup> -ka:** (m) erayyada iyo ulajeeddooyinkooda; hadal dhan oo dad isku afgarto oo ku wada hadlo oo wax ku qabsado una gaar ah; luqad; hadal.

**af<sup>3</sup> -ka:** (m) dhinacca birtu wax ka goyso.

**af<sup>4</sup> -ka:** (m) <<tog, dooxo, iwm.>> halka ay ka bilaabmaan, ka unkamaan.

**af<sup>5</sup> -ka:** (m) <<ceel, il, iwm.>> halka ay biyuhu ka soo baxaan, ka yimaaddaan; ilsha.

**af<sup>6</sup> -ka:** (m) wax kastoo caarad leh, halka ugu horraysa ee wax mudda uguna fiiqan; caarad.

2008:

**Af -ka:** Xubinta laga hadlo waxna lagu cuno, ama meel daloosha ee afka.

**Af-ka:** Meesha daloosha ee afka wax lagu cuno ama lagu hadlo.

**Af-ka:** Dalool, meel daloosha oo ka duwan inta kale ee korka sida nabar.

**Af-ka:** Wixi leh caarad dhuuban ama xanaf wax gooyso ee afaysan.

2012:

**af<sup>1</sup> m.l (afaf, m.l)** 1. Xubinta nafleydu ay wax ku cunto oo bushimaha, carrabka iyo ilkuhu ay ku yaalliin. 2. Dhinaca ay middidu wax goyso. 3. Waddo, tog, xarig iwm dacalka ay ka bilowdaan. 4. Wax guda leh meesha wax looga shubi ama gelin karo. 5. A. leh: sida fiican ee birta la adeegsadaa wax u goyso.

**af<sup>2</sup> m.l (afaf, m.l)** 1. (*nax.*) Hadal ay bulsho u adeegsato sidii ay isku wargaarsiin lahayd, luqad. 2. A. guud: af ka dhexeeya ummad isku qaran ah, waxaana loo adeegsadaa siiba xagga warbaahinta iyo waxbarashada; a. qoraal: qaab afeedka la adeegsado marka wax la qorayo, kaasoo u dhow ama la xariira qaabka suugaanta, sidaa daraaddeed wuu ka adagyahay, siiba xagga weereynta, qaabka afka ee tiraab ahaan loo adeegsado; a. tirabeed: qaab afeedka la adeegsado marka si caadi ah loo hadlayo; a. maldahan: hadal daboolan oo duluc ama ujeeddo kale ay ku dhex qarsoontahay; wuxuuna xallad u yeela siiba hadalka suugaanta.

2013:

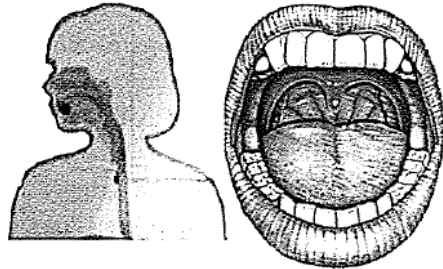
af<sup>1</sup> -ka: (magac, lab, keli) xubinta nafleydu ku cunto cunnadana kana hadasho ee bushimaha carrabka iyo ilkuhu ku yaalliin. *Af daboolan waa dahab.*

af<sup>2</sup> -ka: (magac, lab, keli) luqad ay ummadi isku afgarato oo wax isku gaadhsiiso. Waa hadal ereyo ka kooban oo dhanka ujeeddooyinka iyo xeerashaba ka dhamays tiran. **Dh:** luqad, hadal.

af<sup>3</sup> -ka: (magac, lab, keli) dhinaca ay birtu wax ku goyso. *Cali waxa uu sitay seef af badan.* **Dh:** xanaf.

af<sup>4</sup> -ka: (magac, lab, keli) tog, dooxo iyo wixii la mid ah, goobta ay ka bilaabmaan ama ka unkamaan. *Kolkii aan togga afkiisa gaadhnay ayaan nasniimo u fadhiisannay.*

af<sup>5</sup> -ka: (magac, lab, keli) ceel, il iyo wixii la mid ah, meesha ay biyuhu ka soo boodaan ama ka soo baxaan. *Isha afkeegii waan hellay.* **Dh:** il.



af

af<sup>6</sup> -ka: (magac, lab, keli) caarada wax kaste oo fiiqan ama yuuban; halka ugu horraysa ee wax mudda. *Marka suuqa la marayo, waranka afkiisa waa la foorarshaa.* **Dh:** caaro, caarad.

## aynu / aynnu

1976:

**Aynnu — Innagu.**

2004: ordet saknas

2008: ordet saknas

2012:

aynnu *mu.dhm.y* Magacuyaal tilmaama qofka koowaad ee wadarta ah oo ku jira kuwa lala hadlayo ama wax loo qorayaa; innagu. Tus. “Guriga aynnu aadno”.



2013:

**aynnu:** (magac'uyaal) tilmaama qofka koowaad ee wadarta ah oo ay ku jiraan kuwa lala hadlayo ama wax loo qorayo. *Kaalay aynnu tashannee.*

Agostini:

**aynnu pr. cl. so. - Noi (inclusivo).**

Zorc & Osman:

**aynu'** (eynu) *upro-1pl-incl we [inclusive]* Cf: innaga

Hashi:

**aynu:** (n) [possessive pronoun of we] us (*aas*). *Ex: aynu shaqaysano; let us work. Iskuulka aynu aadno; let us go to the school*

Aleynikof:

**aynu мы (вместе с вами)**

bisad

1976:

**Bisad** (-da) — Nafley yar oo dhogor jilicsan oo hebed ah oo dadka la dhaqanta: waxay ku nooshahay jiir, shinbiro, hilib kale, caano; dinnad; dummad; mukulaal, yaanyuuro; basho.

2004: ordet saknas

2008:

**Bisad-da:** Mukulaasha, yarada, yaanyuurta dad la noosha ah.

2012:

**bisad** *m.db* (-do, *m.l*) Nafley yar oo dhogor  
jilicsan oo hebed ah oo dadka la dhaqanta:  
waxay ku nooshahay jiiir, shimbiro, hilib  
kale, caano; dinnad; dummad; mukulaal,  
yaanyuuro; basho.

2013:

**bisad** *da*: (magac, dhedig, keli) xawayaan dhogor  
jilicsan, dabjoogta ka mid ah, dadka la nool. *Bisidna*  
*waa ka ciyaar jiiirna waa ka naf. Dh*: dinnad, basho,  
dummad, mukulaal, yaanyuur, durruf.

## degaan / deegaan

1976:

**Deegaan** (-ta) — Geedaha badan oo  
ka baxa dhulkii doogta oo roob  
badani ku da'o.

2004:

**deegaan**<sup>1</sup> -ka: (m) dhul dad degaan ahi ku  
noolyihiin; degmo.

**deegaan**<sup>2</sup> -ta: (m) eeg jeegaan.

**degaan** -ka: (m) dhul, magaalo, iwm., la deggan  
yahay, dad ku noolyahay; deegaan.

2008:

**Deegaan-ta**: Meesha roobku qabtay oo  
geeduhu ka soo baxeen, laaca dhulka  
doogga leh ka muuqda ee qurxan.

**Deegaan-ta**: Dhul si rasmi ah loo degan  
yahay oo aan laga guurin.

**Degaan-ka**: Meel la degan yahay, rug,  
dhul kooban oo dad ku nool yahay.

**Degaankiisa**: Meesha dad loo yaqaan  
in ay degaan yihiin, ama fadhigooda.

2012:

**deegaan<sup>1</sup>** *m.l* (-*nno*, *m.db*) 1. Geed weyn canjeelka u eg, sida badan webiga jiinkiisa ka baxa oo leh miro la cuno. 2. *ld degaan*.

**deegaan<sup>2</sup>** *m.db* Doog meel roob badan ku da'ay ka baxa.

**degaan** *m.l* (-*nno*, *m.db*) Meel la deggan yahay. *ld deegaan<sup>1</sup>* (2).

**degaan habboon** *m.l* (*baay*) Kaalinta uu noole ka qaato deegaankiisa. D.ka h. ee noole waxa lagu qeexi karaa cuntooyinka kala duwan ee uu quuto, kuwa isaga ugaadhsada, sida uu heerkulka ugu adkaysto iwm.

2013:

**deegaan<sup>1</sup> -ka:** (magac, lab, keli) meesha ay dad iyo duunyaba ku noolaan karaan ee ay degganyihiin.

**Dh:** dagal, degaan, dagaan.

**deegaan<sup>2</sup> -ka:** (magac, lab, keli) magac guud oo kulmiya buuraha, berriga, badda iyo meel kasta oo nololi ka jirto.

**deegaan -ka:** (magac, lab, keli) geed weyn oo canjeelka u eg. Sida badan webiga jiinkiisa ayuu ka baxaa, waxaana u dhala miro la cuno.

**deegaan<sup>3</sup> -ta:** (magac, dhedig, keli) qaanso roobaad midabbo toddoba ah oo kala duduwan leh oo roobka iyo cadceedda oo is qabatay ka dhalata oo sida qaansada u soo godan. **Dh:** jeegaan.

**deegaan<sup>4</sup> -ta:** (magac, dhedig, keli) dhulka roobku aad ugu da'ay ee doogga iyo xareeddu isku qotomaan.

**degaan -ka:** (magac, lab, keli) dhul la dego oo dad ku nool yahay.

## deggan / deggen

1976:

**Deggan** — 1. Meel rug iyo degmo ka dhigtay; degey; negi. 2. Aan kacsa-nayn; xasillan.

2004:

**deg**<sup>03</sup> (f): cadhada ka soo noqo; ha boodin; isdeji; qaboow; tus: «Markii in cabbaar ah lala hadlay, ayuu degay oo cadhadii ka ba'day.».  
 ~**id** -da: (m) cadho ka soo noqod; boodidtaan la'aan; isdejin; qaboobid; degis. ~**is** -ta: (m) degid. ~**idtaan** -ka: (m) cadho ka soo noqod; isdejis; degniin. ~**niin** -ka: (m) degidtaan.  
 ~**gan**- (t) fadhdiya; aan kacsanayn; xasilan.

2008:

**Deggan-t:** Meel aan dhibi ka jirin, xasi-  
 loon aan buuq iyo rabsho jirin.

**Deggan-t:** Rugta la dego oo guryaha  
 laga dhisto, rabadin ama mooro.

2012:

**deggan** *f.g/mg4* (-naa, -nayd) 1. (*f.g*) Wax  
 meel rug ka dhigtay ahaansho (cid). 2. (*f.mg*)  
 Wax xasillan ahaansho. 3. (*f.mg*) Wax kudid  
 raba ahaansho (sac).

2013:

**deggan**<sup>1</sup>: magaca gabadh qoyskeedu ku degay  
 dhalashadeeda.

**deggan**<sup>2</sup>: (tilmaame) qof ama xaalad negi; xaalad  
 nabadi jirto. **Li:** kacsan.

**deggan**<sup>3</sup>: (tilmaame) iskudhiska si fudud aan u kala  
 bixi karin; isbeddel kamikaad ama molukiyuuleed  
 caabbi weyn.

## Plural of dhagax

1976:

**Dhagax** (-a) — Cad ama gabal yar  
 oo ciid isku dhegtey oo adkaatay  
 ah; shiid; dhadhaab; med; cal;  
 quruurux.

2004:

**dhagax** -xa: (m) waa cad ama walax yar oo ka

kooban ciid isu tagtay oo adkaadtay; shiid;  
dhadhdhaab; med; cal.

2008:

**Dhagax-a:** Wax adag oo ciidda ka  
samysma dhadhaabta iyo quruurax.

2012:

**dhagax** *m.l* (-xyol-gxaan, *m.dh*) Adke yaryar  
iyo waaweyn leh, buuraha ama dhulkahoose  
laga helo oo wax lagu dhisto.

2013:

**dhagax -a:** (magac, lab, keli) walax aad u adag oo  
qaabab kala duwan leh oo dhulka dushiisa laga  
helo, gaar ahaan buuraha oo siyaabo kala duwan  
loo adeegsado sida dhismaha guryaha. *Dhagax*  
*tuujin iyo taabasho waa isku mid.*

## dhalo

1976:

**Dhalo** (-da) — 1. Madaxa meesha ugu  
sarraysa; kug; dhako. 2. Wax adag,  
jabina og, oo dhalaala, oo wixii ka  
shishceeyaa muuqdaan oo dabaysha  
celiya iftiinkana soo daaya; waxyaalo  
badan oo aan la tirin karin oo dadka  
aad iyo aad wax u tara baa laga  
sameeyaa; dhawr waxyaalood oo  
laysku dardaray bay ka kooban ta-  
hay: ciid, sooda, xaraar... 3. Ubbo  
dhalo laga sameeyey; qarsho; qu-  
raarad.

2004:

**dhalo**<sup>1</sup> (f): <<ilmo>> ifka u soo bax. ~**ad** -ka: (m) <<ilmo>> if u soo bixid; dhalasho. ~**asho** -da: (m) dhalad.

**dhalo**<sup>2</sup> (f): <<bil>> soo bax. ~**ad** -ka: (m) <<bil>> soo bixid; bilasho. ~**asho** -da: (m) bilad.

**dhalo**<sup>3</sup> (f): <<foorad, duq, iwm. >> imaw. ~**ad** -ka: (m) foorad, duq, iwm., dhalasho, imaansho. ~**asho** -da: (m) dhalad.

**dhalo**<sup>4</sup> -da: (m) wax adag oo jajabi og oo dhalaala, oo jaadad badan ah oo dabaylsha celiya iftiinkuna dhexmaro; ciid, soodhe, xaraar, iwm., oo si qiyaasan laysugu dardaray

ayaa laga sameeyaa; quraarad; qaruurad.

**dhalo**<sup>5</sup> -da: (m) madaxxa halka ugu saraysa; kug; dhagko; adhi'.

**dhalo**<sup>6</sup> -da: (m) ubbo dhalo laga sameeyey; qarsho; quraarad.

2008:

**Dhalo/-ada:** Madaxa meesha ugu saraysa ee dhakada ah.

**Dhalo/-ada:** Qarshada wax lagu shubto weel quraarad ka samaysan

2012:

**dhalo**<sup>1</sup> *m.dh (-ooyin, m.l)* 1. Wax kasta meesha u saraysa; fiin. 2. Maaddo adke ah oo ka samaysan ciid, kaalsiyam, soodaiyo, botaasiyam oo jabi og oo mootiye ileys ah. 3. Weel quraarad ka samaysan oo biyaha, caanaha iwm lagu shubto.

**dhalo**<sup>2</sup> *f.mg3 (-ashay, -alatay)* 1. Ilmo uur ku jira ifka (aaduunka) imaansho. 2. Soo bixid ama kawsasho (bil ama dayax); bilasho. 3. Wax aan horay u jirin, abuurmid. Tus. "Kacaan baa dhashay". 4. Kubbad lagu ciyaarayo shabaq gelid.

2013:

**dhalo** -da: (magac, dhedig, keli) weel ka samaysan quraarad oo wax lagu shubto. **Dh:** qaruurad.

## Pronunciation of *dul*

1976:

**Dul** — 1. {-<sup>o</sup>ka) *a*) Labada dalool oo sanku ku yaal, midkiiba. *b*) Dalool yar sida kan irbadda. 2. {-sha) *a*) Oogada dadka, kd., korkeeda; kor; dhabar. *b*) Dhibaha oo loo adkaysto; adkaysiinyo; dhabar'adayg; dulqaad; sabir. *c*) Dhul sarreeya; dullo.

2012:

**dul** *m.l* (-laɪ, *m.l*) 1. Labada dalool ee sanku middood. 2. Dalool kasta oo yar.

**dul<sup>1</sup>** *m.dh* (-llo, *ml.*) 1. Oogada sare ee wax kasta leeyihiin. 2. Meel sare oo dhulka intiisa kale ka yara kacsan. 3. Sabir iyo adkeysiga dhibaato loo yeesho.

**dul<sup>2</sup>** *m.dh* (-llo, *m.l*) (*juqr.*) Aad u fidsan, waa heer ama ugu badnaan heer meeleed oo dhul dheer, dhul sare ah.

## Gender of *guddi*

1976:

**Guddi** {-da, -ga) — Dad loo magacaabay inay arrin gaar ah galaan oo wax ka qabtaan; guurti.

2004:

**guddi<sup>1</sup>** -ga: (m) dad loo magacaabay inay arrin gaar ah galaan oo wax ka qabtaan; guurti; guddi.

**guddi<sup>2</sup>** -da: (m) eeg guddi<sup>1</sup>.

2008:

**Guddi-ga:** Dad koox ah oo u magacaaban xil isku mid ah.

2012:

**guddi** *m.lldh* (-iyo, *m.dh*) 1. Dad loo xilsaaray inay ka arrimiyaan xaajo doodi ka taagantahay. 2. Dad loo xilsaaray inay socodsiiyaan maamul dawladeed, shirkadeed iwm.

2013:

**guddi -da:** (magacwadareed) cid gaar ah oo loo saaray in ay arrin ka soo taliyaan oo go'aamiyaan ama soo gudbiyaan aragti laga dhaqaaqo.

## kayaga / kaayaga

1976:

**Kaayaga** — Kan aannu lee nahay.

2004:

**kaayaga** – kan aanu leenahay.

2008:

**Kaaya-ga:** Waxayaga kaan leenahay.

2012:

**kaayaga**<sup>1</sup> *mu.lb.l* (**kuwayaga**, w) magacuyaal lahaansho oo lab ah oo tilmaamaya wax annagu (qofka koowaad ee wadarta ah oo kuwa lala hadlayaa aynan ku jirin) aanu leenahay. Tus. “Baabuurkiinna, kaayaga ayaa ka weyn”. *ld* **Kayaga**<sup>1</sup>, **kaayaga**<sup>2</sup> (-kaayaga) *dk.lb.l* Dibkabe lahaansho oo tilmaamaya wax annagu (qofka koowaad ee wadarta ah oo kuwa lala hadlayaa aynan ku jirin) aanu leenahay. Tus. “Dalkaayaga ayaa ka ballaaran dalkiinna”. *ld* **kayaga**<sup>2</sup>, **kaayo**<sup>2</sup>, **kayo**<sup>2</sup>.

**kayaga** (-kayaga) *dk.lb.l* *ld* **kaayaga**<sup>2</sup>.



2013: ordet saknas

### Head word for *keenaa*

1976: verbalsubstantiv / magac faleed

**Keenid** (-da) — 1. Meel durugsan wax ka soo qaadid oo meesha kolkaas la joogo soo dhigid, soo joojin, soo taagid. 2. Wax aan hor u jirin abuurid, curin, hindisid.

2004: imperativ / amar

**keen**<sup>1</sup> (f): soo dhiib; soo gudbi. ~**id** -da: (m) meel durugsan wax ka soo qaadid oo meelsha kolkaas la joogo soo dhigid, soo joojin, soo taagid. ~**is** -ta: (m) keenid. ~**idtaan** -ka: (m) soo gudbin; soo dhiibidtaan.

**keen**<sup>2</sup> (f): ra'yi, iwm., soo jeedi, soo bandhig. ~**id** -da: (m) ra'yi, iwm., soo jeedin, soo bandhigid; keenis. ~**is** -ta: (m) keenid. ~**idtaan** -ka: (m) keenidda lafteeda.

**keen**<sup>3</sup> (f): curin, ikhtiraac, iwm., hindis; abuur. ~**id** -da: (m) <<ikhtiraac, iwm.>> aan horay u jirin abuurid, curin; hindisid. ~**is** -ta: (m) keenid. ~**idtaan** -ka: (m) keenidda lafteeda.

**keen**<sup>4</sup> (f): <<ganac, iwm.>> soo deji; soo waarid. ~**id** -da: (m) <<ganac, iwm.>> soo dejin; soo waaridid; keenis. ~**is** -ta: (m) keenid. ~**idtaan** -ka: (m) waarididtaan.

2008:

**Keen-f:** Soo dhiib ii soo gudbi.

**Keen-f:** Wax cusub soo saar.

**Keen-f:** Tala kale soo jeedi.

**Keen-f:** Soo deji sheyga sare.

**Keen-f:** Dhulka keen midkaas.

2012:

**keen<sup>1</sup>** *mu.dhm.ly* Magacuyaal' layeele ee tilmaamaya qofka koowaad ee wadarta ah oo kuwa lala hadlayaa ay ku jiraan. Tus. "Cali baa isugu keen yeeray".

**keen<sup>2</sup>** *f.gl (-nay, -ntay)* 1. Wax meel durugsan yaal meel dhow u soo qaadid. 2. Cid wax u dhiibid.

**keen<sup>3</sup>** (-keen) *dk.lh.l ld* keenna<sup>2</sup>.

**keenid** *m.f.dh eeg* keen<sup>3</sup>. *ld* keenis.

**keenis** *m.dh ld* keenid.

2013:

**keen<sup>1</sup>**: (fal) gacantayda soo geli ama agtayda soo dhig; ii soo dhiib.

**keenid<sup>1</sup> -da**: (magac, dhedig, keli) meel durugsan wax ka soo qaadid oo meesha kolkaas la joogo soo dhigid; soo joojin.

**keenid<sup>2</sup> -da**: (magac, dhedig, keli) wax aan horay u jirin abuurid. **Dh**: curin, hindisid.

## Collocations with kubbad

1976:

**Kubbad** (-da) ---- Geed kankoonsan oo ka samaysan cinjir ama harag ama wax kale oo in lagu cayaaro loogu talaggalay; qaar waa waa-weyn oo waxay ka kooban yihiin labo waxyaalood oo isku gudajira oo midka kore adag yahay midka hoosena jilicsan yahay oo neef laga buuxin karo (waxaa ka mid ah: kubbadaha cagta, kolayga, laliska, sacabka, dabaasha, kd.) qaarna waa yaryar (oo waxaa ka mid ah: kubbadaha kabrada (xee-gada), tenniska, iyo kuwo kale oo badan).

2004:

**kubbad<sup>1</sup>** -da: (m) buufimo kankoonsan oo ka sameysan caag ama harag ama wax kale oo in lagu ciyaaro loogu talaggalay; qaar waa waaweyn oo waxay ka kooban yihiin dub iyo tayuub isku dhexjira, halka kuwo kalena ay dub la neefiyo qudh ah ka yihiin; siyaabaad farabbadanna waa loogu ciyaaraa.

**kubbad<sup>2</sup>** -da: (m) dunta sida kubbad u kuusan.

**kubbadda'cagta** – kubadda lugta lagu ciyaaro.

**kubbadda'kolayga** – kubadda kolayga lagu tuuro.



**kubbad**

**kubbadda'miiska** – kubadda miiska lagu ciyaaro.

2008:

**Kubbad-da:** Banooniga lagu cayaaro.

2012:

**kubbad** *m.dh* (-dō, *m.l*) 1. Shey kankoonsan oo ka sameysan cinjir, harag iwm oo neefi ku jirto looguna talaggalay in lagu ciyaaro; banooni. 2. Wax qaabka banooniga leh oo wareegsan.

2013:

**kubad -da:** (magac, dhedig, kelil) cinjir ama harag kankoonsan oo la buufiyo oo qaabab kala duwan loogu ciyaaro. **Dh:** balooni. **Wa:** kubbaddo.

Aleynikof:

**kubbad(-da)** мяч, шар, сфера; ~ **cagta** футбол; ~ **dabaasha** водное поло; ~ **gacanta** волейбол; ~ **isha** глазное яблоко; ~ **koleyga** баскетбол; ~ **laliska** волейбол; ~ **miiska** настольный теннис ~ **sacabta** гандбол

Zorc & Osman:

**kubbad** (-da) *np-f* ball, sphere (Arb)  
**kubbadda cagta** *np-f* football, soccer (game ~ ball)

**kubbadda gacanta** *np-f* volleyball  
**kubbadda koleyga** *np* basketball

Hashi:

**kubbad** -da: (n) [*Sports*]: ball (*bool*)  
**kubbadda cagta**: (n) football (*fuut·bool*); soccer (*sokar*)  
**kubbadda miiska**: (n) table tennis; ping-pong (*pin poong*) ~ (teeniska)  
**kubbadda gacanta**: (n) volleyball (*vaali·bool*)  
**kubbadda koleyga**: (n) basketball (*baaskit·bool*)

## Gender for maalin

1976:

**Maalin** — 1. (-ka) **Maalinta**. 2. (-ta)  
*a)* 12ka saac oo iftiinka ah oo qorraxdu soo jeeddo; waqtiga habeenka, waqtigak a dhigan. *b)* Dhaaraar; casho; ayaan. *c)* Qof neef irmaan ammaaneysiin, si uu caanaha uga maalo; maalis.

2004:

**maalin<sup>1</sup>** -ta: (m) 12ka saacadood ee ay cadceeddu soo jeeddo oo iftiinka ah; labada isbeddel oo ay 24ka saac ka kooban yihiin, intay qorraxdu soojeeddo; dharaar; cisho; ayaan; maalin.  
**maalin<sup>2</sup>** -ta: (m) neef intuu irmaan yahay lagu maalo ammaanaysi, oo la haysto oo caanaha laga maalo; maal; maalis.  
**maalin<sup>3</sup>** -ka: (m) eeg maalin<sup>1</sup>.

2008:

**Maalin-ta:** Inta qorraxdu soo jeedo.

**Maalin-ta:** Neef irmaan cid la siiyey, caana ka maalid neefkaas.

**Maalin-ka:** Maalinnimada.

2012:

**maalin<sup>1</sup>** *m.l/db* (-lmo, *m.l*) Muddada u dhaxaysa marka qorraxdu soo baxdo ilaa ay dhacdo (12 saac).

2013:

**maalin<sup>1</sup>** -ta: (magac, dhedig, keli) qorrax soo baxa iyo qorrax dhaca inta u dhaxeysa, waaberiga illaa gabbaldhaca, inta ay cadceeddu soo jeeddo. *Habeenkii seexo maalintiina shaqayso.* **Dh:** dharaar. **Li:** habeen.

**maalin<sup>1</sup>** -ta: (magac, dhedig, keli) habeen iyo dharaar la isku daray; afar iyo labaatan saacadood. **Dh:** cisho.

## Plural of nooc

2012: noocac, noocaca / noocyo, noocyada

**nooc** *m.l* (-cac, *m.ll-cyo*, *m.db*) Qayb wax ka mid ah oo leh tilmaamo u gaar ah; cayn; namuun.

## Plural of sac

2012: saco, sacaha

**sac** *m.l* (-co, *m.l*) Neef lo' ah, dheddig oo curtay.

## Word class for weyn

1976: ingen

**Weyn** — 1. Qiyaasta loo badan yahay, wax u weheliyaan, wax u dheer yihiin (xagga dhererka, xagga ballaarka, xagga tirada, xagga filka, xagga xoogga, kd.) yaraan ka tegey, koray, weynaadey. 2. (arrin, wax dhacay) saamays daran leh; culus; la xusuusto.

2004: tilmaame

**weyn**<sup>1</sup> – (t) qiyaastii lagu yiqiin ay wax ku dheer yihiin, weheliyaan: xagga dhererka, ballaadhka, filka, tirada, xoogga, ballacca, miisaanka iwm.; yaraan ka tegey, koray, weynaaday. ~**aan** -ta: (m) wax weyn ahaan. ~**aansho** -ha: (m) wax weyn ahaansho; weyni. ~**i** -da: (m) weynaansho.

**weyn**<sup>2</sup> – (t) «arrin, wax dhacay» oo saamays daran leh, raad ka taga; culus; la xusuusto.

2008: tilmaame

**Weyn-t:** Wax jirmi weyn oo aan yar ahayn ama muuqaal weyn leh.

2012: fal

**weyn** *f.mg4* (-naa, -nayd; waaweyn) 1. Wax qiyaasta loo baahan yahay wax u weheliyaan xagga tirada, dhererka, ballaarka, filka iwm ahaansho. 2. Isla w.: qof cid kale iskala sarreeya ahaansho.

2013: tilmaame

**weyn:** (tilmaame) dherer iyo dhumucba leh oo aan yarayn. *Nin gu' kaa weyn gu' ba'as kaa weyn.. Dh:* wayn.

## Infinitive of baxaa

2012: bixi

**bax** *f.mgl* (-xay, -xday; -bixi) 1. Meel ka tegid. 2. Dhimasho. 3. Caloolbixid, shubmid. 4. Soo dheeraan (dhir, timo iwm). 5. Muuqasho (qorrax, dayax iwm). 6. Shidmid (dab). 7. Gadmīd, iibsamid (ganacsi). 8. Ka b.: wax ka noqosho. 9. Ka b.: arrin ama waajib gudasho. 10. Ku b.: qaymo ku fadhiisasho. 11. La b.: wax meel ku jira baxsasho. 12. La b.: la cararid (gabar). 13. Isku b.: isku buuqid, isku kicid. 14. Isku b.: jiq noqosho. 15. Kala b.: kala qaybsamid. 16. Kala b.: dhanaanaasho, suusacid (caano). 17. Haan caano lagu lulay subag dhalid.

## Meanings of beer

1976: 2 magac lab, 1 magac dheddig

**Beer** — 1. (-ka) a) Xubinta oogada ka mid ah oo xammeetida samaysa dhiiggana ka ilaalisa wixii sun iyo waabaayo ah. b) (miro) qalbacyada hoose, (sida bun, yicib, quulle, garas,...). 2. (-ta) Dhul la falay oo dhir iyo miro iyo badar iyo waxyaalo kale lagu abuurto.

2004: 1 fal, 3 m.lab, 1 m.dheddig

**beer**<sup>1</sup> (f): beer, iwm., fal; abuur. ~**id**-da: (m) beer, iwm., falid; abuurid; beeris. ~**is**-ta: (m) beeris. ~**idtaan** -ka: (m) falidtaan; abuuridda. ~**niin** -ka: (m) dhicidda lafteeda. ~**an** - (t) la beeray; la falay oo wax lagu abuuray; falan; tallaalan.

**beer**<sup>2</sup> -ka: (m) xubin ku jirta uurkujirta nafleyda qaarkeed oo xamaydtida samaysa, dhiiggana ka shaandhaysa oo wixii sun iyo waabaayo ah ka ilaalisa.

**beer**<sup>3</sup> -ka: (m) qalbacyada hoose ee midhaha, sida kuwa, yicibta, lawska, iwm.

**beer**<sup>4</sup> -ka: (m) ubadka; dhalsha; carruurta.

**beer**<sup>5</sup> -ta: (m) dhul la falay oo dhir iyo midho iyo badar iyo waxyaalo kale lagu abuuray; dhulka wax lagu beero; bustaan.

2008: 1 fal, 2 m.lab, 1 m. dheddig

**Beer-f:** Beerta abuur, geedka beer.

**Beer-ka:** Beerka xubin uur ku jirta ka mid ah ee nolosha muhimka u ah.

**Beer-ka:** Wax iniina ah oo wax kale gudaha ugu jira sida bunka.

**Beer-ta:** Dhulka wax laga beerto ee wax lagu tabcado.

2012: 2 m.lab., 1 m.dheddig, 2 fal

**beer<sup>1</sup> m.l (-rar, m.l)** 1. Xubin uurkujirta ah lafdhabarleyda ka mid ah midabkeedu madow guduud ku dheehanyahay ah oo samaysa xammeetida, dhiiggana wixii sumeynaya ka ilaalisa. 2. Qaybta dhexe ee miraha, jilicsan, qolof ku dahaaran oo uu geedku ka dhasho.

**beer<sup>2</sup> m.dh (-ro, m.l)** Dhul la falay oo dhir, miro, badar iwm lagu abuur karo.

**beer<sup>3</sup> f.gl (-ray, -rtay)** 1. Dhul miro ku abuurid. 2. Ku b.: dareen gaar ah ku abuurid (qof).

2013: 2 fal, 3 m.lab, 1 m.dheddig

**beer<sup>1</sup>:** (fal) dhul abuur oo wax ka soo saar. *Barbari ninkii beertay gubtaa. Dh:* turuq, qod.

**beer<sup>2</sup>:** (fal) «ku ~» ku abuur jacayl, xumaan iyo walwal. *Warkii xalay walawal buu igu beeray.*

**beer<sup>3</sup> -ka:** (magac, lab, keli) iniinyaha labada qalbac leh xubin ku dhex jirta sida bun, yicib, quulleh, garas iyo waxii la mid ah. *Beer badan baa ku jira quullaha.*

**beer<sup>4</sup> -ka:** (magac, lab, keli) xubin uurkujirta ka mid ah, jidhka noolaha ku jirta, ka ilaaliya sunta iyo waabeeyada, dheef shiidka door lixaad leh ka qaata, xammeetidana sameeya.

**beer<sup>5</sup> -ka:** (magac, lab, keli) cudur beerka barariya oo qofka uu hayaa yeesho yalaalugo, neefqabatin, cuntoxumi iyo oonta xoolaha oo uu ku xanuunsado.

**beer<sup>6</sup> -ta:** (magac, dhedig, keli) dhulka dalagga cunnada laga soo saaro. *Dh:* aslaax.



## 8.3

### aqri

Ingen av de tre ordböckerna innehåller stavningen **aqri**. man måste själv veta att man ska söka på **akhri**.

Det hade varit bra med en hänvisning, t.ex. **aqri**, eeg **akhri**.

#### Keenadiid 1976:

**Akhriyid** (-da) — Erēy ama hadal qoran  
kicin; ku dhawaaqid; naqid; marin.

#### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**akhri** *f.g1/2* (-iyay, -iday/-isay; -iyi) Erayo  
ama weedho qoran daalacasho ama kor ugu  
dhawaaqid.

#### Aleynikof 2012:

**akhrin** читать

### biya-dhac

Stavningen **biyadhac** dominerar. Puglielli och Mansuur anger två olika stavningar med olika betydelser.

#### Keenadiid 1976:

**Biyadhac** (-a) — 1. (xoolo) balli waran  
ama webi ka cabbid. 2. Meel jab  
ah oo biyo ka degtaan (ama « bi-  
yadhaceen »).

#### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**biyadhac**<sup>1</sup> *m.l 1. ld* biyadhaceen. (-cyo, m.dh)  
Qar sare oo biyaha qulqulaya ay ka daataan.  
2. (-cyo, m.dh) Meel godan oo biyo qabatin  
leh oo qar, buur iwm ku hoos taalla. 3. (-cyo,  
m.dh) Go'aan; duluc; murti. 4. *ld*  
biyadhicid.  
**biyadhac**<sup>2</sup> *f.mg1* (-cay, -cday; -dhici) Xoolo  
meel biyo leh ka harqasho.

**biyodhac** *m.l* (-cyo, *m.dh*) (*jool*)  
 Dhicidbiyood degdeg ah, badanaa waxa  
 sameeya sal dhadhaab adag ee marin webi,  
 oo ufug ah ama tiiro hoosaad deggan, oo dul  
 yaal dhadhaab jilicsan.

### Aleynikof 2012:

**biyadhac(-a)** 1) водопад; 2) водопой

### Hashi, Jigjiga 1998:

**biyadhac** -a: (n) waterfall  
 (*wo-ter-fool*); cascade (*kaas-keeyd*)  
 ~ biyodhac

**biyodhac** -a: (n) waterfall (*wo-ter-fool*); cascade (*kaas-keeydh*) ~  
 biyabax

### Aadan, Djibouti 2013:

**biyadhac<sup>1</sup>** -a: (magac, lab, keli) guryaha saqafkooda  
 dhinka biyaha roobku uga dhacaan. **Dh:** majaroor,  
 biyashub.

**biyadhac<sup>2</sup>** -a: (magac, lab, keli) meel hoose oo qaw  
 ah ama haadaan ah oo biyo socdaa ka dhacaan,  
 halka biyuhu ku hoobtaan. *Garabada biyadhaca*  
*ku taalla ku soo dabbaasha.* **Dh:** biyashub.

**biyadhac<sup>3</sup>** -a: (magac, lab, keli) xoolo, biyo wadhan  
 oon shubaal ahayn loona kala horaynin ka cabbid.

### Zorc, Osman 1993:

**biyadhac<sup>1</sup>** (-a) *n2a-m-cmp* swamp, marsh,  
 watering place for cattle ~ livestock

**biyadhac<sup>2</sup>** (-a) *n2a-m-cmp* waterfall, cascade;  
 rapids

## danbe

Den äldsta ordboken har bara **danbe**, de nyare har främst  
**dambe**. Den ryska hänvisar från **danbe** till **dambe**.

### Keenadiid 1976:

**Danbe** — Xagga gadaale xiga; dib;  
 danbeeya.

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

- dambe** s. 1. Ka d.: dabadeed, kaddib. Tus.  
“Fasaxa ka dambe ayaan is arkaynaa”.  
2. Gadaal xiga; dambeeya. *ld damme.*

### Aleynikof 2012: (CM. = eeg)

**danbe** CM. dambe

**dambe** последний; завершающий;  
последующий; очередной; про-  
шлый; недавний; задний

### Aadan, Djibouti 2013:

**dambe**<sup>1</sup>: (tilmaame) waqti aan hadda ahayn oo soo  
socda. *Mar dambe ii soo noqo aad ii warrantide.*  
**Dh:** danbe, damme.

**dambe**<sup>2</sup>: (tilmaame) meel aan xagga hore ahayn.  
*Xagga dambe fadhiisi wiilka.* **Dh:** danbe, damme.

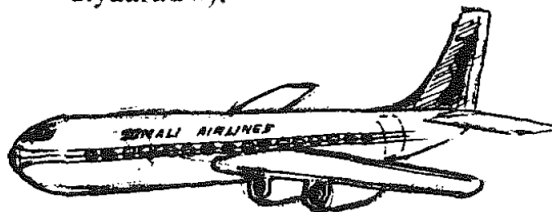
**danbe:** (tilmaame) xagga gadaal xiga; xagga danbe.  
*Ninka danbe sii shaaha.*

## diyaarad

### Keenadiid 1976:

**Diyaarad** (-da) — Dayuurad.

**Dayuurad** (-da) — Gaadiid la duuliyo  
oo baalal leh oo dadkiyo alaabada-  
ba qaada, qaarkoodna lagu dagaal-  
lamo oo aad u dheereeya (ama  
« diyaarad »).



DAYUURAD

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**diyaarad** *m.dh ld dayuurad.*

**dayuurad** *m.đh* (-do, *m.ł*) Gaadiid hawada mara, rakaabka iyo xamuulka qaada, jaad ka mid ahna lagu dagaallamo. *ld* **dayaarad**, **diyaarad**.

### Aleynikof 2012:

**diyaarad(-da)** см. **dayuurad**

**dayuurad(-da)** самолет; аэроплан;  
~ **aan duuliye lahayn**, ~ **aan cidi wadin** беспилотный летательный аппарат (БЛА); ~ **biyaha degta** гидросамолет; ~ **dirirtada ah** истребитель; ~ **duqaysada ah** бомбардировщик; ~ **dhaamisa** самолет-заправщик; ~ **korjoogta** патрульный с.; ~ **qumaatiga ah** вертолет; ~ **rakaabka ah** пассажирский с.; ~ **sahanka** самолет-разведчик; ~ **xammuulka ah** транспортный с.

### taqtar

Ordböckerna verkar ge mera stöd åt **takhtar** och mindre åt **dhakhtar**, men båda formerna finns med i alla tre ordböckerna.

### Keenadiid 1976:

**Dhakhtar (-ka)** — **Takhtar**, doktor.

**Takhtar (-ka)** — 1. Qof cudurrada iyo dawooyinkooda bartay inuu wax ka qabtona idan u qaba. 2. Qof shahaado takhtarnimo haysta siiba kan ka soo baxay jaamacadda cilmiga dawada; (Ereygaan iyo waxaa isku mid ah ereyga «doktor», haseyeeshee kan hore wuxuu u go'an yahay «dawada», kan danbese qof kasta oo Jaamacad shahaado ka qaatay — laamaha cilmiga mid-dood kasta — baa ahaan kara).

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**dhakhtar** *m.ł* **takhtar**<sup>1</sup>.

**takhtar**<sup>1</sup> *m.l* (-rro/-khaatiir, *m.db*) Qof aqoon  
u leh cilmiga daaweynta. *ld* **dhakh-tar**.  
**takhtar**<sup>2</sup> *f.gl* (-ray, -rtay) Cid daawayn.

### Aleynikof 2012:

**dhakhtar(-ka)** Pl: dhakhaatiir(-ta)  
врач, доктор; ~ **xoolaha** ветери-  
нар

**takhtar(-ka)** Pl: takhaatiir(-ta) врач;  
~ **dhegta**, **sanka iyo hunguriga**  
отоларинголог; ~ **indhaha** оку-  
лист; ~ **ilkaha** дантист; ~ **ilaali-  
yaha** дежурный врач; ~ **mindiyeed**  
хирург; ~ **gantaalaha X** рентгено-  
лог; ~ **xoolaha** ветеринар

### taxaddir

Stavningen **taxaddir** finns inte i någon av ordböckerna. Den stavning som får mest stöd är **taxaddar**. I Djibouti 2013 finns **taxadder** som enda form.

### Keenadiid 1976.

No such entry.

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**taxaddar**<sup>1</sup> *m.l* (-ryo, *m.db*) Digtooni; feejigni.  
**taxaddar**<sup>2</sup> *f.mgl* (-ray, -rtay) Wax halis ah ka  
digtoonaansha.

### Aleynikof 2012:

**taxadar(-ka)** предосторожность,  
осторожность, осмотрительность

**taxadirid** быть осторожным, осмот-  
рительным; осторожничать; **ka** ~  
предостерегаться чего-л.

### Aadan, Djibouti 2013:

**taxadder<sup>1</sup>:** (fal) digtoonow, feejignaw. *Taxadder oo ilaalo iyo fiiro gaara u yeelo. Dh:* feejignow.  
**taxadder<sup>2</sup> -ka:** (magac, lab, keli) digtooni iyo feejigni.

## waydiin

Alla tre ordböckerna skriver **-ey-**, bara den ryska skriver **-d-**.

### Keenadiid 1976:

**Weyddiin (-ta)** — Qof hadal u jeedin si jawaab looga helo; su'aalid; warin; warsad; haybin.

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**weyddii** *f.lg2* (-iiyay, -iisay) 1. Qof si jawaab looga halo su'aal u jeedin; warso. 2. Cid wax ka codsasho.  
**weyddiin** *m.f.dh eeg weyddii. ld weyddis.*

### Aleynikof 2012:

**weydiin(-ta)** 1. опрос, расспрашивание; 2. спрашивать, расспрашивать; **waxaa is~ leh** ... спрашивается, возникает вопрос...

## arrin

Alla tre ordböckerna anger både maskulinum och femininum.

Alla sätter maskulinum först.

### Keenadiid 1976:

**Arrin (-ka, -ta)** — Talo, hadal iyo in wax laga qabto u baahan; xaal; talo; xaajo.

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**arrin** *m.l/dh (-imo, m.l)* Talo, hadal iyo in wax laga qabto u baahan; xaajo.

### Aleynikof 2012:

**arrin(-ka, -ta)** вопрос; проблема

## guddi

Alla tre ordböckerna anger båda genusen. Keenadiid sätter femininum först, de andra två sätter maskulinum först. Djibouti 2013 anger bara femininum.

### Keenadiid 1976:

**Guddi** (-da, -ga) — Dad loo magacaa-bay inay arrin gaar ah galaan oo wax ka qabtaan; guurti.

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**guddi** *m./db* (-iyo, *m.db*) 1. Dad loo xilsaaray inay ka arrimiyaan xaajo doodi ka taagantahay. 2. Dad loo xilsaaray inay socodsiiyaan maamul dawladeed, shirkadeed iwm.

### Aleynikof 2012:

**guddi(-ga, -da)** совет, комитет, комиссия; ~ **Caddaaladda** Комитет правосудия; ~ **Culimada** Совет улемов (в Сомали)

### Aadan, Djibouti 2013:

**guddi -da:** (magacwadareed) cid gaar ah oo loo saaray in ay arrin ka soo taliyaan oo go'aamiyaan ama soo gudbiyaan aragti laga dhaqaaqo.

## roodhi

I de flesta ordböcker finns bara formen **rooti -ga**.  
I Djibouti 2013 är huvudformen **roodhi -ga**.  
Ingen ordbok anger artikeln **-da**.

### Keenadiid 1976:

**Rooti** (-ga) — Bur intá biyo lagu rafaajiyo oo la khamiiriyo oo qaab badan loo yeelo, furun lagu dubo; kimis; laxoox.

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**rooti** *m.l* Cunto ka samaysan bur cajiiman, khamiir iyo waxyaalo kale oo marka la jarjaro fooro lagu dubto.

### Aleynikof 2012:

**rooti(-ga)** хлеб, булка

### Aadan, Jibouti 2013:

**roodhi -ga:** (magac, lab, keli) ) furun la quuto oo qooshka daqiiqda laga dubo. *Roodhi wacan, oo nin loo dubay, oo ninkii duday, oon ka daba tegay, uu i soo dilay.* Dh: rooti, furun.

**rooti -ga:** (magac, lab, keli) eeg roodhi.

### shimbir

De flesta ordböcker anger bara **-ta**.

Den ryska anger både **-ta** och **-ka**.

### Keenadiid 1976:

**Shinbir (-ta)** — Nafley lafdhabar leh oo ugax dhasha oo dhiig kulul, oo baalal leh oo duusha; haad.

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**shimbir**<sup>1</sup> *m.l/dh* Cudur ku dhaca dadka iyo xoolaha oo afka qallociya.

**shimbir**<sup>2</sup> *m.dh (-ro, m.l)* 1. Qayb ka mid ah lafdhabarleyda, oo ugax dhasha, oo dhiig kulul, baalal leh oo duusha. 2. Shimbir meel dhexaad ah, midab qurxoon oo xasharaadka cuna. *ld/shinbir.*

### Aleynikof 2012:

**shimbir(-ta, -ka)** птица; ~ **libaax(-da)** филин; ~ **malab(-ta)** птица-пчелоед; ~ **yaxaas(-ta)** «крокодил-лов сторож» (вид кулика); ~ **ba** ~ **kiisuu la duulaa** Всякая птица в своей стае летает (*посл.*)

### Aadan, Djibouti 2013:



**shimbir**<sup>1</sup>: magac ama naanays loo baxsho wiil shimbirta sideeda u fudfudud.

**shimbir**<sup>2</sup> **-ta**: (magac, dhedig, keli) nafley lafdhabarleyda ka mid ah oo ugax dhasha oo dhiig kulul, oo baalal leh oo duusha. **Dh**: haad, shimbir. **Wa**: shimbiro.

## aabbe

Bara **Puglielli & Mansuur 2012** anger böjningsformer:

**aabbe, aabbayaal, aabbayaalka/aabbayaasha**

**aabbe** *m.l* (-bayaal, *m.l/m.dh*) 1. Nin ubad dhalay. 2. (*u.j*) Aabbow!; wiilkaygiyow! *ld* aabbo. . . . .

## abti

Bara **Puglielli & Mansuur 2012** anger böjningsformer:

**abti, abtiyo, abtiyada; abtiyaal, abtiyaalka/abtiyaasha**

**abti** *m.l* (-iyo, *m.dh* *l-iyaa*, *m.l/dh*)  
1. Haweeney carruurta ay dhashay waxa uu walaalkood u yahay. 2. u.j. abtiyow! 3. u.j. wiilka aan abtiga u ahayow!; gabadha aan abtiga u ahayey!

## dhagax

**Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:**

**dhagaxyo, dhagaxyada // dhagxaan, dhagxaanta**

**dhagax** *m.l* (-xyo/-gxään, *m.dh*) Adke yaryar iyo waaweyn leh, buuraha ama dhulkahoose laga helo oo wax lagu dhisto. . . . .

## nooc

**Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:**

**noocac, noocaca // noocyo, noocyada**

**nooc** *m.l* (-cac, *m.l/-cyo*, *m.dh*) Qayb wax ka mid ah oo leh tilmaamo u gaar ah; cayn; namuun.

## tuug

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

#### tuug, tuugta

tuug<sup>1</sup> *m.l* (tuug, *m.dh*) Nin wax xadid  
caadaystay.

## wax

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

#### waxyaalo, waxyaalaha // waxyaabo, waxyaabaha

wax *m.l* (-xyaalo/-xyaabo, *m.l*) 1. Shay; walax.  
2. Arrin; talo; xaal.

## dheer

### Keenadiid 1976:

Dheer — 1. *ā*) (qof, geed, buur, kd.)  
kor iyo xagga cirka u fog; dhererkii  
loo badnaa wax u weheshaan; aan

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

dheer<sup>2</sup> *f.g/mg*<sup>4</sup> (-raa, -rayd; dhaadheer)  
1. (*f.mg*) Wax aan jooggiisu gaabnayn  
ahaansho. 2. (*f.mg*) Wax meel fog ku sugan  
ahaansho. 3. (*f.mg*) Waqti muddo la sugayo  
ama la soo dhaafay ahaansho. 4. (*f.g*) Is dh.:  
.. isla mid ahaansho, kisi ahaansho (nambar).

### Aleynikof 2012:

dheer 1) длинный, высокий; глубо-  
кий; 2) далекий, дальний; долгий,  
длительный; 3) громкий; **waxaa**  
**intaas (u)** ~ к тому же, кроме того

## wanaagsan

Ingen information ges.

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

wanaagsan *f.mg4* (-naa, -nayd) 1. Wax wanaag leh ahaansho. 2. Ku w.: wax, wax gaar ah ku habboon ahaansho.

**akhri**

**Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:**

**akhriday / akhrisay**

akhri *f.g1/2* (-iyay, -iday/-isay; -iyi) Erayo ama weedho qoran daalacasho ama kor ugu dhawaaqid.

**bax**

**Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:**

**akhri**

**akhriyid-da = akhriyi karaa**

**akhrin-ta = akhrin karaa**

**Keenadiid 1976:**

Akhriyid (-da) — Erëy ama hadal qoran kicin; ku dhawaaqid; naqid; marin.

**Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:**

akhri *f.g1/2* (-iyay, -iday/-isay; -iyi) Erayo ama weedho qoran daalacasho ama kor ugu dhawaaqid.

**Aleynikof 2012:**

akhrin *читать*

**arag**

**Keenadiid 1976:**

**Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:**

**Aleynikof 2012:**

## bax

Keenadiid 1976:

Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

Aleynikof 2012:

## albaab

Keenadiid 1976:

**Albaab** (-ka) — Dhis laga sameeyey qori, bir, kd., oo marinka irridaha guryaha iyo wixii la mid ah faseexado lagula qabto oo la xiro, oo la furo.

Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**albaab**<sup>1</sup> *m.l* (-bbo/-byo *m.db*) Bir, loox iwm oo hab gaar ah loo sameeyey oo guryaha irdahooda lagu awdo.

Aleynikof 2012:

**albaab(-ka)** дверь

Aadan, Djibouti 2013:

**albaab -ka**: (magac, lab, keli) meesha laga galo lagana baxo guriga. *Albaabka furahiisii wuu lumay.*  
Dh: kidin, kadin, irrid, afaaf. Wa: albaabo.

Hashi, Jigjiga 1998:

**albaab** -ka : (n) door (*dhoor*) ~ irid.  
*Ex: albaabka ku xiga; the next door*

Zorc, Osman 1993:

**albaab** (-ka) *n2-m* door {Arb}

## ugax

Keenadiid 1976:

**Ugax** (-da) — Jir k̄ankoonsan oo shinbiraha dheddig iyo kalluun iyo halaq iyo cayayaan badani dhaalaan, waxaana ku gudajira abuur yar iyo wuxuu ku noolaan lahaa taniyo intuu ka koro oo qolofa ku rogan uu ka soo baxo; ukun.

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**ugax**<sup>1</sup> *m.dh.u* (-gxaan, *m.dh*) 1. Shay k̄akoonsan, qolof adag oo ay dhasho nafleyda inta aan naasleyda ahayn, oo uu ku jiro abuurka ilmaha iyo nafaqadii korin lahayd; ukun. 2. Unug dheddig oo ka soo go'a ugxiyaha naasleyda dheddig oo marka uu bacrimiyo unugmaniga labi ilmo ka abuurmaan.

**ugax**<sup>2</sup> *m.dh* (**ugxanno**, *m.dh*) (*baay.*) Unug taran oo qaangadh ah oo laga helo xayawaanka dheddig, kaasi oo uu saaroo ugxansiduhu.

### Aadan, Djibouti 2013:

**ugax**<sup>1</sup> -da: (magac, dhedig, keli) eeg ugac.

**ugax**<sup>2</sup> -da: (magac, dhedig, keli) unug taran oo qaangadh ah oo laga helo xayawaanka dheddig, kaasi oo uu saaroo ugxansiduhu.

**nacas**

### Keenadiid 1976:

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

### Aleynikof 2012:

**gacan**

### Keenadiid 1976:

**Gacan** — 1. (-ka) a) Xubin dhuun la moodo oo madaxa maroodiga ka lallaadda: waa sankii iyo bushintii kore oo isku samaysmay, wuxuuna isku darsaday xoog iyo jiljileec; docda kore waa adayg qallafsan gudo-ujeeddaduna waa wax jilicsan; Maroodigu wuxuu karaa inuu geed weyn gacankiisa ku jebiyo, dhinaca kalena, wax yar, sida xabbad digir ah oo kale, uu ku qaado. b) Biyo jiidan oo ama bad ka dillaaca ama biyo kale, oo dhulka engegan dhex gala. c) (qalab, weel) meel soo baxsan oo gacanta lagu qabto. 2. (-ta) (oogada dadka) xubinta qarqarka ka bilaabata oo faraha ku dhammaata oo ay ka mid yihiin cududda, xusulka, dhudhunka, sacabka...

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

**gacan**<sup>1</sup> *m.l* (-ammo/-nno, *m.dh*) Khoori.  
**gacan**<sup>2</sup> *m.l* (-ammo/-nno, *m.dh*) (*xis.*) Xarriiq toosan ee ka timaada xuddunta kuna dhammaata bar ku taalla meeriska goobada ama fogaanta ka bilaabata xuddunta kubbad, kuna dhammaata bar ku taal dusha kubbadda.  
**gacan**<sup>3</sup> *m.dh* (-cmo, *m.l*) 1. Xubinta faraha leh ee dadka wax ku qabsado. 2. Xubin dheer, madaxa maroodiga ka laallaadda oo uu wax ku qabsado kana neefsado. 3. Dhegta weelasha iwm.

### Aleynikof 2012:

**gacan(-ka)** 1) залив; 2) хобот;  
 3) ручка, рукоятка, поручень; подлокотник  
**gacan(-ta)** 1) рука; 2) стрелка;  
 3) радиус; ~ **ka geysasho** помогать в чём-л.; ~ **isula tegid** подражаться; ~ **ku dhigid** арестовать, задержать; ~ **siin** помогать; ~ ~ **bay dhaqdaa, wadajirna wejigay dhaqaan.** Рука руку моет, а обе руки — лицо (*посл.*)

### Hashi, Jigjiga 1998:

**gacan** -ta: (n) 1. arm (*aarm*); hand (*heendh*). 2. -ka: gulf (*golf*); peninsula (*panin·sila*); canal (*kenaal*); channel (*jan·nel*). Ex: *Gacanka Suweeyz*; *Suez Canal*; 3. [mathematics] radius (*ree·di·yes*) —**ka gacan sarreeya**: (*Expresion*) having the upper hand. — **u gacandhaaf** -ay / tay: (v) 1. steal (*istiil*); take property without permission. 2. intrude (*in·turuudh*); interfere (*in·tar·fiir*); meddle (*medhal*) ~ faragalin —**ku gacansayr** -ay / tay: (v) deny firmly, dismiss out of hand; refuse (*rifyuuz*); reject (*ri·jakt*) ~ diidmo qayaxan

### Aadan, Djibouti 2013:

**gacan<sup>1</sup> -ka**: (magac, lab, keli) bad yar oo dhulka soo dhexgashan.

**gacan<sup>2</sup> -ka**: (magac, lab, keli) addinka dheer ee maroodiga xagga hore ka laallaada oo ah tuunbo uu biyaha ku soo nuugo, geeda ku gurto kana neefsado oo xoog badan. *Maroodigu gacankiisa ayuu dhirta ku jehebiyaa.*

**gacan<sup>3</sup> -ta**: (magac, dhedig, keli) labada addin ee sare ee uu dadku leeyahay mid ka mid ah. *Gacanta midig wax ku cun.*

### Zorc, Osman 1993:

**gacan<sup>1</sup>** (-ta Pl: gacmo (/ha)) n3·f hand, arm; [ext.] radius [mathematics] Ex: Gacmaha madaxa saar! 'Put your hands up!'

**gacan<sup>2</sup>** (-ka Pl: gacanno ~ gacammo (/da)) n2·m elephant's trunk

**gacan<sup>3</sup>** (-ka) n2·m peninsula; channel for water, bay, inlet, gulf Ex: Gacanka Carbeed 'the Arabian Peninsula'

ii

### Keenadiid 1976:

### Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:

### Aleynikof 2012:

**dheg****Keenadiid 1976:**

**Dheg** (-ta) — 1. Xubinta oogada ku taal oo dhawaaqa, yeerta iyo shanqarta qabata oo garata; xubiuta maqalka; dhegta dadku waxay u qaybsantaa saddex meelood oo mid waliba hawlo gaar ah qabato; dheg soke, dheg dhexe iyo dheg shishe. 2. (weel, qalab, kd.) meelo sida dhegta soo baxsan oo la qabto ama

wax kale tara; carrab. 3. Magac wanaagsan; caannimo; sharaf.

**Puglielli & Mansuur 2012:**

**dheg**<sup>1</sup> *m.dh* (-gō, *m.l*) 1. Xubinta maqalka nafleyda. 2. Hilqadaha haweenku isku qurxiyaan ee dhegaha dacalkooda surtaan middood. 3. Weel, qalab iwm meesha la qabto si loo qaado ama loo jiido. 4. Magac wanaagsan; caannimo; sharaf. 5. Shebeg lakabyo isa saaran ah, xanjo ka samaysan oo ay shinnidu malabka ku keydsato, ilmahana gashato.

**Aadan, Djibouti 2013:**

**dheg**<sup>1</sup>: (fal) «ku ~» meel sida xanjada ugu nabmid.  
**dheg**<sup>2</sup> -ta: (magac, dhedig, keli) xubinta dareenka maqalka; lixaad maqalka.  
**dheg**<sup>3</sup> -ta: (magac, dhedig, keli) wax kaste oo uu dumarku dhegaha sudho oo isku qurxiyo. *Dheg keliya oo luul ka samaysan ayay Aamina gashantahay.* **Dh**: wisaakhyo, hilqad.

**Hashi, Jigjiga 1998:**

**dheg** -ta: (n) 1. ear (*iyar*). 2. earring (*ii-ringi*); earbob (*iyar-baab*) ~ dhego. 3. handle (*han-dhel*). 4. **ku dheg** -ay / tay: (v) hold on; cling (*kiling*); stick fast; stand firm ~ ku adkeyso



# Unit 9

## Modernisation of the vocabulary

## Unit 9. Modernisation of the vocabulary

The development and expansion of the Somali vocabulary with words within new domains started in a more serious manner with the introduction of radio stations in Hargeysa in 1943 (1941?) and in Mogadishu in 1951 ([references](#)). Especially the news production needed to decide about what words to use when reporting about, e.g., politics, economy, technology and medicine. In the radio stations it was above all the terminology that started to be developed and standardised, but of course also all other sides of Somali became more uniform at the radio stations in a general sense. There is a whole [book in English](#) that tells the story of the emerging Somali radio stations.

The next step in the development and standardisation of the vocabulary was taken when different theatre groups were established and started to perform plays in Somali in the 1940s and 1950s. Here it was rather the general vocabulary that was developed, stabilised and unified. There is also a whole [book in Somali](#) about the early Somali theatres.

Furthermore, there are two doctoral dissertations that investigate the modern development of the Somali vocabulary. [Modernization and standardization in Somali press writing](#) (Hared 1992) is more general and it investigates different sides of the language, also grammar and spelling, while [The modernisation of Somali vocabulary](#) (Caney 1984) focuses completely on the development of the vocabulary.

Thanks to the Somali radio, a relatively large vocabulary developed already before written Somali was introduced as the country's official language in January 1973. When Somali was made the official language of Somalia, a large part of the vocabulary developed by the radio speakers could be used also in writing.

Hence, the development of a standardised and modernised Somali vocabulary started already when Somali radio broadcasting was

introduced in 1943 (Hared 1992: 112). Before the radio era, Somali hadn't had a developed vocabulary for, e.g., politics and economy. There was no clear language planning drawn up for the radio stations. The speakers and journalists simply made their own decisions and they simply did the best they could. They also cooperated closely with poets who were also hired by the radio stations to broadcast traditional Somali oral poetry.

Already early on, the language strategy at Radio Mogadishu and Radio Hargeysa was to avoid loanwords and instead create purely Somali words and expressions. This was done to make it easier for the listeners to follow. It was believed that a large number of loanwords would make it harder for listeners who had no schooling. At the same time, there was a sense of national pride and aspirations for national independence, which also strengthened the patriotic pride in the Somali language.

As the vocabulary continued to develop after the official introduction of the written language in 1972, the patterns already established by radio journalists was followed when creating new words.

## The language used by authorities after 1972

Mohamed (1976) reports that employees at Somali authorities generally had no difficulties starting to write in Somali. Initially, they often formulated themselves through direct translation from English or Italian, but after just a few months, they had developed a new independent Somali language usage within the administration.

The number of letters from the public to the authorities increased noticeably after Somali was introduced as the official language. Initially, the letters were clumsily written, but after just a couple of years, it could be noticed how the public began to adopt the style in letters from the authorities in their own writing.

In oral communication, it can be advantageous to repeat oneself and express the same content in several different ways to ensure that the

message is conveyed and understood correctly. In writing, however, it is important to express oneself concisely and clearly. However, it requires quite a bit of practice in writing to use a compressed sentence structure. It also requires an established vocabulary that makes it possible to express abstract ideas concisely. Traditionally, it had been necessary to use longer, more descriptive phrases, but with new words, the texts could become shorter.

For example, with the new word **lataliye** the sentence

**Wasiirku wuxuu la kulmay ninka siyaasadda kala taliya madaxweynaha Masar.**

could be condensed to the more refined

**Wasiirku wuxuu la kulmay lataliyaha siyaasadda madaxweynaha Masar.**

## Standardisation of orthography and vocabulary

According to Hared (1992: 158), it was a deliberate choice by the political leadership to avoid overly directing the standardisation of the language. They hoped to gain greater acceptance for the language by allowing some freedom in the spelling and use of words that were perceived as rooted in regional usage. At the same time, they hoped that the language would spontaneously standardise through actual use. Unfortunately, the variation in vocabulary and spelling remained quite significant in some areas. It was not until the late 1980s that the Somali Academy of Culture decided to initiate standardisation work regarding terminology. Unfortunately, this decision came so late that it was never implemented before the collapse of the state.

In retrospect, however, Hared (1992: 159) argues that one can conclude that the spontaneous standardisation of Somali was quite extensive. The variation was (and is) particularly noticeable in the spelling of the following sounds:

- **r/dh**: Already in the early 1970s, <r> was used somewhat more often than <dh>, but <r> became even more common over time.
- **aw/ow**: Here, <aw> was most common in the early 1970s, but <ow> became dominating in the late 1980s, e.g., **dhow (dhaw)**.
- **ay/ey**: In the early 1970s, <ey> was much more common than today, but over time, <ay> has become clearly the most common in most words, e.g.

**qayb (qeyb), samayn (sameyn).**

– **q/kh**: e.g.

**qamri/khamri, akhri/aqri...**

– **i/e/a** in certain words, t.ex.

**diyaarad/dayaarad, dibed/debed, tegay/tagay, webi/wabi,  
weji/waji, dhag/dheg**

– **OPEN, SOLID or HYPHENATED** writing of compounds, e.g.

**biyo dhac, biyodhac, biyo-dhac,  
biya dhac, biyadhac, biya-dhac.**

Hared (1992: **page**) reports that solid compounds were dominant in the early 1970s, but that open compounds written as separate words became increasingly common during the 1970s and 1980s. In particular, prepositions in various types of compounds are often written separately.

Additionally, contractions of subject pronouns with the preceding word, such as **wuxuu**, became gradually less common in written texts during the 1970s and 1980s, and separately written words, like **waxa uu**, became increasingly common instead.

## The four strategies

---

To create the necessary vocabulary, four main strategies were applied [cf. Josephsson: Språkpolitik]:

1. Uncommon words (archaic, dialectal) were given a new meaning.
2. Common words were given a more specific meaning.
3. Words were borrowed from other languages.
4. Completely new words and expressions, **neologisms**, were created.

### 1. Uncommon words with a new meaning

---

Less common, older, or dialectal words were introduced with a **new meaning**, for example,

**agaasime** *the one who takes care of livestock > director, manager,*

**agaasime guud** *director general,*

**dhaqaale** *management of livestock and property > economy, economics*

**isir** *ancestors, origin > factor (mathematics)*

**dhidib** *supporting pillar > axis (mathematics, physics)*

### 2. Words with a new, more specific meaning

---

Common words with everyday meanings began to be used in a new and much **more specific sense**. Many times, these new words thereby developed into terms.

**ilaaliye**

**warbixin**

**xagal** *back of the knee > angle (geometry)*

**kormeere** *controller > inspector (in police, military or finances)*

### 3. Foreign borrowings

---

Sources: Zaborski 1967 (ar.), Mioni 1988 (eng., it.)

Words were borrowed from other languages. For historical reasons, there are particularly many Arabic words in Somali, but also quite a few English and some Italian words.

**arji** *ansökan* från arabiskans *rajaa*,  
**wasiir** *minister* från arabiskans *waziir*,  
**xafiis** *kontor* från engelskans *office*,  
**makiinad** *maskin* från italienskans *macchina*.

There are many types of borrowings. The following types are based on an article by Petzell (2005) with the title *Expanding the Swahili vocabulary*.

### **A. Loanwords.**

i) Loanwords that have not been fully adapted to the structure of Somali. Often called **foreign words**.

**atam, Islaam:** Somali words do not normally end in /m/.

ii) Different degrees of adjustment to the Somali sound system.

A Somali syllable can only begin and end with a maximum of one consonant. Within words, this means that a maximum of two consonants can occur between two vowels. Borrowing words that violate these principles almost always leads to an adaptation by adding a vowel. Sometimes a consonant may be omitted instead.

**ambalaas** *ambulance*: /n/ is omitted because Somali does not allow two consonants at the end of a word.

**filin** *film*: insertion of /i/ to avoid two final consonants, change to /n/ since /m/ is not allowed at the end of words.

**wiig** *week*: phonetic spelling with <ii> and Somali spelling with <g> at the end of the word instead of <k>.

**isbeerbaadh** *spare part*, **baarashuud** *parachute*, **jeeg** *check*, **Iswiidhan** *Sweden*, **kombiyuutar** *computer*.

Words in foreign languages that begin or end with more than one consonant thus pose a pronunciation challenge for Somali speakers.

Somali does not have a /p/ or /v/. In loanwords, /b/ and /f/ are usually used instead, e.g.

**boolis** *police*, **fayras** *virus*.

### **B. Loan-blends**

A Somali morpheme and a borrowed morpheme are combined into one word.

Derivation: borrowed root + Somali affix

**tagsiile** *taxi driver*

**nidaamdarro**, **nidaamla'aan** *chaos, disorder*

Compounding: a Somali root is combined with a borrowed root

**gacangarnaydh** *hand grenade*

### **C. Extension**

The meaning of an already existing Somali word is changed so that the word gets a wider meaning under the influence of a corresponding word in another language.

**dheef** *nutrition, nourishment* > *financial profit, interest*

**tartame** *competitor in a game* > *professional, business competitor*

### **D. Calques or translation loans**

A Somali word or expression is formed with Somali morphemes based on a model found in another language, e.g.

**beeraqoon** *agronomy*, **beeryaqaan** *agronomist*, **lacag adag** *hard currency*, **midnimo** *unity*, **gumeysi cusub** *new colonialism*



## 4. Neologisms

**Completely new words** were created from existing Somali words, either through **derivation** with affixes, or through **compounding**, or through combining two or more words into a **phrase**.

### DERIVATIONS

#### *Derivations with suffixes.*

**ganacsi** 'handel, affärer' < **ganac** 'något som är till salu'  
**gujis** *submarine*  
 (därför att man trodde att den gör hål i fartyg underifrån)

### IMPORTANT TYPES OF DERIVATION WITH SUFFIXES

#### *Abstract nouns*

Many words for abstract notions were created by adding different suffixes to root morphemes, e.g.

Noun root with the suffix **–nimo**

**midnimo, gobannimo, madaxnimo**

Noun root with the suffix **–tooyo**

**madaxtooyo**

Verb root with the suffix **–aan**

**go'aan, kacaan,**

Verb root with the suffix **–ti**

**karti, aragti,**

Verb root with the suffix **–aal**

**qoraal,**

Verb root with the suffix **–is**

**talis, cadaadis**

Verb root with the suffix **–mo/me**

**degmo, dhismo**

Adjective root with the infix **–ay–**

**bisayl, adayg, jacayl,**

Adjective root with the suffix **–aan**

**adkaan, sinnaan, deggannaan, dhisnaan,**

Adjective root with the suffix **–i**

**adki**

### *Verbal nouns (magac-faleedyo)*

These nouns denote the action itself. They are created by adding suffixes such as

**–ad**      **xoogsad, hantigoosad,**

**–id**      **dhisid, kicid,**

**–is**      **baaris, qoris,**

**–n**      **xoojin, kicin, ilaalin, adkeyn, midayn,**

**–sho**      **waxbarasho, booqasho,**

**–iin**      **qorriin, qalliin,**

**–aad**      **fisiraad, cabiraad,**

**–itaan**      **furitaan, baaritaan**

### *Agent nouns*

These nouns denote persons who carry out a certain action or have a certain function.

The suffixes **–e**, **–le**, **–low**, **–yahan** are used to denote an individual person that carries out an activity. The suffix **–e** can be added to simple root morphemes as well as compounds. Collective groups of agents are denoted through the use of the suffixes **–to/–so**, **–ley**, but the very same suffixes may also denote an individual female agent.

Masculine agent nouns:

- e**      **bare, duuliye, maamule, ganacsade, kalkaaliye, adeege, jaalle, madaxweyne, xeeldheere**
- le**      **xiddigle, beenaale,**
- low**    **beenlow,**
- yahan** **aqoonyahan, dagaalyahan,**

Feminine agent nouns:

- ad**      **macallimad, dhakhtarad**
- ley**      **dawaarley**
- to/–so** **kalkaaliso, gargaarto, adeegto**

Collective agent nouns

- to/–so** **ganacsato, xoogsato, kalluumaysato,**
- ley**      **beeraley**

### *Derivations with prefixes*

The Somali prefixes used for word formation mostly coincide with small grammatical words like prepositions and pronouns.

**isku****jir** ‘mix, mixture’

## COMPOUNDS

A new word is formed by combining two (or more) root morphemes, mainly noun, adjective or verb roots.

**dayax-gacmeed** ‘satellite’

**biyo-xidh** ‘dam’

**sarrif-dhac** ‘devaluation’

**maal-gelin** ‘investment’

**dheelli-tir** ‘balance, equilibrium’

**ban-dhig** ‘exhibitor’

**barasho-deeq** *stipend* from **barasho** *learning* and **deeq** *support*,

**cudur-sheeg** *diagnosis* from **cudur** *illness* and **sheeg** *tell*,

**xoghaye** *secretary* from **xog** *secret* and **haye** *holder*.

**halbeeg** *island*, **isle'eg**, **wadajir**, **ujeeddo**, **kalasarrayn**, **iskaashijacayl**, **hirgelin**, **horusocodnimo**, **dhexdhexaadnimo**, **wasiirkuxigeen**, **dhiigmiirad**, **kaqaybgalid**, **isafgarad**, **kahortegid**, **halkudheg**, **midabkalasooc**, **waxsoosaar**, **sicirbarar**, **maalgelin**, **midabtakoor**, **nabadsugid**, **gobannimodoon**, **aqoondarro**, **magaalamadaxnimo**

## PHRASES or MULTI WORD EXPRESSIONS

New concepts may also quite often be expressed through a combination of two independent words.

**cilmiga dhalashada** ‘obstetrics’

**ciidanka badda** ‘fleet’

## Special cases

Sometimes new expressions in Somali are based on similar expressions in other languages that have been translated of “borrowed”. This kind of new concepts are called calques or **loan translations**, e.g.

**kubbadda cagta** *football*

Ibland blandas somaliska och lånade element i samma nybildade ord eller begrepp. Man brukar kalla denna typ av nybildningar för **hybridbildningar**, t.ex.

arabisk och somaliska:

**wasiirkuxigeen**

**cilmiga dhalashada**

## Several words for the same concept

---

The development of new words has often led to two different competing words for the same concept. In some cases, there is a loanword and one or more purely Somali words. Hared (1992: 110ff.) discusses how the lack of clear language planning for Somali often led to the emergence of new purely Somali words even though there were already borrowed or native terms. During the 1970s and 1980s, many loanwords were replaced with native Somali words without this really being a clear goal and without any political direction.

**warside/wargeys/jariidad,**

**kacaan/tawri/tawrad,**

**raasamaali/hantigoosato/hantigoosad/hantigoosi,**

**baayacmushtar/ganacsi,**

**khabiir/aqoonyahan,**

**cadaalad/qarsoor**

Sometimes there were also two different competing Somali compounds, e.g.

**iskaashi/waxwadaqabsi**

**wadajir/iskuduubnaan**

**koruqaadis/sareuqaadis**

**aqoonla'aan/aqoondarro**

**mahadnaq/mahadcelin**

**horumar/horukac**

Furthermore, formations with competing roots or competing suffixes also occurred, e.g.

**xornimo/gobannimo/madaxbannaani**

**waxqabsi/waxqabad/waxqbasho**

**hanuunid/hanuunis/hanuunin**

**sugid/sugis/sugitaan**

**baarid/baaris/baaritaan**

## The fate of loanwords

A particular problem was the question of international words. Should they be borrowed into Somali or should corresponding words be created based on the native Somali vocabulary? According to Hared (1992: [page](#)), during the 1970s and 1980s, there was a clear tendency to abandon loanwords in favor of newly created Somali words. The following table from the same source shows the frequency of different words in a small newspaper corpus.

		<u>1973-74</u>	<u>1977-1978</u>	<u>1989</u>
(1)	Jariidad 'newspaper'	0.87%	0%	0%
	Wargeys "	99.13%	100%	100%
(2)	tawrad 'revolution'	12.53%	1.02%	0%
	kacaan "	87.47%	98.98%	100%
(3)	Raasamaali 'capitalism'	1.03%	0%	0%
	Hantigoosad "	85.64%	50%	0%
	Hantigoosi "	13.33%	50%	100%
(4)	horumar 'progress'	87.73%	95.24%	96.53%
	horukac "	12.27%	4.76%	3.47%

## 9. Exercises

### 9.1 General questions

---

1. What four strategies were particularly common in the 1970s for establishing new Somali words needed in modern society?
2. Why were new words created rather than using loanwords in the 1970s and 1980s?
3. Where did the tradition of creating new words instead of using loanwords come from?
4. Mohamed Hared argues that the authorities in the 1970s deliberately avoided formulating clear rules for some elements in spelling. Why did they do this?
5. For which sounds in particular was the spelling not regulated?
6. From which three languages do most loanwords in Somali come?
7. What is the most common source language for loanwords in Somali?
8. What is meant by a calque (translation loan)?

### 9.2 New words in Somali

---

Try to find words in the following lists that are:

- loanwords that are not adapted to the Somali sound system,
- loanwords that are adapted to the Somali sound system,
- calques (translation loans),
- new Somali words formed with a suffix,
- new Somali words that are compounds,
- new Somali concepts consisting of multiple words (MWE),
- old Somali words that have acquired a new meaning.

## Barbaarinta Jirka. Qaamuuska Ereybixinta. Muqdisho1984.

left-footed	bidixle
half-way line	xarriiqda kala badhka
linesman	calan haye
to lob in	xagleyn
penalty-kick mark	calaammada laadka ganaaxa
midfield	bartamaha garoonka
obstruction	xanibaad
off-side	hobsayd
outside left (right)	debedda bidix (midig)
penalty	ganaax (rigoore)
penalty area	bedka ganaaxa
penalty kick	laadka ganaaxa
penalty spot	dhibicda ganaaxa
'policeman' (libero)	ninka bileyska ah
off-side position	goobta hobseedka

long jump	booddada hoose
high jump	booddada sare
triple jump	booddada saddexleyda
pole-vault	booddada qorayga
shot put	dhagax tuurka
discus throw	saxan tuurka
hammer throw	burus tuurka
javelin throw	waran tuurka
decathlon	tobannada

runner	ordaa
running rhythm	jaanta orodka
running style	habka orodka
run-out	dibad orod
section	qayb
medical service	shaqada caafimaadka
"Set"	"Diyaargarow"
shot	toogasho
space between the hurdles	fogaata u dhexeysa haardal-lada
sprint	fagax
standing start	bilowga taagnida
starting blocks	baloogyada bilowga
straight	toos
take-over	dhaafid
water-jump	biyaha laga boodo
wind gauge	cabbiraha dabaysha
take-over zone	goobta laysku dhaafo
to go outside the take-over zone	bannaan uga bixidda goobta laysku dhaafo



## Dizionario italo-somalo-inglese di termini tecnico-scientifici. Padova e Mogadiscio 1987.

uumiyaynta flash ee hoor  
vaporizzazione a flash di un condensato  
(condensate flash)

uumiyayo  
evaporazione  
(evaporation)

uumiyeeye  
evaporatore, vaporizzatore  
(evaporator, vaporizer)

uumiyeeye dhuumo-jiif ah  
evaporatore a tubi orizzontali  
(horizontal-tube evaporator)

uumiyeeye dhuumo-joog-dhaadheer  
evaporatore a tubi verticali lunghi  
(long-tube vertical evaporator)

asse  
dhidib  
(axis)  
a) linea di simmetria di una figura geometrica  
b) in un sistema di coordinate la linea che ne determina una  
c) linea attorno a cui ruota un corpo

assemblaggio  
rakibaad  
(assembly)  
a) unita' comprendente le parti di un dispositivo o di una macchina  
b) atto di unificazione

assorbimento  
uumiyooobid  
(absorption)  
scambio di materia per migrazione dalla fase vapore o gas a quella liquida

atmosfera  
atmosfeer  
(atmosphere)  
involucro gassoso che circonda la terra

atomizzatore  
firdhiye  
(spray nozzle)  
apparecchiatura con la quale un liquido viene suddiviso formando un flusso di piccole gocce

**Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Bayoolaji. Muqdisho 1987.**

Ear	Dheg
Ear drum	Dheg dhexaad
Ear Ossicle	Laf dhegood
Ecdysis	Xuub dhacsi, Qubridasho
Echinodermata	Ikaynodeermaata
Ecological Factor	Samaynta Ikolojiga
Ecology	Ikooloji
Eco species	Sinji degaan
Ecosystem	Habdhis degaan
Ecotype	Degaan Ikooloji
Ectoderm	Dubduleed
Ectoparasite	Dulin duleed
Ectoplast	Balaasma duleed

Pericardium	Xuub wadneed
Pericarp	Gidaar ugxan side
Period	Kal
Periphyte	Berifayt
Peristalsis	Dubaaxis
Permeable	Habe
Permeability	Habid
Perspiration	Dhidid
Petals	Laacayaal
Petiole	Samay caleen
Phagocyte	Ciijiye
Phagocytosis	Ciijin
Phalanges	Faro
Pharynx	Dalqo
Phenotype	Muuq sheeg
Photosynthesis	Fotosentesis
Phototropism	Ifraac
Phylum	Faylam
Physical	Duleed
Physiology	Fisiyooloji
Phytophagous	Cayayaan geedadaaqe
Pigment	Midabside
Pinna	Caroog
Pistil	Ubo-ubax

## Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Fisikis. Muqdisho 1987.

Characteristic curve	Xood Aastaameed
Charge	Saldanab
Charge density	Cufnaan saldanab
Charles law	Xeerka jaarlaa
Chemical constants	Madoorsoomayaal kimikaad
Chemical Energy	Tamar kfiimikaad
Equation of state	Weji isleegeed
Equilibrium	Dheelitiran
Erg	Eerg
Error	Cef
Error, Random	Gef huban
Error, standard	Gef beeggallan
Error systematic	Gef habaysan
Escape velocity	Kaynaan
Ether	Etar
Euclidean geometry	Joomatari yukliidh
Euclidean space	Dululaatiya yukliidh
Evaporation	Umiyow
Exchange	Isweydaari
Excitation	Didin
Excitation energy	Tamar didineed
Excitation potential	Kayd didineed
Excited state	Waji didaan
Exit	Marrin
Exothermic	Kul-bixiye
Expanding universe	Koorka fidaya
Expansion	Fidid
Exponential function	Fansaar jibbaaran
Exposur	Bandhigid
Explosion	Qarax
Extention	Ladh
Extinction	Dabar go'
Eye piece	Qabol-Ileed

## Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Juqraafi. Muqdisho 1987.

Mantle	Carrojiif
Map	Khariidad
Map projection	Khariidad brojakhsaneyn
Map scale	Qiyaas khariidadeed
Maquis	Jidhida dhexe
Marble	Shiil cad
Marine climate	Cimilo badeed
Market	Seylad
Market gardening	Bustaan
Marsh	Biyo fadhis
Meander	Qallooc
Meander belt	Jiidda qalloocan

Canal	Kelli
Cancer tropic	Kulaalaha waqooyi
Canning	Qasacadayn
Canyon	Qow weyn
Cape	Raasi
Cape maquis	Yacayga cimilada badda dhexe
Capital	Hanti
Capricorn	Kulaalaha konfureed
Capture river	Marin maroorsi
Carbonation	Karboonayn
Carbon dioxide	Kaarbondhayoksaydh
Carboniferous period	Waagii dhuxusha
Cardinal points	Afarta jiho
Cariba dam	Biyo xidheenka kaariiba
Cartography	Kaartograafiyada
Cascade	Biyo dhac yar
Cash crops	Dalagyo ganacsi
Cassava	Moxog
Caste system	Qodob bulsho
Cataract	Biyo dhac weyn
Catch crop	Ceed gaab
Catchment basin	Biyo rog
Catena	Carool
Cave	God
Cavern	God weyn
Celestial equator	Badhaha cirka
Celestial sphere	Kubbadda cirka
Celsius scale	Cabbirka sentigraydh
Center of the earth	Xuddunta dhulka
Centri-fugal force	Lid xoog xuddumeed
Cenozoic Era	Waagii senosayka

**Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Xisaab. Muqdisho 1987.**

<b>Correspondence</b>	<b>Aaddanaan</b>
<b>Corresponding</b>	<b>Isku-aaddanannsho</b>
<b>Corresponding angles</b>	<b>Xaglo gudboon</b>
<b>Corresponding sides</b>	<b>Dhinacyo isku aaddan</b>
<b>Cosecant</b>	<b>Kosiikant</b>
<b>Cosine</b>	<b>Kosayn</b>
<b>Cost price</b>	<b>Qiimaha gadasho</b>
<b>Cotangent</b>	<b>Kotaanjant</b>
<b>Count</b>	<b>Tiri</b>
<b>Counter</b>	<b>Tiriye</b>
<b>Counter clockwise</b>	<b>Lid-saacadwareeg</b>
<b>Euclidean algorithm</b>	<b>Algoordimka yuklid</b>
<b>Euclidean geometry</b>	<b>Joometeriga yuklid</b>
<b>Euclidean space</b>	<b>Dulalaatiga yuklid</b>
<b>Evaluate</b>	<b>Qiimee</b>
<b>Even</b>	<b>Dhaban, siman</b>
<b>Even distribution</b>	<b>Kala dhigid siman</b>
<b>Even function</b>	<b>Fansaar dhaban ah</b>
<b>Even number</b>	<b>Tiro dhaban ah</b>
<b>Event</b>	<b>Waqdhac</b>
<b>Event, certain (Sure)</b>	<b>Waqdhac huban</b>
<b>Event, complementary</b>	<b>Waqdhac isqummisa</b>
<b>Event, null (empty)</b>	<b>Waqdhac madhan</b>
<b>Events, independent</b>	<b>Waqdhacyo xor ah</b>
<b>Events, mutually exclusive</b>	<b>Waqdhacyo kala baxsan</b>
<b>Exchange of money</b>	<b>Sarrif, isdhaafsi lacageed</b>
<b>Existential quantifier</b>	<b>Xaddiyeeye jiritaan</b>
<b>Expansion</b>	<b>Fidin</b>
<b>Expansion, binomial</b>	<b>Fidin labatibxaale</b>
<b>Expansion of a determinant</b>	<b>Fidin suge</b>
<b>Expectation</b>	<b>Filitaan</b>
<b>Exponent</b>	<b>Jibbaar</b>
<b>Exponential curve</b>	<b>Xood jibbaar</b>
<b>Exponential equations</b>	<b>Isle'egyo jibbaareed</b>
<b>Exponential function</b>	<b>Fansaar jibbaar</b>
<b>Exterior angle</b>	<b>Xagal dibadeed</b>
<b>External</b>	<b>Dabadeed</b>
<b>External bisector</b>	<b>Kala badhe dibadeed</b>
<b>External point</b>	<b>Bar dibadeed</b>
<b>Extract</b>	<b>Soo saar</b>
<b>Extract a root of a number</b>	<b>Soo saar xiddid tiro</b>

## Study Companion, Sayniska, London 1992

Cellular transformation	=	Doorin unugeed
Cellulose	=	Saliloos
Central nervous system	=	Habdhiska dareenwadka dhexe
Centre of gravity	=	Xudun cufisjiidad
Centrifugal force	=	Lid xoog xudumeed
Centrum	=	Jibsin
Cerebellum	=	Maskax yar
Cervix	=	Xordan luqumeed
Characteristics	=	Astaamo
Charge	=	Danabeyn
Chlorophyl	=	Cagaariye

Facial nerve	=	Dareenside waji
Faeces	=	Saxro, Xaar,
Fallopian tube	=	Dhuunta <i>faloob</i>
Family	=	Bah, Qoys
Fat cells	=	Unugyo xaydheed
Fats	=	Dufan
Femur	=	Bawdo
Fertile soil	=	Carro-san
Fertility	=	Bacrinnimo
Fertilization	=	Bacrimin
Fertilizer	=	Bacrimiye
Fibrous	=	Liifan
Fibula	=	Biixi-yar
Field	=	Badadda, Badka,
Filament	=	Dubaalad, Miiq,
Fins	=	Baalbiyood
Fish	=	Kalluun, Malaay
Flatworm	=	Gooryaan suun
Flea	=	Booddo, Takfi,
Flower	=	Ubax
Flower, bisexual	=	Ubax labeed ah
Flower, pistulate	=	Ubax dhidig
Flower, staminate	=	Ubax lab
Flower, unisexual	=	Ubax hal jinsi ah
Flowering plant	=	Ruqur ubax



## Study Comapnion, Xisaabiya, 1992

Number	Tiro
Natural number	Tirsiimo
Negative number	Tiro taban
Null set	Urur madhan
Number line	Xariiqda tirada
Number sentence	Weedh tiro
Numeral	Asto-tiro
Numerator	Sareeye
Oblique	Janjeedhe
Obtuse angle	Xagal furan
Obtuse-angled triangle	Saddexagal daacsan
Odd number	Tiro kisi ah
One-to-one correspondence	Isku begnaan mid mid ah
Opposite	Ka horjeed

Column	Joogutax
Combination	Racayn
Common	Caadi
Compare	Garab dhigid
Comparison	Xagle sidkan
Compass	Goobeeye
Complementary angles	Isujarid xagleed
Components	Xubno
Composite number	Tiro farcanta
Compound	Iskudhis, tude
Concave	Golxo
Concentric	Isku xudun
Concept	Fikrad
Conclusion	Go'aan
Cone	Toobin
Congruency	Sar go'aan
Congruent triangles	Saddexagallo isku sar go'an
Conjunction	Isku xidhe
Consecutive	Isku xige
Constant	Madoorsame
Continuous	Is-haysta
Contradiction	Isburin
Converse	Rog
Convex	Tuur
Coordinate	Kulan

## Suldaan N. X. Aadan. Qaamuuska ganacsiga, 2008

<b>Work contract</b>	Heshiis shaqo.
<b>Work dispute</b>	Muran hawleed.
<b>Work experience</b>	Khibrad shaqo.
<b>Work inspection</b>	Kormeer shaqo.
<b>Work measurement</b>	Cabbirid shaqo.
<b>Work offer</b>	Shaqo bixin.
<b>Work place</b>	Halka shaqadu ka socoto.
<b>Work safety</b>	Bad-baado shaqo.
<b>Work seeking</b>	Shaqo raadin.
<b>Billboard</b>	Tabeelle (boor ama loox wax lagu xayeysiyo, oo aalaaba lagu dhaji meelaha gawaaridu ama dadku maraan).
<b>Billing</b>	Qoridda waraaqda "Qaan-sheegta".
<b>Binder</b>	Gal ama fayl.
<b>Biweekly</b>	Laba asbuucle ah (laba toddobaadle ah).
<b>Black market</b>	Suuq-madaw.
<b>Black list</b>	Liis madaw (Liiska alaab, dad ama shirkad uusan sharcigu oggalayn).
<b>Blame</b>	Eedeyn.
<b>Blank</b>	Maran/ waxba ku qorneyn.
<b>Blank cheque</b>	Jeeg maran (Jeeg saxiixan oo lacag kasta lagu qoran karo).
<b>Blanket mortgage</b>	Rahan guud.
<b>Bloc</b>	Gaashaan-buur (urur isku mabda' iyo isku dan ah).
<b>Blockage</b>	Cunaqabateyn/xayiraad.
<b>Blocked current account</b>	Xisaab socota oo xayiran.
<b>Blue-collar workers</b>	Shaqaalaha hawlaha hooseee Warshadda qabta. W. L. K. White-collar workers.
<b>Board</b>	Guddi ama wakaalad.
<b>Board of directors</b>	Guddi maamul.
<b>Board room</b>	Qolka shirarka (siiba qolka madaxda shirkada iwm ay ku kulmaan).
<b>Board room battles</b>	Murannada dhex mara maamule-yaasha.
<b>Boarding-pass</b>	Diyaarad-fuul (kaar diyaaradaha lagu fuulo, oo qofkii aan wadan uusan raaci karn). W. L. M. boarding-card.



## Maxamed Xaashi. Eraybixinta caafimaadka, 2017.

<b>Wadne weynaad</b> hjärthypertrofi, hjärtkammarförstoring	<b>Warqad dhakhtar la'aan</b> receptfri
<b>Wadne xanuun</b> hjärtsjukdom	<b>Warqad dhakhtar recept,</b> ordination
<b>Wadnejooksi</b> hjärtstillestånd, hjärtstopp	<b>Warqad dhaktarku u qoro</b> <b>dhakhtar kale ama isbitaal</b> kale remiss
<b>Wadne-roor, wadne-fug</b> hjärtklappning	<b>Wax loo dhinto</b> dödlig, letal
<b>Wadne-wareen</b> hjärtinfarkt	<b>waxyeelada dawooyinka</b> biverkningar
<b>Wagdo</b> hjulbentnet	<b>Weershe, cawar</b> skelning,
<b>Walaf daroogo</b> drogmisbruk	<b>Wejhadda, salaanta</b> pannen
<b>Cillad ilmuhi ku dhasho</b> misbildning	<b>Cudur raagay, gaamuray</b> kronisk sjukdom
<b>Cillad wadneed</b> hjärtfel, <b>cillad wadne oo ilmuhi ku</b> <b>dhasho</b> medfödda hjärtfel	<b>Cudur side</b> smittbärare
<b>Cillad, iin</b> rubbning	<b>Cudur</b> sjukdom
<b>Cirid</b> tandkött	<b>Cudur, bushi</b> sjuk
<b>Coobaha</b> stora halspuls- ården	<b>Cudurka kalagoyska</b> ledsjukdomen
<b>Cubaal, suboosto</b> supp, stolpiller	<b>Cudurka laleemada</b> parkinsons sjukdom
<b>Cudud, jeeni</b> överarm	<b>Cudurrada faafa</b> smittsosam sjukdomar
<b>Cudur aqoonsi</b> diagnos	<b>Cudurrada gooryaanka</b> parasitsjukdomar
<b>Cudur dhimireed iyo</b> <b>jidheed</b> psykosomatisk sjukdom	<b>Cudurrada ku dhaca jidhka</b> organisk, somatiska sjukdom
<b>Cudur gudbin</b> smitta	<b>Cudurrada lagu dhasho</b> medfödda sjukdomar
<b>Cudur gudbiye</b> smittämen	<b>Cudurrada lagu kala qaado</b>

## Alisaid A. Hirsi & Ali A. Nuh. Buugga erey bixinta aqoonta maaddada xisaabta, 2017

<b>Distributor</b>	Qaybiye, kala dhige
<b>Divergent</b>	Firirsan
<b>Divide</b> In math, to determine a number by the process of division	Xisaab ahaan, Soo sooridd habka isu qaybinta tirooyin
<b>Divided bar graph</b>	Xog garaaf qaybeed
<b>Dividend</b> A number to be divided by another	La qaybshe Tiro loo qaybshay mid kale
<b>Dividing line</b>	Xarriiq qaybin
<b>Divisibility</b>	Qaybgalnimo
<b>Divisible</b> Able to be divided without having a remainder	Qaybgal Qaybinta xisaab haraa la'aan

<b>Elliptic function</b>	Qabaal fansaar
<b>Elliptical integral</b>	Qabaal abyooone
<b>Elliptical orbits</b>	Meereyaal qabaal
<b>Elliptical point</b>	Dhibic qabaal
<b>Empty number line</b>	Xarriiq tiro oo maran
<b>Empty set</b>	Urur maran
<b>Endecagon</b>	11 geesle
<b>Endpoint</b>	Bar dhammaad
<b>Enlargement (dilation, zoom)</b>	Weynayn
<b>Ennahedron, nonahedron</b>	9 salxaale
<b>Equal sign =</b> <b>(2=1+1)</b>	Astaan isle'eg = (2=1+1)
<b>Equality</b>	Isle'ekaan
<b>Equally likely outcomes</b>	Saami isle'eg
<b>Equangular polygon</b>	Geesoole xaglo isle'eke
<b>Equate</b>	Isle'ekee
<b>Equation</b>	Isle'eg
<b>Equation</b> A mathematical expression with an equal sign	Isle'eg Waa hawraar xisaabeed oo leh astaan isle'eg
<b>Equation cubic</b>	Isle'eg saddex jibbaaran
<b>Equation differential</b>	Isle'eg xigsineed
<b>Equation evaluation</b>	Isle'eg doorsoome
<b>Equation inconsistent</b>	Isle'eg seegmaweydo
<b>Equation linear</b>	Isle'eg toosan
<b>Equation matrix</b>	Isle'eg taxane
<b>Equation of a straight line</b>	Isle'eg xarriiq toosan

## 9. Suggested solutions

### 9.1 General questions

---

1. The four strategies were:

- a. Reviving older Somali words that had fallen out of use, giving them new meanings.
- b. Giving common words a new and narrower meaning.
- c. Borrowing words from other languages.
- d. Creating entirely new words based on existing Somali roots, both by derivation and compounding.

2. New words were preferred over borrowed words to make it easier for the population to understand the meanings of new words and concepts. There was also a desire to preserve and strengthen the Somali linguistic and cultural identity.

3. This tradition comes from the first radio stations that opened in Hargeysa as early as the 1940s, and in Mogadishu in the 1950s.

4. Hared argues that the authorities in the 1970s deliberately avoided formulating clear rules for certain parts of the spelling to avoid creating conflicts over details in the spelling that could be perceived as favoring one part of the population over another. Instead, the authorities were hoping for the natural development of the language towards a spontaneous standardisation.

5. This mainly applies to the spelling of sounds that could be represented in multiple ways, such as certain consonants and vowels, above all r/dh, aw/ow, ay/ey.

6. Most loanwords come from Arabic, followed by English, and in third place, Italian. There are also a few loans from Persian, Swahili and languages of India.

7. A calque (translation loan) means taking a word in a foreign language as a model. Instead of borrowing the word, it is translated part by part (or

morpheme by morpheme), e.g., *pre-posi-tion* -> Somali *hor-yaal-e*, or *skyscraper* -> Swedish *skyskrapa*.

## 9.2 New words in Somali

---

### **Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Bayoolaji. Muqdisho 1987.**

habdhis deegaan - MWE (compound + derivation), purely Somali

qubridasho, xuubdhacsi (compounds), purely Somali

balaasma-dul-**eed** (loan-blend) compounding+derivation

### **Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Fisikis. Muqdisho 1987.**

kiimiko -> kiimik-aad, loanword with Somali derivation

tamarkiimik**aad**ka (loan-blend)

saldanab (compound)

xeerka Jaarlas (adapted to Somali phonology)

### **Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Juqraafi. Muqdisho 1987.**

carrojiif (compound)

khariidad (loan from Arabic)

brojakshaneyn (partially adapted borrowing with Somali derivation)

bustaan (loanword, Persian: *bu* – 'smell', *stan* – 'place')

### **Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee Xisaab. Muqdisho 1987.**

Many loans that have been adapted to Somali phonology

atam, not adapted, final /m/

### **Study Companion, Sayniska, London 1992**

maskax-da yar (MWE: noun + adjective)

maskaxyar-ta (compound)

xordanluqumeed-ka (compound)

cagaariye

dheg dhexaad – middle ear / eardrum?

reeme – small drum > eardrum (old word used in a new way)

# Unit 10

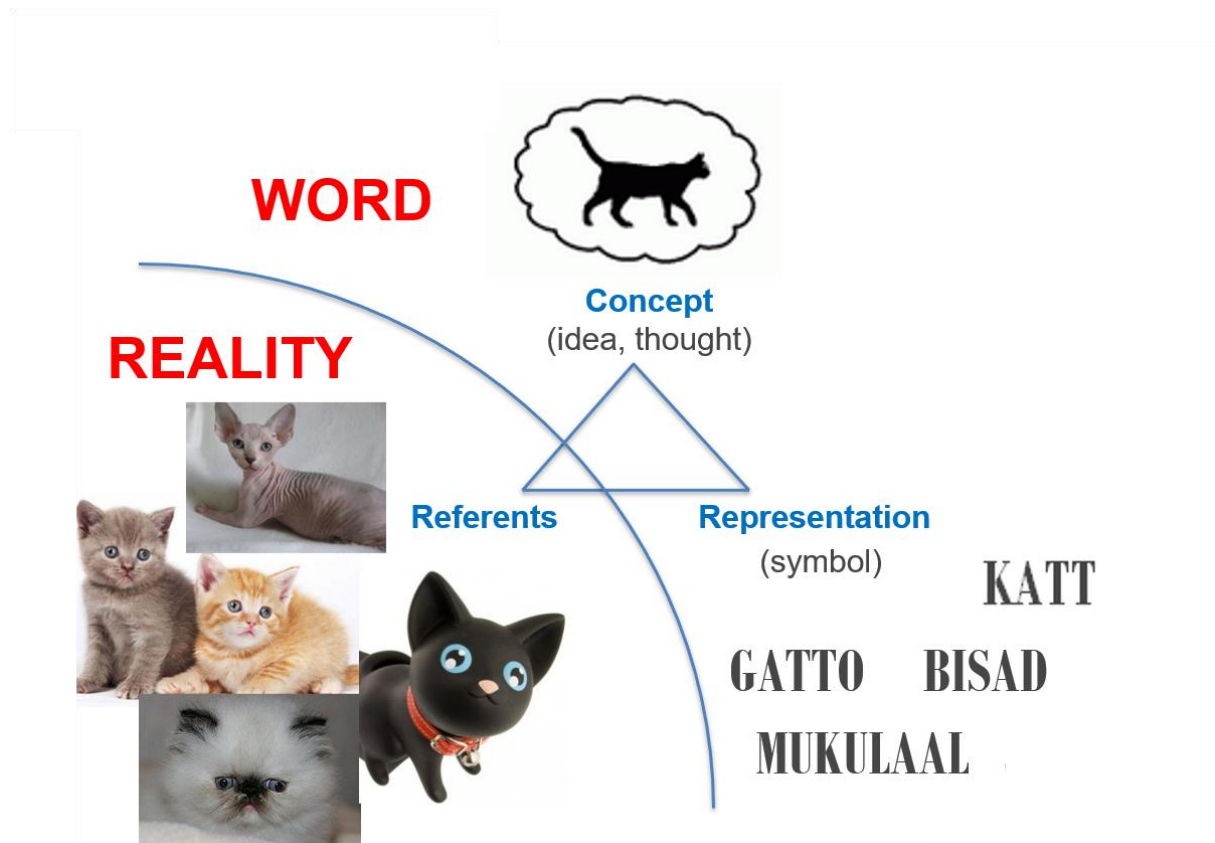
## Terminology

## Unit 10. Terminology

In various professional fields and sciences, there are many words that are especially important for discussing that particular subject area and ensuring that everyone understands each other without problems, so that no errors or misunderstandings arise. Such words that are particularly important within a certain subject area are usually called **TERMS**. The study of such words is called **TERMINOLOGY**.

*So, what is the difference between an ordinary word and a term?*

An ordinary word in the language is thought to consist of the following components.



In reality, there are many objects that can look a bit different but are still considered a “cat.” All these objects are called **REFERENTS**.



At the same time, there is an image in our minds of what a “normal” occurrence of such an object should look like. This image is usually referred to as a **CONCEPT**.

Finally, there is the word itself as it is pronounced and written in a certain language. This is usually called the word’s **REPRESENTATION**.

If we take the ordinary word *chair*, different people may have different opinions about which referents (real-life objects) can actually be called a *chair*. What do you think about the following referents? Are they all *chairs*?



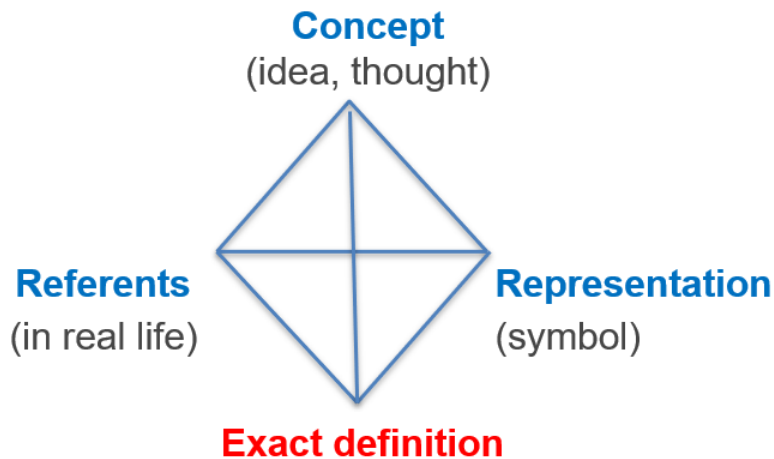
The fact that not everyone agrees on what exactly constitutes a *chair* is because words in everyday language do not have **EXACT** definitions. Naturally, we have a quite good idea of the meanings of words, but sometimes one can be uncertain about what a particular object should be called.

When it comes to **TERMS**, it is different. The most important characteristic of a term is that it always has an **EXACT DEFINITION**. This definition is established in a specific context, by a certain group of people working



together in a particular field where it is important that everyone knows exactly what is meant by a certain term.

## TERM



When working with language and grammar, it is important to agree on, for example, what a **VERB** is. A good definition is that a verb is “a word that is conjugated in different tenses.” With this definition, one never needs to hesitate about what constitutes a verb. For example, the word **waa** cannot be a verb in Somali because it cannot be conjugated in the past, present, and future tenses.

Sometimes, the same word can be both a common, general word in everyday language and a term in professional or scientific language. In such cases, it is actually a matter of two different words that are homonyms of each other. They are pronounced and written the same way, but they mean different things.

This is the case with the Somali word **magac**. As a general language word, it corresponds to the Swedish *namn* and the English *name*, but as a linguistic term, **magac** must be translated into Swedish as *substantiv* and into English as *noun*.

<b>magac 1</b> (common word)	Sw. <i>namn</i>	En. <i>name</i>
<b>magac 2</b> (linguistic term)	Sw. <i>substantiv</i>	En. <i>noun</i>
<b>magac gaar ah</b> (linguistic term)	Sw. <i>egennamn</i>	En. <i>proper noun</i>

The word *name* is not a term at all in English; instead, the term *proper noun* is used, while the corresponding term in Swedish is *egennamn*.

As shown in the table above, a term can consist of one or more words. All the Swedish terms in the table consist of only one word, while one of the Somali and one of the English terms consists of multiple words.

If you do not know the definition, it can often be very difficult to understand what a term actually means. This is likely the case for most people with the linguistic term **magac**. If you do not know what it denotes, you are likely to be misled by the meaning you know from the word **magac** in everyday communication. The Swedish term *substantiv* is not tricky in the same way, as it really sounds like a term and has no other meaning. If you do not know what *substantiv* means, you most probably realize that you need to find out.

Another example comes from healthcare administration, where statistics are kept on the number of patient visits. In that context, the word *visit* becomes a term that must be given an exact definition so that all staff count the number of visits in exactly the same way.

Ordinary people, on the other hand, probably very rarely think about the exact meaning of the word *visit*.

In conclusion, one can say that all terms are words, but only certain words are terms, namely only those words that have an exact definition within a specific subject area.

## Terminology & Language Policy

Creating a unified terminology for a language is no easy task. Often, there are different professionals or researchers within the same field who prefer

different terms for the same concept. Additionally, it can happen that the same term is used for different concepts. It is not uncommon for the same term to have slightly different meanings in different subject areas.

To create order among the terms in a language, a thorough mapping is first needed, followed by some guidance through a language policy organization that recommends the terms with the best potential, for example, because they are the most common, shortest, clearest, etc.

Existing Somali terms from the 1970s have often been forgotten and replaced by loanwords. An inventory of all terms would be an important task for developing Somali terminology in various fields. When there is a large amount of material from a comprehensive inventory, language policy makers and subject matter experts can together create a database and/or dictionary where they recommend the terms they consider to work best. It is also desirable to provide arguments for the choices made.

The need for an organization that works with language policy in the field of terminology is therefore great. Such work is very important for general societal development and for the systematic use of terms in education. Glossaries or, even better, an online database with definitions of terms and translations into other languages would be of great use.

For Swedish, such work has been done at the Technical Nomenclature Center (Tekniska nomenklaturcentralen, 1941-2000) and the Terminology Center (Terminologicentrum, 2000-2018). Since 2019, the responsibility has been transferred to the non-profit association [Terminologifrämjandet](#). Their work is documented in the database [Rikstermbanken](#).

For Somali, there is no extensive inventory of the terminology in the texts that exist in various specialized fields. However, such an inventory would be necessary in order to compile terminology glossaries of the terms that are actually in use.

There are, however, some smaller terminology glossaries in a number of scientific fields, but the question is how reliable these glossaries are, whether they really reflect the terminology used today, the terminology used in Somali textbooks, or whether the lists are based on the terminology that the glossary authors themselves wanted to establish.

Below is a list of some glossaries, some of which are available in Arcadia at Università Roma Tre:

- Guddiga Af Soomaaliga. 1972. *Ereybixinta Ganacsiga*.
- Guddiga Af Somaliga. 1972. *Eraybixinta af Somaliga ee hawlaha wasaradaha*. [PDF](#)
- 1984. *Barbaarinta jirka: Qaamuuska ereybixinta*. [PDF](#)
- 1987. *Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee fisikis*. [PDF](#)
- 1987. *Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee bayoolaji*. [PDF](#)
- 1987. *Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee juqraafi*. [PDF](#)
- 1987. *Qaamuuska eray-bixinta ee kimistari*. [PDF](#)
- 1987. *Qaamuuska eray bixinta ee xisaab*. [PDF](#)
- Barkhadle. 1990. *Flora of Somalia: Somali plant names dictionary. Qaamuuska magacyada dhirta soomaaliyeed*. [PDF](#)
- 1992. *Study companion word list: Geography. Taxanaha erayadda: Juqraafi. English-Somali/Soomaali-Ingriis*.
- 1992. *Study companion word list: Mathematics. Taxanaha erayadda: Xisaab. English-Somali/Soomaali-Ingriis*.
- 1992. *Study companion word list: Science. Eraybixinta: Saynis. English-Somali/Soomaali-Ingriis*.
- 1992. *Study companion word list: Social studies. Taxanaha erayadda: Cilmilga bulshada. English-Somali/Soomaali-Ingriis*.
- 1992. *Study companion word list: Technology. Taxanaha erayadda: Teknooloji. English-Somali/Soomaali-Ingriis*.
- Sooyaan. 1993. *Buugga erayada caafimaadka, Sjukvårdsterminologi, Iswiidhish-Soomaali, Soomaali-Iswiidhish, Soomaali-Ingiriis, svensk-somalisk, somalisk-svensk, somalisk-engelsk*.
- Hassan. 2005. *Qaamuuska caafimaadka. Soomaali-Ingiriisi*.
- O'Hirsi. 2005. *The Somali court interpreter*.

- Aadan. 2008. *Qaamuuska ganacsiga: Dictionary of business*.
- Diriye. 2011. *Qaamuus caafimaad. Concise Somali medical dictionary*.

[Add further term glossaries.]

## Development of terminology in Somali

Caney (1984: 266ff.) provides a brief background on the rapid expansion of Somali terminology that occurred in the 1970s. He argues that, as far as possible, the goal was to create terms from native Somali words by derivation (e.g., **gujis** *submarine*), compounding (e.g., **waxsoosaarid** *production*), or phrases (e.g., **mushaar saafi ah** *net salary*), or give old words a completely new meaning or a more precise and narrower meaning (cf. Josephson 2018). The choice to prioritise native Somali words was partly due to the desire to strengthen the population's confidence in their own language as the country's new official language by showing that Somali is fully sufficient to provide words for all modern phenomena. Borrowing from Arabic, English, and Italian would not be necessary.

They also endeavored to make the new concepts as transparent and easy to understand as possible. The idea was that people should be able to figure out the meaning of the words themselves when they heard them used in a suitable context.

A considerable number of loanwords still entered the language, especially in medicine and chemistry. However, in physics and mathematics, significantly fewer loanwords occur. Other areas that were quite open to loanwords include trade, economy, military, and technology, but many times translation loans were chosen instead, i.e., a Somali concept was created according to the same pattern as the corresponding concept in the foreign language.

In areas related to the new Somali society, such as education, language, politics, and the labour market, there was a preference for native terms.

Agriculture and law did not have as great a need for new, expanded terminology and managed to a much greater extent with the existing vocabulary.

Somali has clearly shown that it is fully possible to expand a language's vocabulary and terminology very quickly through clear language policy and language planning.

## 10. Exercises

### 10.1 General questions

---

1. What is meant by the concept "term"?
2. Why are terms needed in language?
3. How is the word **magac** translated into Swedish as a general word?
4. How is the word **magac** translated into Swedish as a term?
5. Find the word that constitutes the most typical example of a term in each of the following sections from different textbooks.

#### **3. Erayo - horgale.**

---

Fiir erayadan.

**ma hadlo**

**ma dhibaato**

"Ma" waa horgale. Horgaluhu waxa uu beddelaa eraygga macnihiisa.

dhistaa oo ku kora jirka. Curisyada cuntada ku jira ayaa waxay ka mid noqdaan dhismaha jirka ee noolaha, qaybta borotiinka ah ee cuntada ku jirta ayaa waxay ku shaqa leedahay dhismaha iyo ka-



Magaalada aad ku noshahay waxay ka mid tahay magaaloyin badan oo ku yaal dalka jamhuuriyadda Dimoqraaddiga ee Soomaaliya. Magaaladu way ka weyn tahay tuulada, waa-na ka dad badan tahay. Waxayna u qaybsantaa Xaafada ba-

Jeermigu wuxuu ka mid yahay uumanka badan oo cudur-rada keena. Jeermigu isaguna markiisa wuxuu u qaybsamaa jaadad fara badan oo ku kala duwan xagga qaabka, xagga dhaqanka iyo xagga halistaba. Xagga qaabka bal haddaan ka

Kalluunku waxa uu ku nool yahay biyaha.  
Waxa uu ka neefsadaa waafyaha.

Raadi isirka maqan.

(b)  $n \times 3 = 3 \times 4$

## 10.2

Look for typical terms in the three texts. Try to find at least three terms in each subject. Also try to determine how the term is formed:

- Loanword with sound adaptation
- Loanword without sound adaptation
- Translation loan
- Old word with new meaning
- Root + root
- Root + suffix
- Root + root + suffix
- Two words as a phrase

Kani waa sawir goobo.

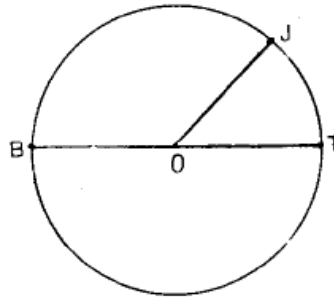
O waa **Xudunta** goobada. BOT waxa

la yiraahdaa **dhexroor**. Waxa kale oo loo

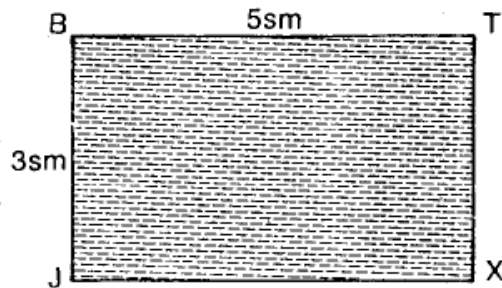
qori karaa  $\overline{BT}$ , taasi oo ah xariijinta BT.

J waa bar goobada ku dul taal.  $\overline{OJ}$  waa **gacanka** goobada.

$\overline{OB}$  iyo  $\overline{OT}$  iyaguna waa gacanno.



Shaxankani waa laydi. Laydi waa shaxan afar dhinac leh oo labadii dhinac ee iska soo horjeedaba ay isle'eg yihiin, afartiisa xagloodna ay qumman yihiin.



Haddii dhinaca BT ee leydigan cabbirkiisu yahay 5 sm, dhinaca JX cabbirkiisu waa 5 sm, waayo JX waa dhinaca ka soo horjeeda BT. Haddii dhinaca BJ uu cabbirkiisu yahay 3 sm waa immisa cabbirka TX?

Dhinaca dheer ee laydiga waxa la yiraahdaa dherer (dh), dhinaca gaabanna waxa la yiraahdaa ballac (b).

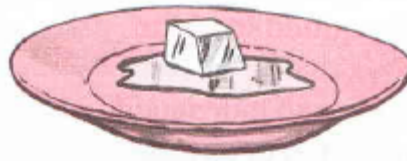
Laydiga kor ku sawiran wareeggiisu (w) waa wadarta cabbirrada dhinacyadiisa oo ah,

$$5 \text{ sm} + 3 \text{ sm} + 5 \text{ sm} + 3 \text{ sm} = 16 \text{ sm}.$$

Source: *Xisaab, Fasalka 4aad, Muqdisho 1985*



Barafku waa uu milmay.  
Barafku waxa uu isu beddelay  
hoor (biyo).



Si kale haddii aynu u dhigno,  
adke ayaa isu beddelay hoor.

Adkaha iyo hoorka waxa aan ku magacownaa xaalado.  
Markii uu barafku dhalaalay waxa dhacay isbeddel xaalad.

Imminkana waxa aynu eegi doonnaa isbeddellada xaalad kale.

### Waxqabadka 3aad

Waxa aad u baahan tahay biyo qabow, dhadharo, dab, kildhi  
iyo dabool.

kildhiga biyo ka buuxi oo dabka  
saar.

Maxa aad arki kartaa marka biyaha  
kildhigu ay karaan?

Marka ay biyuhu karkaraan, waxa  
ka soo baxa kildhiga uumi-biyood.



Imminka barahaaga ayaa u dhigi doona dabool uumi-  
biyoodka.

Maxa aad ku arki kartaa daboolka dushiisa?

Maxaa dhaca marka ay uumi-biyoodku ku dhacaan daboolka  
qabow?

Biyihii waxa ay isu beddelaan uumi-biyood marka la  
kululeeyo.

Uumi-biyoodkuna waxa uu dib isugu beddelaa biyo marka la  
qaboojiyo.

Uumi-biyoodku waa neef.

Source: *Saynis, Fasalka 4aad, Hargeysa 2001*

## 1.2 Astaamaha guud ee magacyada

### a. Caynta: lab iyo dheddig

Caynta magaca, gaar ahaan marka aan qodob raacsanayn, waxaa lagu gartaa codkaca iyo dhammaad yara kala duwan ee ay leeyihiin magacyada qaarkood, dib baanse uga faalloon doonnaa arrintaas.

#### Magacyada labeed

Waxaa ka mid ah: *nin(ka)*, *ari(ga)*, *miis(ka)*, *gabay(ga)*, *fal(ka)* iwm. Magacyada labeed waxaa lagu aqoonsadaa **codkaca** (tone) oo ku dhaca shaqalka ka horreeyo midka ugu dambeeya, magacyada dheddigna shaqalka ugu dambeeya ayaa codkacu ku dhacaa. Sidaa darteed aad ayay u badanyihiin magacyada mataanaha ah, oo kala duwanaanta codkacooda uun lagu kala sari karo micnaha kala duwan ee ay kala leeyihiin labada magac oo lab iyo dheddig kala ah sida kuwa soo socda:

L	Dh
<i>inan (ka)</i>	<i>inán (ta)</i>
<i>ceesáan (ka)</i>	<i>ceesaán (ta)</i>
<i>dálab (ka)</i>	<i>daláb (ta)</i>
<i>shílin (ka)</i>	<i>shilín (ta)</i>

Source: *Qaamuuska Af-Soomaaliga*, Roma 2012

## 10.3 Terminology in schoolbooks

Läs de följande innehållsförteckningarna och försök avgöra vilka ord som kan anses vara termer.

## Saynis, Fasalka 4aad, Hargeysa 2001

## BUUGGA SAYNISKA 4AAD

<b>CUTUBKA 1AAD</b>	<b>Waxbarashada caafimaadka</b>	<b>1</b>
● Nadaafadda deegaanka dugsiga		1
● Nadaafadda fasalka gudihiisa		4
● Suuliga		6
● Isticmaalka suuliga		6
● Khatarta ay leedahay isticmaal la'aanta suuliga		7
● Cayayaanka fidiya cudurrada		10
<b>CUTUBKA 2AAD</b>	<b>Walxaha nool</b>	<b>13</b>
● Halkee bay xayawaanku ku nool yihiin?		13
● Sida xayawaannada u dhaqdhaqaaqaan		14
● Xayawaannada yar-yar		16
<b>CUTUBKA 3AAD</b>	<b>Dhirta</b>	<b>21</b>
● Qaybaha geedka		22
● Iniinyaha		24
● Qaybaha midhaha		25
● Biqlidda		26
● Marxaladda biqlidda		27
● Isitcmaalka iniinyaha kala duwan		30
<b>CUTUBKA 4AAD:</b>	<b>Biyo</b>	<b>32</b>
● Adke, hoor iyo neef		32
● Isbeddelka wejiyada biyaha		32
● Uumu-bax, biyow, dhalaal		36
● Sida uu roobku u samaysmo		36
● Ka samaynta biyo nadiif biyo dhoobo leh		37
<b>CUTUBKA 5AAD</b>	<b>Cunto</b>	<b>38</b>
● Kooxaynta cuntada		39
● Borotiinada		39

● Kaarboohaydrayd	41
● Dux	41
● Fiitamiino	41
● Macdan	42
● Cunto dheellitiran	43
● Muhimadda cuntooyinka noocyada kala duwan	45

<b>CUTUBKA 6AAD</b>	<b>Carrada</b>	<b>47</b>
● lakabyada carrada		47
● Huyumas		48

<b>CUTUBKA 7AAD</b>	<b>Ilays</b>	<b>49</b>
● Ilaha ilayska		49
● Waxtarka ilayska qorraxda		49
● Ilaysku waxa uu ku socdaa xarriiq toosan		51
● Ilays noqodka muraayadaha		53

<b>CUTUBKA 8AAD</b>	<b>Jabaq</b>	<b>56</b>
● Jabaqdu ma dhex martaa hawada?		57
● Jabaqdu ma dhex martaa adkaha?		58
● Jabaqdu ma dhex martaa hoorka?		60
● Sida xayawaanku jabaqda u maqlo		61
● Waxtarka jabaqda		62

<b>CUTUBKA 9AAD</b>	<b>Kul</b>	<b>65</b>
● Kul gudbinta		65
● Kul gudbiyayaasha iyo kul ma gudbiyayaasha		66
● Khatarta kulka		67

<b>CUTUBKA 10AAD</b>	<b>Hawo</b>	<b>70</b>
● Astaamaha hawada		70
● Maxaa dhaca marka hawada la kululeeyo		73

## Saynis 5, Itoobiya 2014

**Tusmo****Bogga****Cutubka kowaad**

<b>1. Hawada .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1. Hawadu waa Walax.....	1
1.2. Astaamaha Hawada ama Neefaha.....	6
1.3. Habka Neefmareenka Aadamaha.....	9
1.4. Waxyeelada Caafimaad ee Sigaar cabida.....	11
1.5. Waxyeelada ay Caadooyinka Dhaqanku u Leeyihiin Caafimaadka.....	12

**Cutubka Labaad**

<b>2. Biyaha .....</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1. Biyaha Dabeeciga ah.....	17
2.2. Iskudhisyada.....	21
2.3. Waxtarka Biyaha.....	25
2.4. Khasaaraha Biyaha.....	26
2.5. Dikhowga Biyaha.....	28
2.6. Hababka Biyaha loo Kaydiyo/Xafido.....	31

**Cutubka Saddexaad**

<b>3. Dhirta (plants).....</b>	<b>35</b>
3.1. Waxtarka Dhirta .....	35
3.2. Carrada iyo Dhirta.....	38
3.3. Hagaajinta Habdhaqanka Carrada.....	41
3.4. Halista ay Kaymaheenu ku sugan yihiin iyo Hababka loo Daryeelayo.....	44



3.5.	<i>Kor u qaadida Dhiraynta iyo Beerida midhaha.....</i>	48
3.6.	<i>Saaqa Haramaha (Weeds) iyo Xakamaynta Haramaha/Saaqa ..</i>	49
3.7.	<i>Caadooyinka Dhibaataada leh.....</i>	51

## **Cutubka Afaraad**

<b>4:</b>	<b><i>Xayawaanka (Animals).....</i></b>	<b>55</b>
4.1.	<i>Cayayaanka (Insects).....</i>	56
4.2.	<i>Kalluunka (fishes).....</i>	65
4.3.	<i>Barri-Biyoodka (Amphibians).....</i>	67
4.4.	<i>Xamaaratada (Reptiles).....</i>	70

## **Cutubka Shanaad**

<b>5.</b>	<b><i>Jidhkeena (our body).....</i></b>	<b>78</b>
5.1.	<i>Qahsin saarka Jidhka (Excretion).....</i>	79
5.2.	<i>Nadaafada Cuntada (food hygiene).....</i>	87
5.3.	<i>Cuntadu waa isha Tamarta kulka.....</i>	89
5.4.	<i>Cunto yarida.....</i>	93
5.5.	<i>Dhaqamada Waxyeelada leh.....</i>	95
5.6.	<i>Cudurka Dilaaga ah ee AIDS-ka.....</i>	96

## **Cutubka Lixaad**

<b>6.</b>	<b><i>Dhulka .....</i></b>	<b>101</b>
6.1.	<i>Dhulka.....</i>	101
6.2.	<i>Samayska Hab-qorraxeedka.....</i>	105
6.3.	<i>Dayax-Gacmeedyada (Satellites).....</i>	121

## Cilmiga Bulshada, Muqdisho 2011

## Tusmada

<b>Cutubka 1aad</b>	<b>Dakii Hore</b>	<b>1</b>
	Asalkii dadkii hore	1
	Sidii ay dadkii hore cuntada ku heli jireen	2
	Sidii ay dadkii hore u ugaarsan jireen	3
	Sidii ay dadkii hore hoyga u samaysteen	5
	Sidii ay dadkii hore huga u samaysteen	6
	Sidii ay dadkii hore u heleen dabka	9
	Waxa ay dadkii hore dabka u adeegsan jireen	10
	Bilowgii dhaqashada xoolaha	11
	Sidii uu dadkii hore beerashada u bilaabay	12
	Ganacsigii ka dhexeeyey dadkii hore	13
	Ganacsigii wax kala beddelashada	15
	Dabaylaha iyo ganacsiga	17
<b>Cutubka 2aad</b>	<b>Dadka degmadayada ku nool</b>	<b>19</b>
B.	Maamulka degmada	19
	Guddoomiyaha degmada	19
	Sharciga iyo kala dambaynta	21
	Maxkamadda degmada	23
	Hoggaamiye dhaqameedyada	24
	Sharci dhaqameed	25
	Culimada diinta	26
T.	Qodobbada saameeya tirada dadka ee degmo	27
	Degmadu biyo ma leedahay?	27
	Degmadu ma leedahay carro-san?	28
	Deked ma leedahay degmadiinnu?	29
	Degmadiinnu ma waxa ay leedahay magaalooyin badan?	32
J.	Shaqada ay degmooyinku qabtaan	33
	Degmooyinka reer guuraaga	33
	Deegmooyinka qodaalka	34
	Degmooyinka magaalada	35

Warshadaha yar-yar. ....	36
<b>Cutubka 3aad Hawlaha bulshada ee degmada . . . . .</b>	<b>38</b>
B. Iskaashiga degmada dhexdeeda. ....	38
T. Xiriirka ka dhexeeya degmooyinka. ....	40
Degmooyinka waxa ay iska kaashadaan ganacsiga. ....	40
Degmooyinku waxa ay iska kaashadaan nabadgelyada . . . . .	40
Degmooyinka waxa ay iska kaashataa waxbarashada. ....	41
Degmooyinku waxa ay iska kaashadaan ciyaaraha. ....	41
J. Dabbaal-degyo dhaqameedka . . . . .	43
Aroosyada . . . . .	43
Nayruuska . . . . .	44
Riwaayadaha, gabayada iyo heesaha. ....	47
Caleemo saarka hoggaamiye dhaqameedka reer guuraaga. .	49
<b>Cutubka 4aad Xirfad nololeedka . . . . .</b>	<b>51</b>
B. Xallinta Is-afgaranwaaga. ....	51
Waxyaabaha keena is-afgaranwaaga dadka dhexdiisa. ....	51
Qof aan qabaneyn shaqadii loo xil saaray . . . . .	53
Qaddarin la'aanta xuquuqda dadka kale . . . . .	53
Ku fekeridda in aan dadka kala wanaagsanayn . . . . .	54
Caasi (Dhega-adayg). ....	54
Xiriir wanaagsan la'ananta ka dhaxaysa ardayda iyo dadka kale . . . . .	54
Dhibaatooyinka uu is-afgaranwaagu keeno haddii aan xal loo helin. ....	55
T. Go'aan qaadasho wanaagsan. ....	58
Doorashada saaxiibbada . . . . .	59
Dhowridda nadaafaddeena. ....	60
Isticmaalka waqtiga aad firaagada leedahay. ....	60
Diidmada fikirka saaxiibbadaa . . . . .	61



## Xisaab, Fasalka 4, Muqdisho 2001

### CUTUB

### BOGGA

#### 1 Naqtiin .....1-18

- Tiro iyo qiimo rugeed.
- Isugeyn iyo kalagoy.
- Mas'alooyinka isygeyn iyo kalagoy.
- Iksu dhufasho iyo isuqaybin.
- Mas'alooyinka isku dhufasho iyo isuqaybinta.
- Jajabyo.
- Dherer, mitir iyo sentiimitir.
- Wareeg.
- Bed.
- Waqti.
- Soo iibin iyo iska iibin.

#### 2 Tirooyin .....19-35

- Tirooyinka ilaa 99999.
- Qiimo rugeedka tirooyinka ilaa 99 999.
- Horsanaanta tirooyinka ilaa 99 999.
- Tirooyinka fidsan.
- Dhufsaneayal (dhufsanaa ay wadaagaan iyo dh.y.w).
- Isiro.
- Hubinta u qaybsamida 2,5 iyo 10.
- U duubudda tobanka ugu dhow

#### 3 Isugeynta iyo kala goynta .....37-54

- Isygeynta ilaa saddex tiro oo min 5 god, qaadasho la'aan iyo qaadasho leh.
- Isugeyn la isticmaalaa habka fidinta.
- Isugeyn la isticmaalaa habka abakas.
- Mas'alooyin isugeyn iyo kalagoy.
- Kalagoynta la isticmaalayo habka abakas.
- Kalagoynta la isticmaalayo habka fidinta.
- Kalagoynta ay ku jirto amaahasho iskudhufasho.
- Mas'alooyin.

<b>4</b>	<b>Dherer iyo bed .....</b>	<b>55-77</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Qiyaasta millimitir (mm), mitir (m) iyo kiiloomitir (km) ahaan.</li> <li>• Millimitirka (mm) iyo kiiloomitirka (km).</li> <li>• Xiriirka ka dhexeeya km, m, sm iyo mm.</li> <li>• Isugeyn ay ku jirto km, m, sm iyo mm.</li> <li>• kalagoyin ay ku jirto km, m, sm iyo mm.</li> <li>• Wareegga saddex-xagallo, laba-jabbaaraneyaal iyo laydiyo.</li> <li>• Bedka laba-jabbaaraneyasha, laydiyo iyadoo la tirinayo inta laba-jibbaarane.</li> <li>• Bed iyada oo la isticmaalayo jidka.</li> <li>• Bed qaabab iskudhafan</li> </ul>	
<b>5</b>	<b>Isku dhufasho iyo isuqaybin .....</b>	<b>78-115</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Isku dhufashada tiro 2 god leh iyo tiro hal god qaadasho leh.</li> <li>• Isku dhufashada 2 tiro oo min labo god ah.</li> <li>• Ku dhufashada 10, 100 iyo 1000.</li> <li>• Iskudhufashada 2 tiro oo min 3 god qaadasho iyo qaadasho la'aan ah.</li> <li>• Isu qaybinta tirooyin 2 god iyo tirooyin 1 iyo 2 leh haraa iyo haraa la'aan ah.</li> </ul>	
<b>6</b>	<b>Joometeri .....</b>	<b>116-121</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Xagal.</li> <li>• Samaynta xaglaha qumman.</li> <li>• Xagal fiiqan, xagal furan iyo xagal qumman</li> </ul>	
<b>7</b>	<b>Jadwalka .....</b>	<b>122-125</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Akhrinta iyo tarjumidda tusayaasha.</li> <li>• ku diiwaan gelinta xogta tusayaal.</li> </ul>	
<b>8</b>	<b>Lacag .....</b>	<b>126-131</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Soo gadasho iyo iska iibin.</li> <li>• Khasaare iyo faa'iido.</li> <li>• Mas'alooyin</li> </ul>	

<b>9</b>	<b>Aljebra</b> .....	<b>132-136</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• U isticmalka tirooyinka xarfo.</li> <li>• Ururrinta tibxaha isu eg.</li> </ul>	
<b>10</b>	<b>Cabbiraad</b> .....	<b>137-151</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Qaadka liir, 1/2 litir, 1/4 litir.</li> <li>• Isugeynta iyo kalagoynta qaadka.</li> <li>• Miugga iyada oo la tirinayo tirada saddex-jibbaaraneyaasha isku rasaysan.</li> <li>• Culays: Garaamka.</li> <li>• Isugeyn iyo kalagoynta ay ku jiraan Kg iyo g.</li> <li>• Mas'alooyin culays</li> </ul>	
<b>11</b>	<b>Jajabyo iyo jajab tobanle</b> .....	<b>152-198</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jajabyo isu dhigma.</li> <li>• Tirooyinka maqan.</li> <li>• U fududaynta jajabyada sansaanka ugu hooseeya.</li> <li>• Is-garabdhiga jajabyada.</li> <li>• Isugeynta iyo kalagoynta jajabyada hooseeyahoodu is le'eg yahay.</li> <li>• Isugeynta iyo kalagoynta jajabyada ay ku jirto hal ama labo dib u magacaabid</li> <li>• Tirooyinka dhafan iyo ma qummane.</li> <li>• Iskudhufashada jajab iyo tiro idil.</li> <li>• Jajab tobanle, tobaneed iyo boqoleed.</li> <li>• Isugeynta ay ku jiraan tobaneed iyo boqoleed.</li> <li>• isugarabdhiga iyo horsiimada jajab tobanle</li> <li>• Mas'alooyin ay ku jiraan jajab iyo jajab tobanle.</li> </ul>	
<b>12</b>	<b>Waqti</b> .....	<b>199-208</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maalmo, saacado, daqiiqado iyo ilbiriqsiyo.</li> <li>• Siyaabaha loo akhriyo waqtiga.</li> <li>• Isugeynta ay ku jirto saacado, daqiiqado iyo ilbiriqsiyo.</li> </ul>	
<b>13</b>	<b>Naqtiin layliyo</b> .....	<b>209-227</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Layliyo naqtiin ah 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 iyo 7.</li> <li>• Aqoonso tusahaaga isku dhufashada.</li> </ul>	

# 10. Suggested solutions

## 10.1 General questions

---

1. A term is a word or expression used within a specific subject area or field of activity and within that area it has a clearly defined meaning, usually through an exact definition of the term's meaning. Terms are common in various sciences and professional fields but also in different areas of interest, such as various sports.
2. Terms are needed to ensure that people mean the same thing and understand each other correctly when dealing with important matters. Terms help create precision and clarity in communication, especially in scientific and technical fields. The purpose of terms is to avoid misunderstandings due to different uses of words. (In everyday life, it is not uncommon for misunderstandings to occur because different people interpret the same word differently.)
3. As a general word, the word **magac** corresponds to English *name*.
4. As a term, the word **magac** corresponds to English *noun*.
5. The word that constitutes the most typical example of a term is
  1. horgale
  2. borotiinka
  3. jamhuuriyadda (dimoqraaddiga)
  4. Jeermigu
  5. waafyaha (kalluun, biyo)
  6. isirka

The most typical terms hardly appear as general words in the language where they would have an "approximate" meaning.

The words in parentheses can also be terms, but these words are often used in everyday language in a more "approximate" sense. Therefore, they are not as clear terms, but they can of course be terms if used in a scientific way based on an exact definition. Therefore, those words are also good answers.

## 10.2

---

### 10.3 Terminology in schoolbooks

---

#### **Saynis, Fasalka 4aad, Hargeysa 2001**

adke, hoor, neef, wejiyada, uumi-bax, biyow, dhalaal, borootiinnada, karboonhaydrayd, dux, fiitamiinno, macdan, huyuumas, xarriiq toosan, ilays-noqodka, kulgudbiye, kulmagudbiye

#### **Saynis 5, Itoobiya 2014**

neefaha, habka neefmareenka, cayayaanka, kalluunka, berri-biyoodka, xamaaratada, hab-qorraxeedka, dayax-gacmeedyada

#### **Cilmiga Bulshada, Muqdisho 2011**

guddoomiyaha degmada, maxkamadda degmada,

#### **Xisaab, Fasalka 4, Muqdisho 2001**

Tiro, qiimo rugeed, isugeyn, kalagoyn, iskudhufasho, isuqaybin, jajabyo, dherer, mitir, sentiimitir, wareeg, bed, waqti, tirooyinka fidsan, dhufsaneyaal, isiro, milimitir, kiiloomitir, saddexxagallo, labajibbaarane, laydi, joometari, xagal, xagal qumman, xagal fiiqan, xagal furan, khasaare, faa'iido

# Unit 11

## Language Technology

# 11. Language Technology

---

By LANGUAGE TECHNOLOGY, we mean all the different ways of using computers and electronic equipment to handle language, both in written and spoken form. This can include everything from electronic dictionaries to voice recognition and synthetic speech for reading written texts aloud, such as on the web.

A very common and important type of language technology is LINGUISTIC CORPORA. They are used in linguistics to investigate how language is actually used in practice. With the help of corpora, one can examine questions such as:

- What does a word mean?
- How is a word used?
- How common is a word?
- How is a word spelled?
- How is a word inflected?

## What is a corpus?

---

A linguistic corpus is a collection of texts that have been selected and organized in a certain way for a specific purpose. Today, in most cases, it refers to a very LARGE collection of texts stored in ELECTRONIC format in a database to enable quick searches using software that often has a user-friendly interface.

Corpora that are available to the public usually have a website that makes it particularly easy to perform basic searches. Many countries and languages today have a “national corpus” managed by a specific institute or a university. Such corpora usually consist of hundreds of millions of words or even billions of words. An example of a very large corpus is the Swedish national corpus KORP at Språkbanken in Gothenburg. It contains Swedish texts with a scope of over 16 billion words.



<https://spraakbanken.gu.se/korp/>

### **What does a corpus consist of?**

Most corpora have a general purpose and therefore aim to include texts of as many different types as possible, including texts from:

- different time periods (contemporary, modern, historical),
- different geographical regions,
- factual texts and fiction,
- different subject areas,
- written language and spoken language,
- etc.

It is important to try to achieve a good balance in the corpus so that it becomes as representative as possible of all aspects of the language.

### **How is a corpus designed?**

A corpus does not just consist of a bunch of texts. It usually also contains a lot of information about the texts and the words in the texts. Above all, there are usually clearly indicated references for each text. Often there are clickable links directly to the texts if they are available on the web. Furthermore, information such as the title of the texts, author, publisher, place, year, etc., is provided.

The texts are often also divided into different categories, such as news, politics, fiction, school books, internet texts, etc., so that searches can be made in a certain type of text if needed.

Each word in the texts can also be marked with different types of grammatical information, such as part of speech, inflectional form, base form, clause element, etc. Misspelled words can also have additional information about the correct spelling so that misspelled words are also found when searching for the correct spelling.



## Corpora change over time

Most larger corpora are constantly evolving. New texts are constantly being added. Therefore, it can often happen that you get different results if you search the corpus on two different occasions. The reason is usually that the corpus has grown, but it can also be because the search is not done in exactly the same way. Most corpora allow a range of more or less complex choices for different parameters, and if these choices are not exactly the same, the search will not be the same. This usually leads to different results. Another possible source of different search results is that you have chosen to limit the search to different parts of the corpus (different sub-corpora).

## What is a word?

---

“Word” is a rather everyday concept and not a scientific term. Therefore, it can vary quite a bit what different people mean when they refer to “words”.

For this reason, one should not refer to “words” when discussing words! Instead, one should use the terms

- **token** - each individual occurrence in a text,
- **type** - words that differ in their form,
- **lemma** - all inflectional forms of a word.

## Token versus Type

How many words are there in the following sentence?

Arbeta två och två och lös den här uppgiften.

If you only count the words without considering their forms, there are 9 words. These are then 9 TOKENS. If you instead look at the words and

compare them to each other so that you don't count repetitions of the same form, then there are only 7 words. These are then 7 TYPES.

When indicating the size of a corpus, the number of **tokens** is given. In most corpora, also punctuation marks are usually counted as tokens. If we count the period at the end of the sentence above, there are 10 tokens and 8 types.

### Type versus Lemma

Are the words in the following list the same word or different words?

*car, cars, car's, cars'*

Both answers are possible. In the same way as before, this is a matter of 4 tokens and 4 types. All forms are different. But the words are also related to each other because they have a common meaning. They are all grammatical forms representing the same concept. All these forms together constitute ONE LEMMA. So, we are dealing with 4 types, but only one lemma.

## Somali Corpora

---

Currently, there are at least four Somali corpora with between 3 and 79 million tokens. Three are open to the public. One is not available to the public.

### Bangiga Af Soomaaliga / Somali Korp

The Language Bank at University of Gothenburg hosts the Swedish national corpus **Korp**. It contains more than 16 billion tokens of Swedish, but also some smaller collections of texts in other languages.

Since 28 October 2015, there is a section with Somali texts in Korp. Currently, the Somali collections amount to about 22 million tokens.

<https://spraakbanken.gu.se/korp/?mode=somali>

The content of Somali Korp is mostly news texts, but schoolbooks from Mogadishu, Hargeysa, and Jigjiga as well as some fiction also constitute important parts.

### **Kaydka Af Soomaaliga / Somali Corpus**

At the University of Naples (Napoli in Italian), Jama Muse Jama has developed the Somali Corpus in cooperation with Professor Giorgio Banti. The corpus, which was launched on the web in June 2016, contains about 3 million words and is located at the Redsea Cultural Foundation in Hargeysa: <http://www.somalicorpus.com/>

Somali Corpus contains quite a lot of fiction and poetry, but also some news as well as political and other society texts.

### **HaBiT / Somali Web Corpus 2016**

The universities of Oslo (Norway), Brno (Czech Republic), and Addis Ababa (Ethiopia) have created large corpora for four Ethiopian languages. The corpora exclusively contain texts from the internet: Amharic (30 million tokens), Oromo (5 million tokens), Tigrinya (2.5 million tokens), but their largest corpus is the Somali one, which comprises about 79 million tokens:

[https://corpora.fi.muni.cz/habit/run.cgi/first\\_form?corpname=sowac16;align=](https://corpora.fi.muni.cz/habit/run.cgi/first_form?corpname=sowac16;align=)

The texts have been collected automatically by a computer programmed to search for texts where a small number of the most common Somali words all appear in the text.

About HaBiT: <https://www.sketchengine.eu/sowac-somali-corpus/>

### **An Crúbadán**

The An Crúbadán project at Saint Louis University (USA) has also created a Somali corpus of about 25 million tokens based on texts from the internet. However, their corpus is not available to the public. Only a frequency list can be downloaded from their website:

<http://crubadan.org/languages/so>

### Comparison of the sizes of the different corpora

Swedish <a href="#">Korp</a>	16 110 000 000 tokens	Gothenburg
<a href="#">HaBiT Somali WaC</a>	79 741 231 tokens	Brno, Czech Republic
<a href="#">An Crúbadán</a>	24 648 653 words	Saint Louis, USA
Somali <a href="#">Korp</a>	22 240 000 tokens	Gothenburg
<a href="#">Somali Corpus</a>	3 002 198 words	Hargeisa

### Internet

Compared to all the Somali texts available in all Somali books, newspapers, and on the entire internet, all of these corpora are of course very small. Many important words do not appear in the corpora at all. To find examples of how less common words are used, one often has to search the internet using a search engine.

Different search engines work in very different ways. They do not actually search the internet directly; instead, they have access to preciously collected pages from the internet, which have then processed and indexed on huge computers. The number of pages indexed in this way varies between the search engines, and therefore the number and kind of hits you get with different search engines also varies significantly.

Google probably has the largest number of indexed pages and therefore provides the most hits.

<https://www.google.com/>

There are many other search engines, such as Bing and Yahoo.

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_search\\_engines](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_search_engines)

## Övning 5.2

Use the corpora

<https://spraakbanken.gu.se/korp/?mode=somali>

[https://corpora.fi.muni.cz/habit/run.cgi/first\\_form?corpname=sowac16;align=](https://corpora.fi.muni.cz/habit/run.cgi/first_form?corpname=sowac16;align=)

and different dictionaries that you might have access to, e.g.

Puglielli & Mansuur. 2012. [\*Qaamuuska af Soomaaliga\*](#). Roma.

Keenadiid. 1976. [\*Qaamuuska af-Soomaaliga\*](#). Muqdisho.

Badil & Hassan. 2010. [\*Lexin. Svensk-somaliskt lexikon\*](#). Uppsala.

Agostini & Puglielli & Siyaad (eds.). 1985. [\*Dizionario somalo-italiano\*](#). Roma.

*Lexin på nett*: [\*Bokmål-somali-bokmål\*](#). Oslo.

[\*Suomi-somali-sanakirja\*](#). Helsinki.

Алейников С. В. 2012. [\*Сомалийско-русский словарь. Eraykoobka soomaali-ruush ah\*](#). Москва.

Which spelling is the most common?

Which ones can be considered standard Somali spelling?

Why?

ey	eey		
halkan	halkaan		
kubada	kubbada	kubadda	kubbadda
boqorada	boqorrada	boqoradda	
weydiin	weyddiin		
dambe	danbe		
sabti	Sabti		
madax weyne	madaxweyne		

libaax badeed	libaaxbadeed	
la iska	layska	
in uu	inuu	
waxa uu	waxuu	wuxuu

## Övning 5.2

	ey	eey	hund
Korp:	1036	455	
Habit:	4338	3345	
Korp school:	30	36	

Both spellings, **ey** and **eey**, are almost equally common in the sense 'dog'. Both are found in several dictionaries.

The spelling **ay** should not be used for 'dog', only for 'she'. Practically all dictionaries agree on this.

	halkan	halkaan
Korp:	5157 (96%)	195
Habit:	29348 (81%)	6730
Korp school:	135 (96%)	6

Many grammar books give both forms of this ending, **-an** and **-aan**, hence both should be considered correct, alternative forms in standard Somali. However, statistically **-an** is more common and therefore most likely the form that most speakers consider more unmarked or neutral.

	kubada	kubbada	kubadda	kubbadda
K:	437	104	2296	388 (12%)
H:	8097	1727	13089	659 (4%)
Ks:	10	31	16	228 (80%)

Somali grammar rules say that **b, d, g, l, m, n, r** should be doubled when the pronunciation is more energetic. All handbooks agree on this.

Therefore the form *kubbadda* is the only correct form in written standard Somali, even though it is not the most common form in the corpora. However, if we only look at the Korp sub-corpus containing schoolbooks, it is actually the most common spelling!

	<b>boqorada</b>	boqorro+da <b>boqorrada</b>	boqorad+da <b>boqoradda</b>
K:	142	157	59
H:	618	185	204
Ks:	16	9	3

For these form the spelling reflects an important grammatical difference in the structure and meaning of the words. Depending on the doubled consonant, it means 'the kings' or 'the queen'. Unfortunately, it seems that not even the schoolbooks manage to keep these two meanings apart.

	<b>weydiin</b>	<b>weyddiin</b>
K:	645 (96%)	26
H:	1824 (97%)	51
Ks:	52 (95%)	3

Practically all dictionaries contain this word with double -dd-. Only Alejnikov writes it with a single -d-. However, in practice, it is almost always written with a single -d-, also in the schoolbooks. Therefore the spelling with a single -d- must be considered an alternative correct spelling in standard Somali. The usage has change, but the dictionaries have not registered this quite evident development.

	<b>dambe</b>	<b>danbe</b>
K:	7680 (84%)	1516 (16%)
H:	22861 (66%)	11679 (34%)
Ks:	308 (93%)	24 (7%)

The spelling with -mb- is the most common in both corpora, and especially in the schoolbooks. However, in the dictionaries there is no really clear favourite.

Keenadiid 1976: danbe  
 Saalax X. Carab 2004: dambe / danbe  
 Warsame 2008: danbe  
 Puglielli & Mansuur 2012: dambe  
 Alejnikov 2012: dambe  
 Aadan X. Aadan 2013: dambe / danbe

There seems to be a change in progress. Earlier -nb- was more common. Today -mb- is becoming more common. Spelling with -mb- corresponds to the pronunciation. Spelling with -nb- might be influenced by Arabic where -nb- is used, not -mb-.

Sammanfattningsvis bör nog båda formerna ses som standardspråkliga, men dambe bör ses som den moderna stavningen och danbe som betydligt mera konservativ, kan till och med något ålderdomlig.

	<b>sabti</b>	<b>Sabti</b>
K:	74 (34%)	148 (66%)
H:	377 (24%)	1168 (76%)
Ks:	9 (11%)	75 (89%)

Puglielli & Mansuur 2012: sabti  
 nästan alla andra ordbäcker: Sabti

Praktiskt taget alla handböcker är överens om att veckodagar och månader skrivs med stor bokstav. Detta är något som ofta påpekas och övas i skolböckerna.

	<b>madax weyne</b>	<b>madaxweyne</b>
K:	38	15811
H:	104	18965
Ks:	0	11



Ordböckerna anger bara den sammanskrivna formen.

Den sammanskrivna formen dominerar starkt i alla källor.

Sammanskrivning förespråkas allmänt i handböckerna. Den kan därmed ses som den enda korrekta formen.

	<b>libaax badeed</b>	<b>libaaxbadeed</b>	<b>libaax-badeed</b>
K:	10	2	
H:	8	2	
Ks:	6	0	

Antalet träffar i korpusarna är väldigt litet. Variationen är stor och särskrivning verkar äverväga. Även skrivning med bindestreck förekommer, men är svår att söka på i korpusarna. Inga klara regler finns i handböckerna, även om sammanskrivning förespråkas allmänt.

Alla tre stavningarna måste accepteras som standardspråkliga. Samtidigt är det viktigt för den som skriver att vara konsekvent och välja ett sätt att skriva denna typ av ord.

	<b>la iska</b>	<b>layska</b>
K:	978 (69%)	430 (31%)
H:	3564 (76%)	1108 (24%)
Ks:	41 (77%)	12 (23%)

Handböckerna anger formen **layska**, men i praktiken är särskrivning vanligare. Särskrivning gör att de båda delarnas stavning inte förändras, vilket sannolikt underlättar läsningen. Då den tidigare rekommenderade formen **layska** är ovanligare än särskrivning, även i skolböckerna, bör båda skrivsätten anses standardspråkliga. Antagligen kan **la iska** betraktas som en moderna stavning och **layska** som mera konservativ (jfr. dambe/danbe).

	<b>in uu</b>	<b>inuu</b>
K:	13059 (24%)	40863 (76%)

H:	78373 (33%)	157518 (67%)
Ks:	1298 (73%)	757 (27%)

Här är fördelningen ganska jämn. Skolböckerna har övervägande särskrivning, medan andra texter har övervägande sammanskrivning. Båda skrivsätten måste anses likvärdiga. Även i t.ex. svenskan finns många sådana fall, bl.a. **idag** / **i dag**.

	<b>waxa uu</b>	<b>waxuu</b>	<b>wuxuu</b>
K:	36977 (45%)	832 (1%)	45007 (54%)
H:	112161 (49%)	7003 (3%)	109240 (48%)
Ks:	4683 (74%)	68 (1%)	1543 (25%)

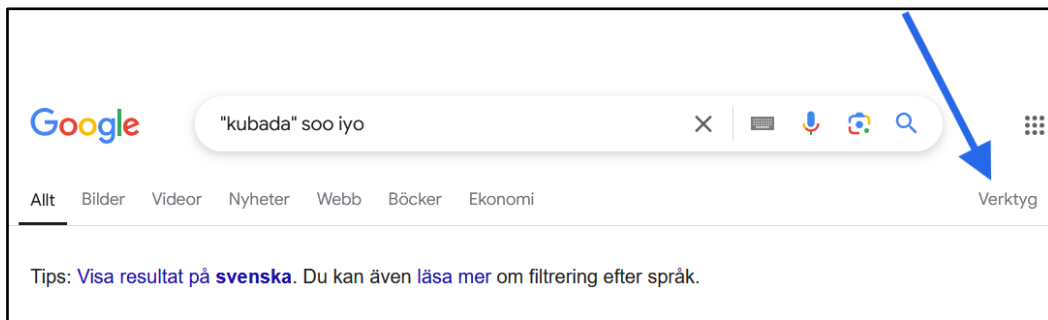
Skrivsätten **waxa uu** och **wuxuu** är ungefär lika vanliga. Handböckerna medger båda. Skolböckerna använder övervägande särskrivning, vilket skulle kunna anses mera skriftspråkligt. Båda formerna bör anses standardspråkliga, men med stilistisk skillnad. Formen **waxuu** är mycket ovanlig och bör inte användas i neutralt standardspråk.

# Unit 12

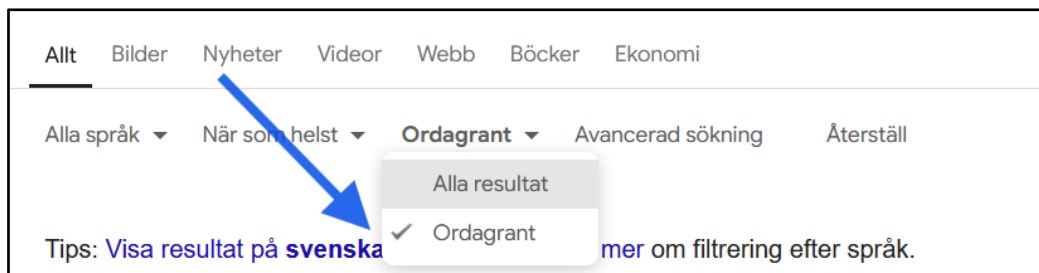
## Working with Corpora

## Unit 12. Working with corpora

If you use Google to search for an unusual spelling, the program is helpful and also suggests hits with the more common spelling. You can partially take control over the searches by putting the search word between quotation marks, but you also need to click on Verktyg / Tools...



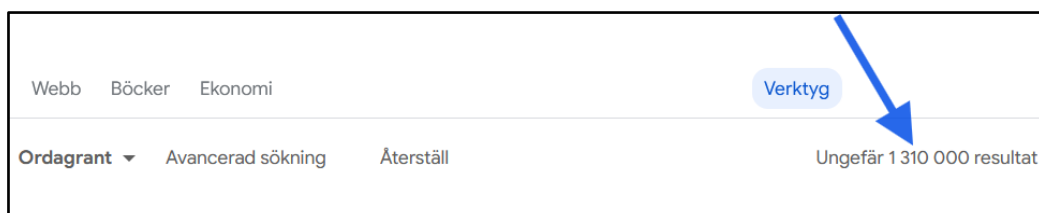
...and change the option under "Alla resultat" to "Ordagrant".



Then you will (primarily) get hits for the exact spelling that you have specified in the search box using citation marks. Try, for example:

- "kubada"
- "kubbada"
- "kubadda"
- "kubbadda"

The number of hits is then shown to the right.



In December 2024, Google gave the following amounts of hits.

"kubada"	1.750.000 hits
"kubbada"	334.000 hits
"kubadda"	1.640.000 hits
"kubbadda"	452.000 hits

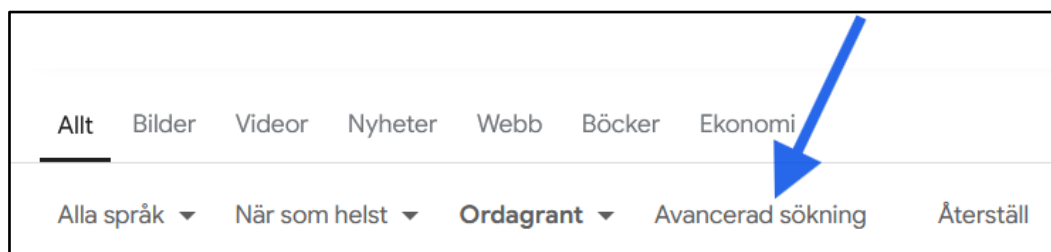
Sometimes it happens that the same word exists in other languages, and in that case, the number of hits can be very misleading. To only get hits on Somali pages, you can add a couple of the most common Somali words after the search word. Then all the specified words must be on the same page.

De vanliga småorden som man lägger till för att hitta rätt språk brukar kallas för ANKARORD. Några vanliga, användbara somaliska ord är **iyó**, **soo**, **waa**, **ayaa**, **aan**, **waxa**...

In December 2024, Google gave the following amounts of hits.

"kubbad"	134.000 hits
"kubad"	372.000 hits
"kubbad" waa iyo	69.100 hits
"kubad" waa iyo	356.000 hits
"kubbad" soo iyo	85.900 hits
"kubad" soo iyo	347.000hits

In order to get even more precise hits, click on Avancerad sökning.



Put the anchor words on the first line and the word you are searching for on the second line with citation marks. Then click the button at the bottom

of the page. Then you need to click on Tools / Verkt yg again in order to see the number of hits.

Hitta sidor med ...	
alla f�ljande ord:	waa iyo ayaa
exakt f�ljande ord eller fras:	"kubbad"

In December 2024, this search gave

waa iyo ayaa "kubbad" 54.800 hits

waa iyo ayaa "kubad" 314.000 hits

## Search options in corpora

---

When you want to make a search in a corpus, the online corpus tool has a search engine of its own that lets you make far more precise choices in order to find exactly what you are interested in finding.

### Words with different endings

If you want to find all words that start the same way, you can just enter the beginning of these words in the search box. In Korp, you then check the small box labelled "initial part" (of the words you want to find).

If you then enter **gacan** in the search field you will also get hits like **gacanta**, **gacantii**, **gacantiisa**, **gacanka**, **gacanku**, etc.

Korp Språkbanken's word research platform

71 of 71 corpora selected — 22.19M of 22.19M tokens

Simple Extended Advanced Compare Search history

gacan Search

☐ in free order and also as ☒ initial part ☐ medial part ☐ final part and ☒ case-insensitive

KWIC: hits per page: 25 sort within corpora: not sorted Statistics: compile based on: word ☒ Show statistics

KWIC Statistics

Results: 16,725

« < 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 ... > » Go to page of 669 Show context

SOMALI: AF SOOMAALI 1971-79 (does not support extended context)

Waa inaad	<b>gacanta</b>	qabataa oo aayar ka gudbisaa jidka.
Madow — gaar — gaaban —	<b>gacan</b>	— duqdii.
o aan jirkooda marnaba damqaanaya .Maxaa inooga faa'iido badan	<b>gacanta</b>	inoo samaysa sariiraha, miisaska, kuraasta iyo qalabka ka
	<b>Gacan</b>	adag.
Wiilkii aan dabaasha aqoon ayaa haftay oo u	<b>gacan</b>	haadiyey Booddadheere.
Waxa iyaguna	<b>gacan</b>	ka geystey xagga heesaha buuggan macallimiinta ah Max:
korontada guryaha ka ururinjayay, waxa ku dhacay shil ah albaab oo	<b>gacanta</b>	kaga xirmay, sidaas darteed waxa loo qaaday gargaarka d

If you also check the box labelled “Show statistics” before you make the search, you will find a list of all different forms and their frequencies under the “Statistics” tab.

Number of rows: 548

<input type="checkbox"/>	word	Total	Af-Soomaal...	Af-Soomaal...	Af-Soomaal...	Af-Soomaal...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Σ	753.7 (16,725)	155.4 (10)	368.8 (19)	396.1 (10)	44
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacanta	327.5 (7,266)	15.5 (1)	97.1 (5)	39.6 (1)	11
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacan	228.3 (5,066)	139.9 (9)	174.7 (9)	198.0 (5)	11
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacantiisa	24.4 (541)	0.0 (0)	19.4 (1)	0.0 (0)	0.0
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacanka	20.4 (452)	0.0 (0)	19.4 (1)	0.0 (0)	39
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacantii	15.1 (335)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	0.0
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacantaada	11.0 (245)	0.0 (0)	19.4 (1)	79.2 (2)	39
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacantooda	9.2 (205)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	0.0
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacantayda	8.4 (187)	0.0 (0)	19.4 (1)	0.0 (0)	19
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacanteeda	6.6 (147)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	0.0
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacantana	3.9 (86)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	39.6 (1)	0.0
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacantiisii	3.7 (82)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	0.0
<input type="checkbox"/>	gacan-libaax	3.4 (75)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	0.0 (0)	0.0

If you click on one of the forms, you will get a full list with all the hits for that form.

To do the same kind of search in HaBiT, you need to click on *Query types*, Then choose *word* and write the common beginning of the words you are interested in followed by *.\** (period+asterisk).

If instead you want to find all words that end in the same way, you need to check the box labelled “final part”.

In HaBiT you just write *.\** at the beginning of the search string, for example, *.\*imid* in order to find the forms *imid*, *yimid*, *timid*, *nimid*, etc.

### Uppercase or lowercase letters

Another important choice is whether you want hits written in both uppercase and lowercase letters, or hits only for exactly what you have written. If you search for **Muqdisho** and have checked the *case-insensitive* box, you will also get hits like **muqdisho** and **MUQDISHO**. This is the default setting in Korp. If you only want hits that match **Muqdisho**, you need to uncheck the box labelled “case-insensitive”.



To make an exact search in HaBiT in the same way, you need to click on **Query types**, then choose **word**, and finally check the box labelled **match case**.

HaBiT

Somali WaC [2016]

Corpus: Somali WaC [2016]

Simple query:

[Query types](#) [Context](#) [Text types](#)

Query type ☐ simple ☐ phrase ☒ word ☐ character ☐ CQL

Phrase:

Word form: Muqdisho ☒ match case

Character:

These are just two of the many options available in most corpus tools today.

## Statistics

If you have made a more complex search that leads to hits with different spellings, e.g., uppercase and lowercase letters, or the same word with several different endings, you can easily see how many hits there are for each individual form by choosing to view statistics about the search hits. In Korp, you must check the **Show statistics** box before you carry out the search

Simple Extended Advanced Compare

☐ in free order and also as ☐ initial part ☐ medial part ☐ final part and ☒ case-insensitive

KWIC:  hits per page: 25  sort within corpora: not sorted  Statistics:  compile based on: word ☒ Show statistics









When the search has finished, you click on the **Statistics** tab. There you will find a list of all the different forms and spellings that appear in the results of your search.

KWIC

Statistik

Visa trenddiagram

Antal rader: 39

<input type="checkbox"/>	ord		Totalt	Af Soomaali ...	Af Sooma
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Σ		37,2 (703)	334,6 (17)	2 660,8 (2
<input type="checkbox"/>	kubbadda		13,9 (262)	157,5 (8)	694,1 (6)
<input type="checkbox"/>	kubbad		9,7 (184)	157,5 (8)	1 388,2 (1
<input type="checkbox"/>	kubbada		4,2 (80)	0 (0)	0 (0)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Kubbadda		2,5 (48)	0 (0)	578,4 (5)
<input type="checkbox"/>	kubbadood		0,8 (15)	0 (0)	0 (0)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Kubbad		0,7 (14)	19,7 (1)	0 (0)
<input type="checkbox"/>	kubbaddii		0,7 (14)	0 (0)	0 (0)

The numbers in the Total column are of two types. The first number indicates the RELATIVE frequency *per million words* (pmw), while the second number indicates the ABSOLUTE frequency in the corpus. In this case, different forms that all start with **kubbad** occur 703 times in the entire corpus. Since the corpus contains 18.87 million tokens, the relative frequency is  $703 / 18.87 = 37.2$  pmw. This number is useful if you want to compare results in Korp with results from other corpora.

To get comparable numbers in HaBiT, you must enter the search string **kubbad.\*** where the characters **.\*** indicate that any letters or no letters at all can occur.

If you go to <https://corpora.fi.muni.cz/habit/run.cgi/first?corpname=sowac16> and enter the search string **kubbad.\*** in the search field, you get 3,852 hits or 48.31 pmw (per million words). This number is calculated by taking the number of hits divided by the size of the corpus (79.74 million).

$$3,852 / 79.74 = 48.31 \text{ pmw}$$

Now you can compare 37.2 pmw in Korp with 48.3 pmw in HaBiT and conclude that different forms of **kubbad** are quite a bit more common in HaBiT than in Korp. This is likely due to the type of content found in the texts in the two corpora. In HaBiT, there may be many pages about sports from the internet.

HaBiT

Query **kubbad.\*** 3,852 (48.31 per million)

Page 1 of 193 [Go](#) [Next](#) [Last](#)

midnimonews.com » </p><p> November 21 (Jowhar)— Mid kamid ah kulamada **kubbadda** cagta ee .

haatuf.net marka ay dhexdhexaadinaayan kooxaha **kubbadda** cagta. </p>

haatuf.net garsoorayaashuna isticmaalaan. </p><p> Xidhiidhka **kubbadda** kolleyga e

haatuf.net hase yeeshee, wuxuu la soo galay in uu cagtiisa, **kubbadda** iyo goolku

bandhige.com , oo ay ka mid yihiin dhismayaal, garoon **kubbadeed** </p><p> V

xidig.net u ahayaa PSG, laakiin waan dabaal degi doonaa. **Kubbada** cagtu waa

dhacdooyinka.com in ay geeyaan isbitaalka. </p><p> Ciyaaryahanka **kubbada** cagta ee f

If you then want to see the frequency for each form of **kubbad.\*** in HaBiT, you click on “Node Forms” in the left menu.

Home  
Search  
Word list  
Word sketch  
Thesaurus  
Sketch diff  
Corpus info  
My jobs  
User guide

Save  
concordance  
Sample  
Filter  
Sub-hits  
1st hit in doc  
Frequency  
Node tags  
**Node forms**  
Doc IDs  
Text types  
Collocations  
Visualize

**Frequency list**

Frequency limit: 0 [Set limit](#)

Page 1 [Go](#) [Next >](#)

	word	Frequency	Items: 55    Total frequency: 3,852
P   N	kubbada	1,627	
P   N	kubbad	1,005	
P   N	kubbadda	530	
P   N	Kubbada	169	
P   N	Kubbadda	125	
P   N	Kubbada	100	
P   N	kubbadaha	66	
P   N	kubbado	39	
P   N	kubbadu	26	
P   N	kubbadii	19	
P   N	kubbadeed	19	
P   N	kubbadood	13	
P   N	kubbadiisa	9	
P   N	kubbaddu	9	
P   N	Kubbado	9	
P   N	kubbaddii	8	
P   N	Kubbadaha	8	
P   N	kubbadahaan	6	
P   N	Kubbadeed	6	

## Information about the hits

---

The result of a search is primarily presented as the total number of hits in the corpus and a long list of text examples from all the places in the corpus where the searched word occurs. The word is usually presented with a context that is at most one sentence long. In addition, it is indicated through various headings in which sub-corpus each example occurs.

If you click on one of the examples in Korp, you get more information about that example on the right hand side. You usually get to know the name of the sub-corpus, the title of the text, the name of the author, the publication year, and sometimes even which page the example is from. If the text is available on the internet, there is a clickable link to the text. Since links sometimes change, some links may have stopped working, but in that case, you can usually find the text by googling a few words in the example line.

In HaBiT, the website where the example is taken from is always indicated to the left of each example. If you click on a line, the example opens in a new window with a little more context, which can often help you better understand the example.

## 12. Exercises

---

### 12.1 Korp

How big is the sub-corpus containing schoolbooks?

From what period of time are the schoolbooks?

What is the largest sub-corpus in Korp?

From what period of time are those texts?

## 12.2 The most frequent words

Compare the 15 most common words in Korp, HaBiT and An Crúbadán. What similarities and differences are there?

Korp		HaBiT		An Crúbadán
oo	141219	oo	<u>2,130,200</u>	bo 39036
iyo	95372	ka	<u>1,808,365</u>	ka 29663
ku	93691	ay	<u>1,470,184</u>	ku 24743
ka	92600	ku	<u>1,445,719</u>	iyo 24550
u	75171	iyo	<u>1,248,166</u>	ay 20215
ah	70814	ee	<u>1,210,830</u>	ee 19765
ay	60284	ah	<u>1,062,164</u>	u 19109
ee	53914	u	<u>1,041,418</u>	ah 18866
la	53105	in	<u>1,037,431</u>	in 15787
in	50452	ayaa	<u>985,020</u>	uu 14155
soo	46234	uu	<u>950,971</u>	soo 13682
uu	42717	soo	<u>794,868</u>	la 13672
waa	42151	la	<u>720,451</u>	ayaa 10995
)	36052	lagu	<u>397,822</u>	aan 7263
ayaa	30704	ugu	<u>365,182</u>	waa 7160
(	28971			
aan	27089			

## 12.3 Meaning

**kuuli**

In Korp: check the box labelled “initial part”

In HaBiT: write **kuuli.\***

## 12.4 Inflection

What is the most common plural form of

**abti oday maroodi**

In Korp: check the boxes labelled “initial part” and “show statistics” and search for **abti oday maroodi**

Then click on “Statistics”.

In HaBiT: Choose “Word” and search for **abti.\* oday.\* maroodi.\***

Then click on “Node forms”.

### 12.5 Uppercase or lowercase?

jimce, abriil, jiilaal, soomaali

## 12. Suggested solutions (2023)

---

### 12.1 Korp

Size of schoolbooks: 1.255.488 tokens

Time period for schoolbooks: 1971-2018.

Largest sub-corpus in Korp: Warar.

Time period of those texts: 2001-2017

### 12.2 The most frequent words

It's almost the same list for all three corpora. All the words are grammatical function words. There is no noun or adjective on the list, and only one verb: ah.

### 12.3 Meaning

### 12.4 Inflection

In Korp: **abtiyaal, odayaal, maroodiyo**

In HaBiT: **abtiyaal, odayaal, maroodiyaal**

## 12.5 Uppercase or lowercase?

**Jimce, Abriil, jiilaal, Soomaali**

## More will follow

---

This textbook will be updated with new chapters on a weekly basis during the autumn term 2024.



# References

---

- Andrzejewski, B. W. 1974. The introduction of a national orthography for Somali.  
<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/2550>
- Banti, Giorgio. 1988. Scrittura. In Puglielli, Annarita (ed.), *Aspetti dell'espressione artistica in Somalia*, 21–29.  
<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/997>
- Galaal, M.H.I. et al. 1961. *Linguistic report. The report of the Somali Language Committee*. Mogadiscio.  
<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/2620>
- Hared, Mohamed Farah. 1992. *Modernization and Standardization in Somali Press Writing*. Los Angeles: U Southern California (PhD thesis).  
<http://digitallibrary.usc.edu/cdm/ref/collection/p15799coll3/id/266559>
- ‘Idaajaa’, Axmed F. Cali. No date. Shire Jama Ahmed. A pioneer of the development of Somalia's national orthography. (Manuscript.)  
<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/2584>
- Josephson, Olle. 2018. *Språkpolitik* (Språkrådets skrifter 25). Stockholm: Morfem.
- Lamberti, Marcello. 1986. *Map of Somali Dialects in the Somali Democratic Republic*. Hamburg: Helmut Buske Verlag.  
<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/3034>
- Maino, Mario. 1957. Breve storia della lingua somala. *Somalia d'oggi*. Giugno II/2. Mogadiscio. 17-19.  
<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/750>
- Mansuur, C. C. 2009. *Taariikhda iyo luqadda bulshada Soomaaliyeed*. Spånga: Iftiinka aqoonta.
- Mohamed, O. O. 1976. *Administrative efficiency and administrative language in Somalia*.  
<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/1553>

Tosco, Mauro. 2010. Somali writings. *Afrikanistik-Aegyptologie online*.

<https://www.afrikanistik-aegyptologie-online.de/archiv/2010/2723>

Tyrberg, Andreas. 2015. Kyrka i Jubaland?: EFS missionsfält i Jubaland 1904-1935. Uppsala: Uppsala University (MA thesis).

<http://urn.kb.se/resolve?urn=urn:nbn:se:uu:diva-275827>